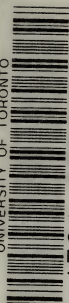



UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00904823 2





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2017 with funding from  
University of Toronto









THE TRAINING SYSTEM.



THE  
TRAINING SYSTEM.

BY DAVID STOW, ESQ.



BLACKIE & SON,  
GLASGOW, EDINBURGH AND LONDON.

204301  
28. 6. 26



Educational  
Teach.  
5

THE

# TRAINING SYSTEM

OF EDUCATION,

RELIGIOUS, INTELLECTUAL, AND MORAL,

AS ESTABLISHED IN THE

GLASGOW NORMAL TRAINING SEMINARY.

By DAVID STOW, Esq.,

HONORARY SECRETARY TO THE INSTITUTION, AUTHOR OF "MORAL TRAINING," ETC.

SIXTH EDITION.

RE-ARRANGED, WITH ADDITIONS.

BLACKIE AND SON,  
QUEEN STREET, GLASGOW; SOUTH COLLEGE STREET, EDINBURGH;  
AND WARWICK SQUARE, LONDON.  
MDCCCXLV.

204301  
28. b. 26

SERVICES  
DATE NOV 29 1990

"TRAIN UP A CHILD IN THE WAY HE SHOULD GO," ETC.



# CONTENTS.

---

	Page.
CHAP. I. State of Society in Towns, and inadequacy of means for the Improvement of the Juvenile Population, . . . . .	1
CHAP. II. Facts illustrative of the inadequacy of existing means for the Moral and Intellectual Education of the Poor and Working Classes, . . . . .	18
Testimony of Clergymen, . . . . .	23
Sabbath or Sunday Schools, . . . . .	27
Domestic Servants, . . . . .	28
School Statistics, . . . . .	32
Factory Statistics, . . . . .	34
City Statistics, . . . . .	42
Government Grants, . . . . .	46
CHAP. III. Points and Peculiarities of the Training System—Apparatus, &c., . . . . .	49
Sympathy of Numbers, . . . . .	50
Play-ground and Gallery, . . . . .	54
Physical Exercises, . . . . .	64
Airing Grounds for the Adult Working Population, . . . . .	67
CHAP. IV. Picturing out in Words, . . . . .	70
A Lecture and a Training Lesson, . . . . .	78
Objects and Pictures, . . . . .	79
CHAP. V. Simultaneous Answers, . . . . .	82
Questions and Ellipses conjoined, . . . . .	86
Singing, . . . . .	90
CHAP. VI. Bible Training in School, . . . . .	92
CHAP. VII. Elements of Science—Secular Gallery Training Lessons, . . . . .	104
Monitors, . . . . .	111

	Page.
CHAP. VIII. Emulation, . . . . .	116
Prizes, . . . . .	118
Punishments—The use of the Rod, &c., . . . . .	121
CHAP. IX. Reading, . . . . .	125
Enunciation, . . . . .	130
School Books, . . . . .	133
CHAP. X. Separation of the Sexes, . . . . .	136
CHAP. XI. The Force of Habit, . . . . .	146
Manner of the Trainer, . . . . .	150
CHAP. XII. Illustrations of Moral School Training :— Dorcas—Pride—Calling Names—Respect for the Sabbath—Games of Chance— Cruelty to Animals—We may speak True Words and yet deceive.—Self- Denial—Honourable Feelings cultivated —What is termed a Half-Lie—Honesty —Generosity—Listless Inactivity—Ob- stinacy—The Champion of the School— Moral School Training in Olden Times— Do., Experience of a Friend, . . . . .	152
CHAP. XIII. Elementary Course—Writing—Mental Arithmetic, . . . . .	175
Arithmetic on Slates, . . . . .	176
English Grammar, . . . . .	178
Etymology, . . . . .	180
• Mental Composition, . . . . .	182
Written Composition, . . . . .	183
Mode of Analysing a Sentence Daily during the ordinary English Reading Lessons, . . . . .	184
Geography, . . . . .	185
History, . . . . .	186
Linear Drawing and Sketching, . . . . .	187
Book-keeping, . . . . .	187
CHAP. XIV. Points, Apparatus, &c., in Elementary Training, . . . . .	189
Initiatory or Infant Department—Play- ground, . . . . .	190

	Page.
Class-room—Pictures and Objects,	193
Circular Swing, . . . . .	194
Ball Frame—Bible Stand—Geometrical Figures—Pegs for Hats and Cloaks— Whistle and Hand-Bell, . . . . .	196
Obedience, . . . . .	199
Cleanliness—Vocal Music, . . . . .	200
Prayer, . . . . .	201
The mode of Rising up and Sitting down Simultaneously in the Gallery, . . . . .	202
Children's Diseases, . . . . .	203
Practical Grammar, . . . . .	205
Key to the First Spelling-Book, . . . . .	207
CHAP. *XIV. Juvenile Department—Junior and Senior Apparatus, &c., . . . . .	212
Evening Classes, . . . . .	221
CHAP. XV. Female School of Industry, . . . . .	224
Introduction of the Training System among the Wealthy Classes, . . . . .	225
CHAP. XVI. Weekly Course for Training Schools—Ini- tiatory—Junior and Senior or Advanced, . . . . .	229
CHAP. XVII. Practical Illustrations of Bible Training —The Mode—Psalm or Hymn, . . . . .	234
Importance of Analysis, . . . . .	236
Stage I., Example I., an Emblem Pictured out—"The Lord my Stay," . . . . .	241
Stage I., Example II., a Narrative—"The Man with the Withered Hand," . . . . .	244
Stage I., Example III., an Emblem— "Even as a hen," &c., . . . . .	258
Stage II.—"As the shadow of a great rock in a weary land," &c., . . . . .	263
Stage III.—"As the hart panteth," &c., . . . . .	269
A single term pictured out— "Wisdom," . . . . .	278
Salvation—Saviour, . . . . .	283
Glory—Honour, . . . . .	284

	Page.
CHAP. XVIII. Selections of Scripture for Bible Training Lessons, Stage I.—Narratives, Precepts, &c., . . . . .	287
CHAP. XIX. Selections of Scripture—Weekly Course, Stage II., . . . . .	299
CHAP. XX. Elements of Science—Secular Training Lessons, . . . . .	310
Practical Illustrations, Stage I.—The Camel,	314
„ „ Pottery,	323
„ Stage II.—The Mole,	330
„ „ II.—Air a Con- ductor of Sound, . . . . .	334
CHAP. XXI. List of Secular Lessons, Stage I., . . . . .	342
CHAP. XXII. „ „ II., . . . . .	346
CHAP. XXIII. Normal Training Seminary—Practical Working, . . . . .	353
CHAP. XXIV. Progress and Effects of the System, . . . . .	377
CHAP. XXV. Memoranda, or Hints to Trainers, . . . . .	408
APPENDIX. Plans of Training Schools, Mode of Fitting up, &c., . . . . .	434
Training Schools for City Lanes, . . . . .	450

## PREFACE.

---

THE principles contained in this manual have now been before the public for many years. In the present edition, we have deemed it proper to re-arrange the various divisions of the subject, and to make a few additions.

In the first instance, I had little hope of this work being purchased by any one, and therefore gave away nearly the whole of the first edition. Of late years, however, Providence has so turned the attention of Government, and the public at large, to the subject of Education, and the moral elevation of the poor and working classes, that, in the present or in a less extended form, about 15,000 copies have been sold. This is, so far, encouraging ; but considering the vast importance of the subject in a national and individual point of view, such a circulation is but as a drop in the bucket. It is, however, the hopeful pledge of a still wider and more extensive diffusion.

Very many able treatises have, of late years, appeared

on the subject of Education. They, however, have for the most part treated of some single point of intellectual instruction. We know of no other treatise than the present on the subject of moral training, founded on the only standard of morals—the Word of God. And whilst we have chiefly kept in view the providing of a practical model, which might serve as an antidote to the demoralizing influence *especially* of large towns—to train teachers to practise the system, and to exhibit its leading features shortly in the form of a manual—we have been equally desirous to present the union of intellectual, physical, and moral training, in one complete natural system, for the training of the whole child—in other words, the whole faculties of man.

As a literary production, the work has no claim upon public attention. My sole aim has been to make myself understood, and to render the illustrations as simple as possible. It is intended for parents, clergymen, schoolmasters, and directors of schools. I must, however, beg the reader's forbearance for frequent allusions to subjects already discussed—my apology being the necessity of the case—in order to bring out and illustrate more forcibly, by means of these repetitions, certain other points of the system.

We shall be amply rewarded for all our labours should sound intellectual and moral training continue to be more

attended to, and more generally diffused both at home and abroad.

An objection has been made to the term "Training." We at once reply, Scripture is our authority—Scripture is our warrant. The wise man has said, "Train up a child," and we know of no other expression that can explain our full meaning. Intellectual instruction, as commonly conducted and understood, is not training. Physical exercises must be training; for we cannot instruct or teach a child to ride—he must be trained to do so. Moral instruction is not training, until those under instruction are actually called upon to put in exercise the moral precepts which they have received, as we give them the opportunity of doing when at full liberty in the play-ground.

Moral training must, of course, be intellectual. I may kill a fellow-creature; but, by the law of God and man, it is not murder unless I feel ill-will or enmity towards him, and know or understand what I am doing. If not, I should be a fit candidate for a lunatic asylum. Moral training is literally moral doing, in thought, feeling, and action.

Some points and peculiarities of this system have been adopted by teachers of schools—*e. g.*, one erects a gallery, and terms it the "Gallery System;" another uses simul-

taneous answers, and terms it the "Simultaneous System ;" a third uses ellipses, and calls it the "Elliptical System ;" and a fourth, valuing the union of questions and ellipses in our intellectual exercises, terms it the "Suggestive System ;" but they are all included in it, and are necessary as parts of the system by which the child is morally, intellectually, and physically trained.

Farther, some call the Training System the "Normal System," and many more the "Glasgow System ;" but in Glasgow, we have every possible variety of systems, from the old rote system to the most intellectual. Our term "Training," as we have already said, is Scriptural, and applicable to the whole human family. We shall rejoice to see exhibited a more natural and practical application of these great principles, but we must retain the term, founded as it is on such high authority, and the principle also has been strengthened by nearly twenty years' experience of its power and efficiency.

The system has been of slow growth, extending over a period of nineteen years. The only one principle that was kept steadily in view was the training of the whole *child*. All was practical, and the result of repeated trials.

The introduction of the principle of family training into the public school was one great object, both in its



simplicity and general application to the entire child ; but it was soon discovered that while the school would never supersede (nor could we desire it to do so) the many fireside sympathies of domestic life, still there was in the Training School,—in the intellectual and moral departments,—in the Gallery and in the Play-ground,—a power which the limited number of a family does not possess, viz. *the sympathy of numbers*.

We, therefore, commenced with very young children, before natural propensity had formed into habit, and extended the principle progressively to those more advanced in age, as we discovered the system was capable of being applied to the circumstances, habits, pursuits and understandings of older children.

Without such a system, there will continue to be a “gap” in the moral training of a child—parental training, to a certain extent, will be neutralized—and the preaching of the Word will be less attended to, less understood, and, of course, less effective.

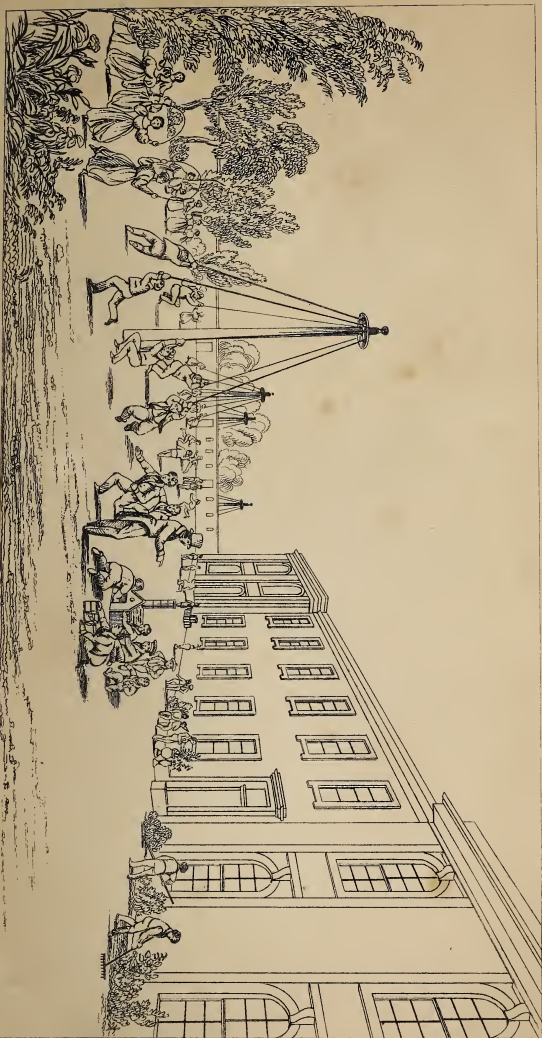
From many thousand facts which we might present, we firmly believe that, added to existing means, the Training System may be rendered a powerful moral and intellectual lever of society.

It may be here stated that the present buildings and

play-grounds, which have accommodated the Normal Training Seminary (the parent Institution), for the last eight years (nearly one-half of the period of its existence), will become the property of the Established Church exclusively on 15th May next. The masters are all members of the Free Church, and are under the necessity of leaving the buildings.

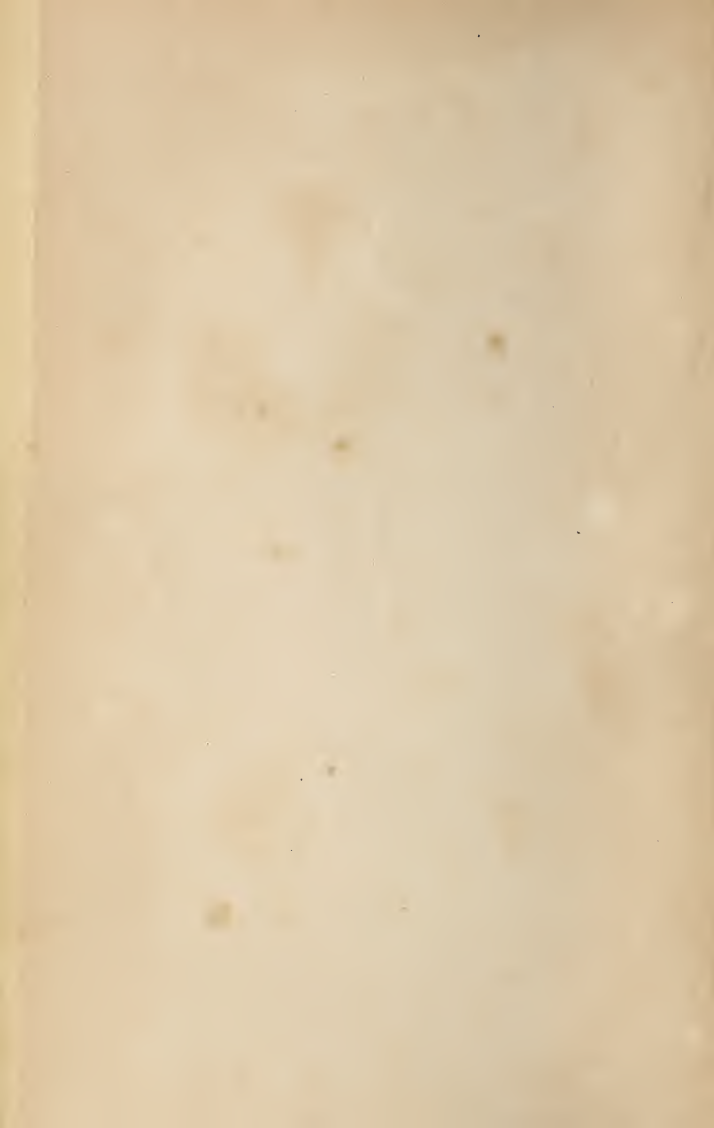
The Free Church Committee are providing new buildings and play-grounds for the trainers, students, and children ; so that the Training System and whole Institution will be continued as formerly.

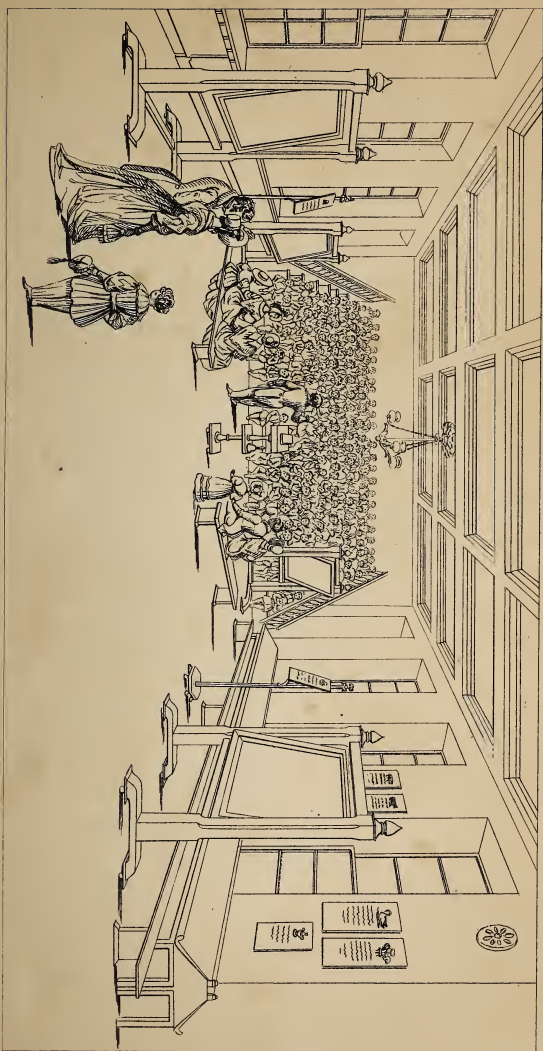
GLASGOW, *25th April*, 1845.



Machlure & Macdonald, Sc.

UNCOVERED SCHOOL ROOM.





McClure & MacDonald, Sec.

COVERED SCHOOL ROOM.



# THE TRAINING SYSTEM.

---

## CHAPTER I.

STATE OF SOCIETY IN TOWNS, AND INADEQUACY OF MEANS FOR THE  
IMPROVEMENT OF THE JUVENILE POPULATION.

BEFORE entering upon the necessity for moral training as a new principle in popular education, we shall answer one or two queries of frequent occurrence, in regard to the original establishment of the Training System. First—What cause or causes led to the original establishment of the training system, and in conjunction with it, a Normal Seminary for the training of school-masters? This is not easily answered, but we may state a few facts which suggested the idea. Most certainly it was not the result of mere reflection in the study or in the parlour, but arose from the daily and yearly observation of ignorance and crime presented to my mind, from the circumstances in which I was providentially placed.

For five years previous to 1819, I was one of a number who distributed to poor old men certain funds raised by subscription, and which it was expected should be paid to the parties monthly at their own dwellings. The small pittance given was only granted after the most minute investigation of the case of each applicant for

relief. My district was one of the lowest and most degraded in the city. During these investigations and private visits, an amount of deceit, and ignorance, and wickedness, was gradually disclosed, which convinced me that the favourite idea of reforming the old was a hopeless one. A few solitary cases indeed there were of persons who had been early imbued with Christian principles, and who had profited thereby ; but with these exceptions, the mass was as impenetrable as the nether millstone. No motive awakened their consideration, save the silver pence, which, when presented, lighted up their eye and warmed their heart. On every other subject save Mammon, they were in a profound sleep. Habits, "our second nature," held them as with an iron grasp.

I therefore turned my attention more particularly to the young ; and as my residence then was at Wellington-place, on the south side of the river, the most direct way to which lay through the Saltmarket, the very "St. Giles of Glasgow," my eyes and ears were shocked several times every day by the profanity, indecency, and vice, which were exhibited by children, and even infants, who were growing up pests to society, and ruined in themselves. Could nothing be done ? was the home-pressed question in my mind. I knew of nothing but a Sabbath-school, for I then participated in the almost universal delusion, that religious instruction would accomplish all, and I had not learned that religious and moral *instruction* and religious and moral *training* are two very different things.

My object was to *seize* a dozen or so of these wild human beings on the streets, and try what, by the blessing of God, might be done with them. But how to accomplish this, and to teach them when brought into



a school-room on a Sabbath evening, I was alike ignorant. Moreover, I understood from others that none but children of the well-disposed could be retained longer than a few afternoons, whilst the love of novelty held its sway. The want of clothing formed another barrier. I therefore determined that none but neighbours should be admitted—that the school-room, although only a kitchen, should be within or close to the district. The locality was confined to two small and narrow lanes, and I gave up the idea of the random mode of catching the children in the streets. It appeared to me that by this plan the want of suitable clothes would not prove so ready an excuse for non-attendance; and the proximity of the residence of the families rendered it easy for the teacher to call upon, or send for, the absentee children.

The result was very favourable on the understanding and morals of these children; and without giving a boy a coat, or any girl an article of dress, in the course of a few months all found decent clothing for themselves. We could fill a volume with the details of the character of the parents and children of this small locality, which presented shades from the most debased, to the simple, although we cannot say the enlightened Christian; but we shall confine ourselves to one fact, exhibiting the extent of their *true* education and religious knowledge, at the first opening of the school.

From about seventy contiguous families I collected twenty-eight boys and girls, from about nine to fourteen years of age, all of whom could read, and nearly all were possessed of bibles. Some of them had been taught in parochial, and others in charity and private schools. The majority of these children were superior in education, such as it was, and also in character, to many of the

ragamuffins and pickpockets who so obviously infested the streets. They were the average run of workmen's and labourers' children, but rude and uncultivated in the extreme. Aware that the fact of having acquired the art of reading the Bible does not infer that its contents are understood or remembered, on the very first evening I took each child apart, and inquired if he or she knew who was the first man? Was there a first man? Did they know any thing about the first man being in paradise, &c.? Only five of the number could answer any one of these questions. Twenty-three had never heard of Adam, or of a first man, or of the garden of Eden, and were as perfectly ignorant of the origin of our race as the merest savage. These, however, were termed religiously educated children, and this in the centre of the commercial metropolis of Scotland, *said to be* the most highly educated nation on the face of the globe. Surely we are living on former fame, and satisfying ourselves too much with the phantoms of our own imaginations. We are reaping as we have sown. We sow little, and therefore we reap little. Under such a system of education the Roman Catholics themselves would be quite safe in putting the Protestant bible into the hands of all their children.

From this period, viz., 1819 to about 1825, we imagined that were the whole juvenile population brought out into such local Sabbath-schools, eventually the mass of the community might be morally elevated; we therefore pushed forward the establishment of a number of these schools in different parts of the city and suburbs; but we gradually discovered that one day's *teaching in school* was not equal in effect to six days' *training on the streets*. Successful as this enterprise was (for the schools

remain till the present day), I found I had been ignorant of the important fact, that *teaching is not training*, and that the sympathy of companionship is more influential than the example and precepts of any master.

Something more and very different therefore appeared wanting—practical good habits must be formed as well as principles inculcated—the children must be taught and superintended during the week, as well as on two hours of a Sabbath evening or morning ; in fact, the natural principles of sympathy, and the insinuating current of evil, must be met by an opposing current of good. It was evident that for children of three to fifteen years of age, twelve years of the most important, because the most impressible period of life, no moral machinery existed for their “godly upbringing.”

Our eyes were now directed every where, in search of any and every thing that might assist our purpose, during our visits to different portions of the United Kingdom. In the meantime the system of Bible training was gradually developed, and worked out in my Sabbath school, which, by the intellectual character of its picturing out in words, simultaneous answers, questions, and ellipses, gallery principle, &c., was made the intellectual department of the first model week-day schools—this method enabling the master to communicate as much knowledge in one, as on the ordinary methods is done in two or three hours.

This principle of intellectual training, so accordant with nature, unexpectedly discovered how the time could be saved in conducting the ordinary elementary branches of a school, whereby the children might have time for amusement in the play-ground, and the master sufficient

leisure for morally superintending them in it ; in fact, for adding moral training as a new principle in the public school. Teachers were immediately trained to this system of intellectual and moral training, and in the course of four or five years, the same training system was in full operation for children of all ages, and for teachers of schools in all branches, as a Normal Training Seminary.

“Prevention is better than cure,” was our motto ; and to begin well we cannot begin too early. My first object therefore was to begin with children under six years of age, before their intellectual and moral habits were fully formed, consequently when fewer obstacles were presented to the establishment of good ones. This experiment then, and ever since, during eighteen years has proved most triumphantly successful, and exhibits the important practical principle, that you increase geometrically in power as you descend in age, for if *training* at twelve years of age be as *one*—at nine it is as *two*—at seven as *four*—at five as *eight*, and at three years of age as *sixteen*.

But we must now enter into particulars, and also take a cursory view of the state of society in general, and the insufficiency of all the existing means, public and private, for its moral and intellectual elevation ; as well as notice some points of the training system which distinguish it from all others ; and also other points which, although not peculiar to it, have yet been adapted so as to form one entire system of training the child—*the whole man*.

The primary object therefore in working out the training system as a model, and in conjunction with it, a Normal Seminary for the professional training of school-masters, was—*First*, to establish a system of moral training in the

public school ; and *Secondly*, to embody it as one system in conjunction with the ordinary elementary branches.

We were aware that parents would not easily be prevailed upon to pay for moral training, even were it practicable to establish it by itself, and apart from the ordinary branches of education, or even to send their children at all to an institution for that purpose, which being unknown, they did not value.

In regard to young children under six years of age, there were comparatively few obstacles presented. The greater difficulty was, how to ingraft moral training on schools generally, so that, without any change, children might be carried forward in all the stages of their subsequent education, without infringing on the amount and variety of the elementary branches.

To accomplish this, *time required to be saved in conducting the ordinary school lessons. New and additional accommodation for the development of the real character and dispositions of the pupils was necessary ; and in addition to all, the master himself required to be trained to the art of conducting the system.*

These several points were gradually attained ; the system laid down was steadily pursued ; and the result has been, that whether it be the very best that might have been adopted or not, it has proved efficient for the great end in view, and has met with the approbation of enlightened practical men, and the unanimous approving voice of the parents of the children.\*

It is admitted that whatever effect school education has had upon the young, direct moral training forms no part of the system pursued in our popular schools.

---

\* See Testimony of Parents.

There is no provision for the training of the affections and moral habits. The necessity, therefore, for such a principle being introduced into the public school, especially in large towns, will appear, when we reflect upon the unprotected and unsuperintended condition of the great mass of the children of the working population.

Educationalists have greatly overlooked that most powerful and efficient principle of our nature, for good or for evil, SYMPATHY—intellectual, but particularly moral sympathy.

Some educational writers, indeed, have recommended that education should embrace the cultivation of the heart, but they have not provided for it, nor explained the means by which it might *practically* be accomplished ; and when asked to state in what manner, and by what apparatus, this should be effected, the almost uniform answer has been : Give the children of the poor moral and religious instruction, and they will become virtuous and good ;—just as if moral instruction were one and the same thing with moral training ; and the mere knowledge of what is right, synonymous with the doing of it.

The initiatory course for children under six years of age being, *of necessity*, the most natural and simple, is made the basis of all the arrangements in the more advanced departments. The habits thus early formed facilitate every future acquirement ; whereas, at a more advanced period, even at five or six years of age, bad habits already formed must be rooted out or subdued, ere good ones can be established.

Although the training schools, infant and juvenile, were originally intended as a new machine for the moral elevation of large towns ; in actual practice they have been found equally successful and efficient in country



districts, and have received the unqualified approbation of clergymen and directors wherever they have been established.

After the family order, there ought to be a master at the head of every infant-training school ; and in the juvenile department, when practicable, the wife or sister of the master may be an occasional assistant. This proposal to carry the family system into school, is not intended to supersede parental training at home, but to assist and strengthen it—to send the child home from school each day improved by its moral, as well as by its intellectual training ; instead of, as at present, decidedly injured by the training of the streets.

Although we do not approve of sending children *early* to a school for mere teaching or instruction, yet for reasons which we shall subsequently give, however well trained the children may be at home, we would in all cases advocate the principle, that they cannot be sent too early to a school for moral training, and that at each stage of their education they should be carried forward on the same *training* system ;—on the broad principle, that while family training fits for domestic, that of the school prepares for public and social life. An early and long-sustained exercise of the intellect may injure the health of both body and mind, but the earliest and longest sustained exercise of the moral affections only adds power and energy to all the faculties.

A certain number of the children of the poor and working classes, even in towns, have the benefit of what is termed a school-education, whether that be the old rote system (a mere exercise of the memory of sounds, without the meaning), or one of a more intellectual character ; but while they are thus taught in the school-room by the

teacher, they are trained by companions on the streets. In the school-house they are not in real life—there is no development of real character and dispositions; consequently, however the master may be willing, yet not having the opportunity, he cannot be, and actually is not, a moral trainer. The public school as at present constituted, is not one for training *the child* as a whole, and consequently has failed in morally elevating the mass of the population. Education must be established on a natural and more complete footing ere we can invest it with its boasted omnipotence.

If moral school training be an advantage to children who are properly attended to at home, what must be the necessity in regard to the thousands of poor neglected ones who crowd our city lanes and alleys! Their parents cannot and do not, either by example, or precept, or superintendence, “train them up in the way they should go;” but on the contrary, often inculcate principles and show an example perfectly the reverse of all that is godly, or sober, or virtuous; thus leaving their offspring a prey to their own propensities, and the evil example and *training* of children as bad as, or worse than themselves. Need we wonder then at the prevalence of crime, and rudeness, and insubordination, and every sort of ungodliness? Need we wonder that these habits should stand proof against every subsequent appliance that may be brought to bear upon such a mass of ignorant and vitiated beings? Large towns are comparatively a new state of society. Commercial and manufacturing pursuits naturally congregate the population into towns; and whatever may have been provided for the moral improvement of the old, no adequate provision has been made for the young, whom we must again call *the most*



*hopeful*, because the most *impressible* portion of society. The powerful tendency of their sympathies and susceptibilities to evil, has been left without any suitable antidote. It is no wonder then that our large towns continue to sink in the scale of morals.

Large towns and factories, so far from proving nurseries of vice, as at present, might, by the proper direction of the *sympathy of numbers*, be rendered powerful means of moral and intellectual elevation.

The rural population of Scotland, upon the whole, is superior to that of the towns, arising from the fact that, for centuries past, more minute Christian and educational means have been adopted for their improvement. The towns have been left very much to themselves; the natural tendency therefore has been to evil. We are not certain if this holds true in respect of England; for low as the population of its towns are, from the inadequate application of means for their intellectual and moral improvement, yet from causes which it would be foreign to our purpose to discuss here, we believe the inhabitants of the agricultural districts are upon the whole more sunk in morals than those in towns.

Wherever then, the minds and manners of any population are low and debased, in town or country, the *complete* training system will be found a powerful antidote; at the same time, from the concentrated power of the SYMPATHY OF NUMBERS in towns, the progress of evil is stronger, and the importance and necessity of the training system are more apparent.

The greatest barrier to a proper system of training, arises from the almost universal idea, that moral teaching or instruction and moral training are the same thing. This fatal mistake runs through all the arrangements of

popular education. That teaching or instruction forms a part of training is unquestionably true, but that these are one and the same thing is as untrue as to suppose that, by my being told and shown how to manage a horse, I could ride for the St. Leger, at Doncaster, or that by the same lecturing process I could make a watch. Dr. Samuel Johnson remarks—"We cannot by lecturing enable a person to make a shoe;" but whilst he has most truly and wisely stated this, unfortunately for the world he has left us without any practical method by which training may be accomplished in that department to which he referred—the human intellectual and moral powers. Locke and others have written much and well, and they have told what should be done, but not how it might be accomplished. Where we argue for moral training, it must not be supposed that we mean that mere *external* habit, by many called "morals," which the police and penitentiaries may fully accomplish, and which the courtesies and graces of polished society in some measure present; but morals, grounded on the unchangeable law of God, as contained in the Divine Word, *which must be the basis of all true moral training*—the spring from which all actions ought to flow, and the standard of every principle to which to appeal, and by which alone the conduct can be guided, when no superintending eye is upon the child, save that of the omniscient and omnipresent God. Still we claim for the power of habit all that Scripture maintains, and experience proves to be true. To secure efficiency, under God's blessing, the principle is, that to intellectual and moral teaching there must be superadded intellectual and moral training. The practice must accompany the principle.

The term education has been too much a watchword

from the senate, the bar, and the platform, without attaching to the term any very definite idea. *Quantity* not *quality*, has been the desideratum for what education ought in reality to be.

The education of a properly conducted family is a training of the WHOLE MAN ; the physical movements of the children are attended to, their intellectual powers are cultivated, religious instruction is afforded, and their moral habits are formed ; whereas, in an ordinary school, the "*heads*" of the children receive almost exclusive attention. They are too confined in the school-room to admit of physical or moral development, and, therefore, they are not under physical and moral training. They may receive religious instruction ; but *religious instruction*, although a part of it, is not moral training. Moral training embraces not merely an exercise of the outward actions, but of the inward thoughts and intents of the heart. The Scripture command is, to "train" the "child." Every system of education, therefore, which does not provide for moral training, must be defective, and falls short of the Divine command.

A few of the evil propensities and habits may be mentioned, which it is the duty of the trainer to restrain and suppress as they are developed ; whether mental, in the school gallery, or practical, in the school play-grounds, viz., rudeness, selfishness, deceit, indecency, disorder, evil-speaking, cruelty, want of courtesy, anger, revenge, injustice, impatience, covetousness, and dishonesty, so fearfully general in society.

On the contrary, all the amiable feelings and Christian virtues must be cultivated, such as—speaking truth, obedience to parents and all in lawful authority, honesty, justice, forbearance, generosity, gentleness, kindness,

fidelity to promises, courteousness, habits of attention, docility, disinterestedness, kindness to inferior animals, pity for the lame, and the distressed, and the weak in intellect ; and in general, doing to others as we would wish to be done by.

Such evil propensities must be subdued, and moral habits formed, not by teaching, but by training. We cannot lecture a child into good manners, or change habits of any kind by the longest speech. The physical, intellectual, or moral habit, is only changed by a succession, or rather by a repetition of *doings*. Obedience— instant obedience, ought to be the daily and hourly practical lesson in every department.

Family training is the first standard of school training, but the school possesses a power which the family does not ; and that is, as we have said—"THE SYMPATHY OF NUMBERS." At a subsequent period we shall advert to this great and powerful principle, and in the meantime we shall give a short analysis of our warrant for establishing and recommending this system, which we conceive to be the desideratum for the "godly upbringing"\* of the youth, more particularly of large towns. The Bible says, "Train up a child in the way he should go." Train a child from its earliest years—from infancy till it is full grown ; and this ought to be done at all times and in all circumstances—personally, when parents can, and by proxy when they cannot. It must not be the head of the child merely that is to be exercised or trained, but *the child*—the whole man—if we are to hope for the fulfil-

---

\* Our venerable reformers had this noble end in view, in regard to the parochial schools, but for which the proper machinery was not provided, nor were arrangements made by which it could be accomplished.

ment of the promise, that "when he is old, he will not depart from it."

The precept is, to train up a child "in the way he should go." "In the way," implies personal superintendence. I am to train "*in* the way"—not to put a child *on* the way, and leave him to himself, or worse than by himself, with evil companions; but "*in* the way he should go;" and every Christian parent will at once acknowledge that the way his child "should go" is the way of all God's commandments—in regulating the thoughts, feelings, and outward demeanour. This has been fulfilled in many a family, but where have been the models of school training? and yet from the age of five or six years, to fourteen or sixteen, two-thirds of the time of our youth is spent at school under this defective system, or at play under a practical influence too generally positively immoral. Need we wonder then, that the youth of our large towns grow up ignorant of their duty to God, to society, and to themselves, seeing in actual fact they are not trained to practise these duties? Our principle, therefore is, morally "train," not simply teach, from infancy to manhood; and if we cannot at all times be with our children, we are bound to provide suitable substitutes; and who more natural or more likely to be qualified, or placed in such favourable circumstances to do so, than the public teacher under whom we place our children for their elementary instruction?

That parents can do little more than advise or teach their children how they ought to conduct themselves, and cannot train, may be drawn from the obvious state of society. Can the mason, or bricklayer, or joiner, who may be engaged a couple of miles from home, train his children? He leaves at six o'clock, morning, before his

children are out of bed, and returns in the evening when he and they are tired and almost ready for sleep. The mother is busy during the day preparing or purchasing the food, attending to her infant, or her hands are in the washing-tub. The elder boys and girls are out at work, the younger, it may be, at school, or at play in the street with such companions as they can find. The mother is to train the young, it is true, but are they with her? Even the infant boy, if in health, will escape to the door-step, and prefer crawling in the mud, to being tied to the apron-strings of his mother. Can the merchant, when busy on 'Change—the factory man among his spindles—or the professional man in his study, train his children? No—it is chiefly done by proxies. We know that the Divine command is nothing short of speaking to the young “as they walk by the way, as they sit down, and as they rise up.” “Line upon line, precept upon precept; here a little, and there a little.” Is religious instruction of a Sabbath evening at home sufficient? Is the public worship of the sanctuary? Is learning to read the Bible in school sufficient? If not, what is sufficient? Let any man of calm reflection answer the question. Amidst all the public means of improvement, where is the moral training machine for his children, from three to fifteen years of age?

For the consideration of politicians and philanthropists, we remark, in regard to the effects of moral school training, that, of several thousands of children who have attended the model schools of the Normal Seminary, it is not known that any one has been accused of crime, or brought before a magistrate. This is particularly noticeable, in respect of one of the model schools, which for seven years was situated in the Saltmarket—the very centre of vice.



On the contrary, a large number of these children are now grown up excellent characters.

In the play-ground of this institution, notwithstanding that two hundred children daily amused themselves under no physical restraint, small fruit, such as strawberries and currants, were permitted to grow and ripen untouched. Some little rascals *from without* were the only depredators, and when a thief was occasionally seized in the act of stealing a flower or a berry, the master brought in the stranger culprit before the gallery, which furnished a suitable text for a moral lesson ;—the whole scholars sitting as judges.

Look at the fact, that in London upwards of 3000 policemen are employed for the metropolitan districts—even the city of London proper, having a population of 50,000 souls, requires 501 policemen to keep them in order and protect property. The country has spent half a million sterling, in the establishment of Millbank prison, Westminster, as a means of restoration from crime. What might a similar sum not accomplish in the way of prevention, by the establishment of moral training schools, embracing of course the ordinary elementary branches? The truth is, *the means are not in operation* (except as mere model establishments) *whereby the youth of our large towns and villages can be raised morally and intellectually*. We have plenty of institutions for the correction and punishment of crime. The Scriptural Training system is the only CERTAIN preventive—the only one approaching to an accordance with family training—and the only natural means for eventually elevating the tone of home education, when such well-school-trained children shall have become the parents of a future generation.

## CHAP. II.

FACTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE INADEQUACY OF EXISTING MEANS FOR  
THE MORAL AND INTELLECTUAL ELEVATION OF THE POOR AND  
WORKING CLASSES.

It is a general belief that Scotland owes its moral and intellectual character to the system of its parochial schools. We do not deny that they have had a share in producing the results, but it is much smaller than is generally imagined. The parochial school is only part of a more extended moral machine, the merits of which we are not called upon in this publication, to discuss. Suffice it to say, that there never was any system of communication pointed out for the parochial schools of Scotland. The Bible must be a school-book, but the master is not required to explain or analyse it ; and the Westminster Assembly's Shorter Catechism, with the alphabet printed along with it, must be committed to memory. It is not imperative to use any other books ; and in some cases the children of remote parishes have been confined to these two as their only school books. The system, if system it can be called, that attracts the attention, is simply this, that by law, in every rural parish (not in towns,) however small, the heritors or landed proprietors are bound to provide a school-house, a dwelling-house, and a garden, for the schoolmaster, with an annual endowment of £22 or £24,



to enable him to charge for English reading a small fee of from 1s. 6d. to 2s. 6d. quarterly, from each child ; other branches being charged additional : but the mode of conducting the education is left entirely to the taste of the schoolmaster. It may be the oldest possible rote system, or the most intellectual. Many teachers of high attainments have shown great intelligence in their mode of conducting their schools ; but many have been woefully careless and inefficient.

School-houses are provided for teaching, but there is no provision for *moral training*. Play-grounds (or uncovered schools) are not attached to the parochial school-houses ; consequently the teacher has not the opportunity of superintending the children at play, or of training them on their return to the covered school, to the right and proper understanding of their conduct towards each other during the intervals of unrestrained and joyous amusement. The variety of the ages of his pupils, and also of the elementary branches which he is called upon to teach, does not afford the necessary time or leisure to do more than *to get through with their lessons*. Many of the most enlightened and energetic schoolmasters have expressed a desire to adopt the training system *as a whole*, but the heritors generally have declined to be at the expense of providing play-grounds and galleries ; and in the case of private teachers (having no endowment,) the small fees paid by the parents do not enable them to provide such accommodation. Some clergymen and other directors of private schools, however, have cheerfully provided both. Until the one parish school be subdivided into at least three departments, each with a separate well-trained master, we cannot expect to have a perfect system of education and training.

Without entering into particulars, we may state that the heritors, in conjunction with the minister, choose the teacher, and the presbytery of the neighbourhood examine his attainments, and if he be found incapable, may reject him; in which case the heritors must select another candidate.

While it is admitted that the ordinary week-day school has failed in morally elevating the youth of our country, we must assert that the real fault does not rest with the teachers of schools, but in the parsimony and prejudice of parents and the public at large, who do not value their services as they ought, and therefore remunerate them oftentimes little better than they would a common labourer.

The elementary English schoolmaster does not stand in his proper position in society; he is not paid according to the value of his office. No doubt the demand on the part of the poor and working classes is for simple "*reading, writing, and counting*," without any anxiety whether their children can or cannot understand what is before them. But what shall we say of the middle and more wealthy classes of society who willingly pay 5s. or 10s. for a single lesson for their children in music or dancing, and who grudge a mere trifle for a whole quarter's English teaching?

After the parochial schools of Scotland the Prussian system of national education, in point of antiquity, holds the next place. The Prussian, like the Scotch, is also defective in moral training—both are suited to country districts, not to the sympathy of numbers in towns. This is shown by the reports on the Prussian system, and by those who have spent much time in investigating them. German writers are aware of this defect, and now

strongly recommend the same principle as we do ourselves. The following is from the Foreign Quarterly Review for November, 1844, Review of "Beneke's Theory and Practice of Education." The talented reviewer observes—"This is the favourite distinction made by that excellent philanthropist, Mr. ———, in Glasgow. 'To instruct,' says the northern philanthropist, 'is comparatively an easy matter—a retail dealing in special commodities, a dexterous juggling with so many balls ; but in order to educate you must not merely instruct, but you must *train* ; to have an educational system at all, it must be a 'training system.' This is what the inquisitive traveller will find written in large letters in the lobby of the Normal School of Glasgow ; and to the same purpose, the German tells us that *instruction* deals almost exclusively in mere intellectual notions of external dexterity, while *education* has mainly to do with the formation of the character, through the emotions. There is nothing new in this, certainly, but it is a great and important truth. A mere *teacher* does not do half his work ; he must work on the heart and on the habits, as well as on the head of his pupils."

"A brain is not the only part of a boy ; and his brain is a thing of living growth and arborescence ; not an empty box which an adult can furnish with labelled tickets of various arts and sciences, and then say, 'My work is done, behold an educated young gentleman.'"

The great end of all education, however mistaken as to the means, is unquestionably moral improvement, and with it intellectual improvement. We know of no *solid* moral culture which does not pass through or carry the understanding along with it. One object of our present treatise is, to show that whilst intellectual is necessary to

moral culture, and therefore inseparably connected with it, yet that they are distinct, and that intellectual cultivation may be conducted with no moral improvement whatever, but even the reverse. To have moral results, we must tread on moral ground—cultivate the understanding upon moral subjects, and exercise those affections implanted by our great Creator, *practically* in the affairs of everyday life, upon, and according to, the only standard of faith and manners, namely, the Word of God.

Two means are presented to the public eye for these great ends—teaching schools for the young, and preaching from the pulpit to both old and young. That the former has failed, we believe no practical philanthropist will deny ; and tender as is the ground upon which we presume to tread, we must state that we believe the latter has also failed of much which we might legitimately have expected. The former has failed, as we have seen, from the unintellectual method generally pursued, and from its being at the best moral teaching or instruction, and not training. The latter has failed to a similar extent, not because the truth has not been faithfully told, but because the hearers have not actually understood what they did hear. Scripture terms are very frequently not understood. In nine cases out of ten they are not comprehended by the mass of an ordinary congregation—a fact which, by investigation, we have proved to our own satisfaction a thousand times. In our training mode we say, “a lesson is not given till it is received.” How then can we receive the important lessons of the preacher, if the terms on which the lesson rests are not also comprehended ? Many clergymen have expressed to us their conviction, that they preached over the heads of their people ; and that they felt the necessity of coming down

to the level of their hearers, but that they found it a most difficult task to perform. Our answer has been, Come down a little certainly, but bring up your juvenile hearers as quickly as you can, by introducing a course of Bible training into your week-day schools. One day in seven is too limited a course for a subject so vast and important. Give us moral training, founded on Bible *training*, for the youth of our population, and we shall soon have intelligent hearers in the sanctuary. Till then the voice of the preacher, to a great extent, must fall pointless even on many sincere spiritually-minded persons. It is a melancholy reflection to think how little is remembered of many discourses, exhibiting great talent—much labour in preparation, and which have been delivered by the man of God after much secret prayer. The truth is, our schools have not been what they ought to be—nurseries for the Church; and therefore we presume to sound the alarm, that even the ministry of the word fails partly, because it is clothed in language, or rather mixed with expressions and scriptural allusions, which the people have not been prepared to understand.

Oftentimes the whole meaning of a sentence rests upon one word as upon a *pivot*. It is clear therefore, that should the meaning of such terms, or expressions, or emblems, not be understood, the whole falls on the ear as if delivered in a foreign tongue.

Simplicity is certainly the highest and last attainment of a public speaker, whether from the desk or from the pulpit; and nothing tends so much to train one's self to the habit of being simples as to converse with the young and the ignorant.

A clergyman of the Church of England, celebrated and highly popular, complained to me that he felt his well-

finished discourses fall powerlessly on his people, and that he could not make himself simple enough. I took the liberty of recommending to him to preach to the young once a-month in the afternoon—announcing his design, and expressing a wish that the more advanced in age would attend, while he addressed the juvenile portion of the congregation. He followed my advice, and in a year afterwards, stated that his “*child*” discourses were the most useful, and the best understood by all ; and that he never failed in having a very crowded and attentive audience.

A clergyman in one of the towns of Scotland, and a former student, says, “If I have succeeded in expressing myself simply in my sermons, and thus making an impression on my hearers, I must confess I owe it all to my course of training in the Normal Seminary.”

Another clergyman expresses himself as follows :—

“First. I do decidedly consider myself benefited by my attendance at the Normal Seminary, both, I am inclined to think, as regards my pulpit duties, and particularly as regards my labours among the young.

“Secondly. I have no hesitation in saying that all young men studying for the ministry would find it to be their own interest to avail themselves of the practical experience in teaching, which the training system so well affords, in order to their future usefulness and success as teachers of the gospel both among young and old.

“Thirdly. I would say that much has been done within the last twenty years, for the intellectual and moral culture of the rising generation, under the various systems, or modifications of systems, which have been successively brought forward ; and yet without at all undervaluing these (they were generally great steps forward,) I would



unhesitatingly say that in none of them is there the same security so distinctly given for a sound useful education, as that which the training system presents; a system which I hope will ere long have granted to it the prominence it justly demands, and the beneficial and substantial effects of which I hope yet to see developing themselves in the high intellectual attainments, and upraised moral excellence of our people generally. Such briefly are the views which I am led to entertain of that system of moral training, to advance which you have laboured so assiduously and devotedly. You have not done so in vain; the effects of it are even now felt by many; and I trust that ere long you will have the happiness of seeing it yet more successful. Of its ultimate success I have no fears."

Extract of a letter from a Presbyterian clergyman, who was trained at this Seminary about eleven years ago:—

"5th Nov. 1844.

"It is with feelings of the greatest pleasure and gratitude that I look back upon those days I spent in the Glasgow Normal Seminary. In my own experience, I have felt the greatest advantages derived from the system there practised, not merely in the facility which I acquired there in imparting knowledge to children in my visitations, but even in my pulpit ministrations. My humble opinion is, that a certificate from the Normal Seminary is as essential, if not more so, than many of those which students are required to have before license. I have introduced the training system into two schools, though at first with much reluctance to the teachers, yet afterwards with their highest approbation, and the most beneficial results. My kindest wishes for you and your zealous endeavours for the moral and intellectual training of youth."

A clergyman of the Church of England writes as follows, of date 25th March, 1844 :—

“I am happy to say that the ‘training system,’ introduced two years ago into my national school, has been attended with the best success. In reading, writing, arithmetic, both slate and mental, the school will bear a comparison with ANY OTHER which I have seen. But there are some particulars in which the system appears to produce results almost, I should think, peculiar to itself. I will select two or three of the most gratifying of these results in our own experience.

#### MORAL EFFECTS.

“During the whole of the last summer, we have no reason to suppose that, in any single instance, were any of the gooseberries, currants, or strawberries, in our noble playground, taken by the children. The fruit when ripe was gathered and divided among them in the school-room.

#### SCRIPTURAL KNOWLEDGE.

“At the last public examination which I attended, the children showed an acute and accurate acquaintance with a large portion of the Old Testament, such as would have done credit to the candidates for ordination. They displayed also an intelligent acquaintance with the leading doctrines which are referred to in our Articles.

#### GEOGRAPHY.

“The knowledge conveyed to the children of the great outlines of this branch of knowledge, I consider to be perfect, by which I mean something very different from what is usually taken away from the more respectable schools in England.



with them, but leave them of necessity to the training of the streets? Our object, therefore, has been to render the schoolmaster a moral trainer, when the parent cannot be with his child, and thus to direct the *sympathy of numbers*, out of doors as well as at the fireside, into a right and Christian channel.

But it is stated—Why propose such a change in education as implies that the old school-house is no longer fitted for the purpose? Our answer is, the old school, at the best, only taught or trained the intellect of the child, and made no provision for improving his moral and physical habits. This important object, as we have already shown, requires a gallery in school, and a contiguous play-ground or *uncovered* school, for the moral development and training of the children.

Why, it may be asked, at this late stage of the world, introduce moral training in school, when moral instruction and intellectual instruction have hitherto done so well? We answer—Education hitherto has not done well; upon the whole, it has made but a slight moral impression on society. It has done little for its moral elevation. Take away family training, and what have we left that school education has accomplished in this respect? Marvellously little indeed. Reading, writing, and arithmetic, are imagined to be sovereign remedies for the evils of the youth of large towns. Will any one acquainted with the moral condition of this novel, *and to some a fearful*, state of society, for a moment conclude, that the knowledge of these arts, with mind and *habits* totally untrained to the proper use of them, ever can morally elevate the sunken masses in such cities as Manchester, Glasgow, London, Liverpool, Edinburgh, Paisley, Birmingham, and Dundee? As well might we hope

that by sowing hay-seed, we should reap corn. The old system may do, *so far*, for the country, but the training system is requisite for the moral elevation of society in towns and manufacturing villages.

In the training school, children, of whatever age, when from under the eye of parents, who are engaged in various occupations during the day, are kept from the evil companionship of the streets, and not merely taught but trained in a moral atmosphere.

Example is more powerful than precept ; but *sympathy* is more powerful than either, or both combined. And when example, precept, and sympathy combine, as in boys of the same age, an influence is in operation, compared with which, the example and precept of parents and guardians are rendered comparatively powerless.

The power of the sympathy of numbers is felt every day in politics, in religion, and in vice.\* Our towns are the centres of political power, religion is apt to cool without numbers, and vice is most prolific in city lanes and the busy haunts of men. The same holds true in the training school gallery for intellectual and moral culture, and in the play-ground for moral development. In both, the sympathy of numbers is a most powerful influence for good or for evil, according as the children are or are not properly superintended and trained by the master.

The training of a well-regulated family is made the

---

\* We are all aware what a powerful influence the sympathy of numbers has in a crowded meeting, both on speakers and hearers, and the chilling effect of the opposite condition, even when truth, not numbers, is intended to sway the audience.

standard of the system, with an additional power which no single family possesses, viz., *sympathy of numbers* of the same age, and having the same pursuits.

There is an intellectual and a moral sympathy that children feel with those of the same age, which is not felt by the members of a single family. Other sympathies are indeed experienced in the family, which no school can possibly furnish; yet intellectually, and even morally, the school is a necessary and powerful auxiliary. In a family, the boy at twelve sympathises not with his brother at nine or ten, and still less with his sister at seven or eight; he naturally chooses for his companions those similar in age and pursuits, and makes the choice from *sympathy*.

With half a dozen children in a class of different ages like a family, the questioning must all be individual; whereas a gallery of 80 or 100 of nearly the same age (and the nearer the better), the questioning, and development, and training may be conducted chiefly simultaneously; and thus, whatever answers are brought out by the trainer, from one or more of the children, can be made the possession of all, so that every one may learn what any one knows—thus diffusing knowledge more widely, and the variety of natural talents and dispositions operating favourably on all. A similar effect takes place in the moral development of dispositions and habits in the play-ground, which may be noticed by the trainer on the return of the children to the school gallery, and when again the sympathy of numbers operates favourably in applauding the good deed, or condemning the misdemeanour. There is a power, therefore, in numbers, not experienced in individual teaching or training; and the play-ground and the gallery conjoined, under proper

management and superintendence, afford *the most perfect sympathy.*

#### PLAY-GROUND AND GALLERY.

In our introductory observations we stated, that in the early working out and arrangement of this system, *time required to be saved in conducting the ordinary school lessons; new and additional accommodation for the development of the real character and dispositions of the pupils was necessary.* This was accomplished by the introduction of a play-ground and a gallery, with the accompanying arrangements.

#### PLAY-GROUND.

The play-ground may be described as the *uncovered* school-room. The one *covered* school-room is not a sufficient platform for the development and exercise of all the powers, dispositions, and character of the child.

The play-ground has a salutary influence upon the children, bodily and mentally. The hourly egress and ingress to and from the uncovered and covered school-rooms, with the accompanying marching and singing, cultivate order, obedience, and precision.

The play-ground animates, invigorates, and permits *the steam* which may have accumulated *to escape*, not in furious mischief, but in innocent, joyous, and varied amusements, under the superintendence of the master.

There is in the training school so arranged, not merely the means of keeping the children from bad habits usually contracted in the streets, but the opportunity of forming good ones. A boy may be told not to quarrel when he

leaves the ordinary school ; but mark him at the bottom of the stairs, or at the corner of the street, the moment the school dismisses, and, like a bird newly escaped from its cage, he is apt to drive furiously against everything he meets with. Let one boy take a top from another, and what follows will be an ebullition of the worst feelings of our nature. Thus both shall have erred, the one exercising the *taking* or stealing propensity, the other, or perhaps both, the brutish propensity of fighting. The law that will decide the question, is neither reason nor justice, but physical force.

A boy, when provoked, will get angry in a training school as in any other school, and he may give his companion a box on the ear, and may probably receive one in return ; but here the matter must stop, for even should the master not happen to be present, the children around will instantly stop the quarrel. The habit of refraining from fighting curbs and weakens the propensity, just as indulgence increases and strengthens it.

The true character and dispositions are best developed at play with companions similar in years and pursuits. A play-ground, however, may either be a moral training ground, or a mischief-ground. It is the latter too generally when the children are left alone, without any authoritative superintending eye upon them.

The public schoolmaster can only be a superintendent, by having a closely attached uncovered spot, as a part of his establishment, of sufficient dimensions to enable his pupils to have full liberty for joyous recreation. A janitor or juvenile assistant cannot supply the place of the master. The person who superintends must be the same who reviews the conduct of the children, and must be the felt and acknowledged head of the particular

department of the school. They must be his own scholars.

Some persons would have a play-ground at a distance from the school-room. This does not enable the master to be superintendent, and would only reduce the training ground to a place for bodily exercise. Unquestionably the characters and dispositions of the children would be developed without the presence of the master ; such development, however, could not lead to any moral training. What is contended for is, not the physical training in one place, the intellectual in another, and the moral in a third, but the whole each day, and under one superintendence. At home, training may be conducted to a certain extent at the fireside ; but home training, highly valuable and important as it is, no more makes up for the school, than the school does for the family. The child who is exclusively trained at home, is not so well fitted for the duties of active life ; he is ignorant of much that he ought to know, and which he ought to be trained to shun ; more particularly, he is ignorant of himself ; his real dispositions and character have not been fully developed, and that at a period of life when there is a reasonable hope of their being checked and regulated.

The play-ground, or “uncovered school,” as we have already said, permits the superabundant animal spirits or “steam” to escape, while at the same time it adds to the health of the pupils, affords relaxation, and secures contentment with their other lessons in-doors, without the usual coercion which is necessary when there is no play-ground.

Flowers and small fruit ought to be planted in the ground, or at least in pots, when the place may be so confined as not to admit of having flower-borders, so that



the principle may be practised—"Look at everything and touch nothing," thus exercising an important principle for after life, viz., honesty and self-control.\*

The master must arrange his in-door exercises so as to *save time*, from what in the ordinary routine fully occupied his time and attention. This is accomplished by the introduction of the

#### GALLERY.

The use of a gallery, coupled with other parts of the system, is found in practice to save the requisite time in the intellectual department, to enable the master to superintend the play-ground exercises, and also furnishes leisure to the children during school hours, for healthful sport and recreation in the open air.

The play-ground and gallery, therefore, are inseparable, not merely for the moral, but for the intellectual training, as we shall afterwards show by examples.

The gallery is an indispensable part of the machinery of the training system, in all cases where there is a large number of pupils.†

It is preferable that the children should be placed in parallel lines, however small the class may be. Semi-circles or squares do not secure the eye and attention equally to parallel lines; and should the number of pupils exceed two rows of six each, the one seat must rise above the other. Even in the case of only two rows,

---

\* See the testimony of 272 parents, representing above 600 children, attending the four model schools of the Normal Seminary.

† For the position, height, form, &c., see appendix; as also the apparatus and modes of arranging the play-ground.

the second one ought to be raised a few inches higher, as much so as to enable the head and shoulders to be seen above in front, and so on, whatever number of forms may be required.

For the proper conducting of the Bible and secular daily classes, which are usually given to the whole school, as well as for reviewing the children's conduct in the play-ground, it is necessary that the gallery be capable of seating the entire scholars.

The gallery so constructed, enables the trainer with more regularity and precision to conduct the physical exercises, which are requisite according to the age of the pupils, whereby the attention may be arrested and secured. It enables the master and scholars to fix their eye more easily upon each other while presenting an object or picturing out any point of a subject, and also while drawing the lesson. Every word spoken is more easily heard by all. Individual, but more particularly *simultaneous* answers are more readily obtained—order is promoted, and instant obedience and fixed attention are more certainly secured than when children are placed at desks, on level forms, in semicircles or in squares. Imitation and social sympathy also operate powerfully with children when answering simultaneously or individually, as also when reciting or singing rhymes or hymns, which is the usual practice between every lesson. And what is most important of all, breathless attention is secured while the master reviews any case of misconduct of any of the children, or pictures out its consequences. The whole gallery join in this as they do in every one of the exercises, whether secular, religious, or moral.

The Right Honourable Sir James Graham, in his speech on education, when proposing a grant to this



institution, was pleased to say, in reference to this system—  
 “ One of the greatest improvements of modern times, in  
 reference to education, was that system of education  
 which was known by the name of the Training System,  
 and which experience had proved to be in the highest  
 degree efficient. In Glasgow, a Normal School had been  
 established by an individual, whom it was impossible to  
 praise too highly—Mr. ———, where this system of simul-  
 taneous education was first tried on any scale worthy of  
 notice.” \* \* \* \* \*

\* \* “ He believed by that grant there would be provided  
 for Scotland a number of schoolmasters, trained in the  
 best system of education, adequate to the supply of  
 parochial schools throughout the whole of that country ;  
 and his conviction was, that under this arrangement,  
 the education of Scotland would be placed on a complete  
 and most satisfactory foundation.” \*

All education, whether of a strictly moral or strictly  
 intellectual character, must be slow and progressive.  
 “ There is no royal road to learning,” it is true. Every step  
 must be taken—every inch of ground must be gone over ;  
 but *why not have a railroad ?* why maintain the unnatural  
 principle of packing as many children as possible in a  
 school-room ? measuring the square of each child, who must  
 breathe the pestilential air of confinement, whose physical  
 and intellectual powers are often injured, sometimes des-  
 troyed, and the whole source of whose animal spirits, when  
 not crushed or broken down, is only restrained by the fear  
 of punishment, and is ready to break forth into mischief  
 the first moment they are liberated from their cage of

---

\* House of Commons, February 28th, 1843.—Lord Ashley’s Motion on  
 the Moral and Religious Education of the Working Classes.

confinement. They therefore hate school and schooling ; whereas, the play-ground and gallery, with their proper and attendant exercises, secure for school a great affection. What is loved, therefore, is sure to be followed.

It is as impracticable for a teacher to train morally and intellectually without a gallery and a play-ground, as it would be for a mechanic to work without his tools. The having both of these auxiliaries does not form a training school without the trained master ; and the master who is without these is of course unsuccessful. The frequent deviations from this indispensable arrangement, are the causes why there are so many failures in schools having the system professedly in view, but which are only *imitation* training schools, being either without a trained master, or a play-ground and a gallery.

Since the establishment of our model, a gallery has been introduced into many schools, and on which the scholars have been placed, without the system of teaching having been altered in other respects ; but the gallery without the mode of development and training, is no more a part of the training system, than is the play-ground without its superintendent, and the subsequent moral revision.

There is no doubt a great difficulty in procuring a sufficient extent of ground for the purpose of play-grounds for schools of 80 or 100 ; and it is extremely high-priced in the lanes and streets of a crowded city, where moral training is imperiously required ; but independently of the moral improvement of the people, the actual cost would be less than is expended upon police, bridewells, prisons, houses of refuge, public prosecutions, and transportation of criminals.\*

---

\* For plans of training schools, suited to CITY LANES, see Appendix.

With such machinery in operation, and surrounded for several hours a-day by such *a world* of pupils, it is the province of the shrewd, intelligent, and pious superintendent, to watch and *direct* all their movements ; and whilst he daily participates in their juvenile sports, he, in consequence, *gradually* gains a thorough knowledge of their *true* dispositions, which, at the proper time and season, he applauds or condemns on the principles of the system, an example of which is subjoined, and which applause or reproof, be it observed, is not given *at the moment* the circumstances occur *in* the play-ground, but rather when the children have re-entered the school, and are seated in the gallery. The impression made on the culprit in such circumstances, is much more lasting ; and, what is also of great importance, the whole of the children have thus an opportunity of hearing a generous action applauded, or ungenerous and vicious conduct condemned.

For example, a child of a family commits a fault—he may steal his neighbour's toy, or 'take it' (as stealing in embryo is too often called) ; this propensity will be checked by a mother or father, in every variety of shape, according to their capabilities and temperament. Under favourable circumstances the parent feels indignant at the exhibition of such a crime, in one so near and dear to him. The feelings excited (however much they may be under control), are instinctively perceived by the keen eye of the child, and, in a greater or less degree, shut the avenues to the little one's heart ; and both parties being under excitement, what passes on such an occasion in the way of check or advice, too frequently goes for nothing. There is less danger of such feelings in an experienced trainer, whose regard and attentions are ne-

cessarily divided amongst a hundred pupils. And we shall again suppose, that one boy steals his play-fellow's toy—it may be a *ball* or a *spinning-top*—this happens in the play-ground, *freely at play*, for it is only when perfectly at liberty that juvenile character is truly exhibited. The master sees this, or is told of it; he takes no notice of the circumstance at the moment, but when the children are again seated in the school gallery, as usual, he commences the process of examination (elliptically and interrogatively, *i. e.* the children answering questions, and filling in ellipses), in the shape of a story about a boy who stole his neighbour's top or something else. In a moment *the culprit's head hangs down*—it is unnecessary to mark him out—he *is visible to all* by his downcast and reddened countenance. (Ninety-nine out of the hundred, if we except the injured party, sit in *cool* judgment upon the case.) In the meantime the trainer reminds the child and all present, that, although *he* had not observed him, God assuredly had; or rather, he draws out *this* statement from the children themselves—the *pannel at the bar*, of course, remaining *perfectly quiescent*. The question is put, *What punishment?* Some of the more furious boys, whose energies require perhaps only to be regulated, in order to make them *noble* characters, bawl out, *beat him—cuff him*; all the rest in the meantime keeping silence, conceiving such punishment to be rather severe. The master, however, will ask another question or two, rather than fulfil the commands of this unmerciful jury. ‘Is this boy in the *habit* of stealing your playthings?’ *No*. ‘None of you have seen him do such a thing till now. Then you think this is a ... *first offence*.’ Ought a child to be punished as severely for a *first*, as a second or third offence? *No, Sir*. ‘What

then, shall we do to this boy?"\* Instantly the girls will naturally cry out, Forgive him—forgive him. Now mark the natural effect upon all parties: the guilty is condemned by his fellows—the milder feelings are brought into play, and all have been exercised in the principles of truth and justice. Without wasting words, by carrying out the probable conversation, or stating the various ramifications which this circumstance, and similar of daily occurrence among children, may present—for not only may the play-things have been stolen, but a lie told to hide the act, and even blows given in the way of defence, all of which require distinct modes of treatment, and, if not early checked, will harden the conscience and strengthen the evil propensities of our common nature:—Whatever effect such an examination may have on the guilty individual, we are quite sure it will be most salutary upon all others. The feelings are thus moulded down to give way to principle; and whilst all see what really is (unfortunately) an everyday exhibition in the world, and what, perhaps, latently exists in themselves, such exhibitions are made in circumstances which naturally call forth, *not imitation*, but *abhorrence*.

In the play-ground, also, the physically weak and timid are encouraged and protected, and the more robust, but frequently less intelligent, while they get full scope for their muscular vigour, are not permitted to oppress the weak. Any case of oppression or dishonesty is, on the return to the gallery, taken up by the trainer, and thoroughly investigated and exposed before the whole scholars, or rather simultaneously, with the whole scholars.

---

\* For the particular method of development, see practical illustrations.

## PHYSICAL EXERCISES.

These, although introduced into the infant school system, and, strictly speaking, therefore not new, yet they are new in juvenile schools, and as practised in the mode of our application of them in all the departments.

When the bodily organs have remained inactive for a time, whether long or short, the *vis inertia* of our nature needs to be roused before any exertion can be put forth, either physically or mentally. In physical movements, it is the same with children as with the lower animals. The swiftest horse will not gallop with the same speed from the stable door, as he would do after moving a while at a slower pace, till all his powers have been roused into action. The same principle is the experience of the public speaker and trainer, and equally so of the hearers and scholars.

In commencing a lesson, whether on an intellectual or moral subject, the master will find his pupils in a state of inattention, whether they be found in a small class, or *en masse* in the gallery; he has therefore to contend against this principle—the *vis inertia* of our nature. The attention of his pupils requires to be roused; for it must not be overlooked, that as all intellectual knowledge and impressions must pass through the senses, so in order to receive them into the mind, the bodily organs, including the eye and the ear, must be roused into activity, and maintained in exercise, otherwise the lesson is in a measure lost.

The health of the children is highly valuable, and ought not to be overlooked under any system of education; but while this is carefully included in the arrangements,



our primary motive for introducing the varied and ever-varying physical exercises in school, for children of all ages, was not so much as an end, as a necessary means of intellectual and moral culture. Whatever tends to awaken and sustain attention, therefore, whether by the manner or tones of voice of the master himself, or the bodily movements of the children in answer to his call, may be included under this head.

*Physical exercises* may be divided into four parts, having in view, *first*, the bodily health of the children ; *secondly*, the cultivation of correct physical habits or bodily movements ; *thirdly*, the arresting and keeping up of the attention during the ordinary intellectual and religious lessons ; and *fourthly*, the cultivation of habits of order and physical obedience, which strengthen and assist moral training.

The effect of the first of these divisions is more sensibly felt by the play-ground exercises ; at the same time, the marching and singing in-doors in the school-hall, and alternate rest and motion in the gallery, tend to promote bodily health.

The second division in this arrangement cultivates gentleness, gracefulness, proper modes of sitting, walking, and running, holding a book or slate, enunciation, or distinct articulation in speaking and reading, cleanliness, &c. This last is promoted by the physical as well as by other parts of the system, particularly by the "sympathy of numbers." Cleanliness of person, and neatness of dress, are very quickly exhibited by every child who becomes a scholar ; so much so indeed, that strangers sometimes can scarcely be convinced that the children before them in a training school, belong to the poor and working classes.

Under the third head, the variety is unlimited, such as clapping of hands, stretching out of arms, rising up and sitting down of the whole gallery *en masse*, with all the preparatory movements of the feet, shoulders, &c., each movement not being according to any fixed rule, but varying according to the will of the trainer ; and unless the children frequently be taken by surprise, their attention and observation cannot be kept up, and must flag. The younger the children are, the more simple must these exercises be, and the more frequently repeated ; and when attention is formed into a habit, very slight movements only are necessary. The tones of the voice of the master, however, as a trainer impressing the ear and the feelings, are found to be by far the most influential in arresting and maintaining the attention.

Under the fourth division of the physical department, viz., to assist the moral training, it is evident that as rude, clumsy, boisterous habits are a barrier to moral sensibility and the entrance of Christian truth to the mind, as a principle of moral rectitude, so the cultivation of kind and obliging manners—forbearance, and giving each companion his own position in school and at play—instant obedience in every physical movement also, greatly strengthen and promote the moral training of the child.

Under the teaching system, these natural ebullitions are restrained and generally coerced into silence, breaking out, however, or exploding at the first favourable opportunity ; but, in the training school, these inextinguishable accompaniments of good health are freely permitted, at short intervals ; and, instead of proving sources of disquiet or disturbance, they are directed by the trainer, and rendered powerful instruments of moral discipline. The superabundant *steam being let off* by this safety-valve, the



children, under the guidance of the master, naturally and more willingly submit to remain still during the period requisite in conducting a lesson.

Physical exercises are as necessary in training the child to correct intellectual and moral habits through life, as the marching, wheeling, and shouldering arms, &c., are to the soldier, to fit him for the field of battle. Upon the same principle as the drill-serjeant acts, so must the school-trainer not merely command, but physically share in what he wishes to be obeyed.

Without physical exercises in school and in the playground, such as we have stated, it is impossible to conduct a training school, in other words, a school for training "the whole man." The master must be the superintendent in-doors and out of doors, and in this as in the other departments of the system, the power of the "sympathy of numbers" is the most efficient instrument.

Every trainer who attempts to conduct a training lesson, whether secular or sacred, without physical exercises, varied according to the age of his pupils, will assuredly fail. Physical exercises, therefore, are particularly valuable as accompaniments or assistants to the intellectual department of the system.

#### AIRING GROUNDS FOR THE ADULT WORKING POPULATION IN TOWNS.

Were it not moving out of our particular sphere, viz., the training of the young, we would notice another point in our national, and of course individual economy—the PHYSICAL HEALTH, and with it the cleanliness and comfort of the working classes, particularly in the lanes and alleys of our large manufacturing towns. And yet

if we contend for every school having a play-ground, and that it is the duty of the Legislature to provide for, and see that the entire juvenile population under thirteen years (the age at which children may be admitted into factories), be provided with such training schools as we recommend ; it may not be out of our way to notice the importance and necessity of establishing walks and airing grounds for the adult classes, in the immediate neighbourhood of the densest portions of the dwellings of the factory and working population.

The next generation would, unquestionably, be greatly improved in health, as well as in intellect and morals, were the whole youth placed at present in training schools ; and it would not be wise after such a course, even of physical enjoyment in the open air, as the training system affords, that they should be cooped up, as at present, the whole day in the factory or workshop, without the means of healthful exercise in the open air, during part of the meal hours, and in the evenings when labour is closed.

Establish such walks and airing-grounds in several parts of our large towns, and they would do much to promote the health even of the present adult population, who have not passed through a course of early training. Commence in good earnest training schools for the young, and then, as a factory proprietor, I would more heartily coincide with Lord Ashley, and approve of every limitation in the hours of labour, that would promote the health, morals, and family training of our truly neglected population.

Government has most generously and wisely taken up the subject of the physical health of the working classes in towns ; and the Marquis of Normanby has taken an exemplary lead in this matter. We trust great good will

result from the present movement of the Legislature. At this moment a working man feels ashamed to be seen engaged at any athletic game, such as cricket, golf, or handball ; but let *a number* of airing grounds be established in close proximity to the dwellings of the working classes, under strict rules that all gambling be excluded ; and then the women might walk with comfort, and the men enjoy their more athletic exercises ; and, coupled with the habits formed in the training school, the ale and whisky shops would seldom be so frequented, and with bodies and minds invigorated, home training at the fire-side would eventually assume a more prominent feature in our social economy.

## CHAP. IV.

### POINTS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE TRAINING SYSTEM.

#### PICTURING OUT IN WORDS.

This is a fundamental principle of the system, and is found to be more or less natural to every student—some having a greater tendency to “picture out” than others. All, however, may acquire it practically, although, of course, all will not be equally successful. Explanation of a subject, or meaning of a word, by the master, does not secure the understanding of the child, neither does a mere verbal answer of explanation by the child, prove his possession of the correct idea or ideas, without illustration, or comparison, or analogy. Before a child has a thorough understanding of a word or point of a subject, the simple elements of the terms used must be present to the mind’s eye ; and, as under our training system, whatever the school exercise may be, secular or sacred, “picturing out” ought uniformly to be adopted, both in the broad outlines and minuter points of every lesson. We shall enter a little more fully into an explanation, and as shortly as we can, sensible, however, that no written examples, or explanations, or analyses, can convey our meaning, without actual practice, which would then include the powerful effect of the voice, and manner, and eye, of both master and scholars.

Knowledge makes but slow progress in the world, and our ideas are oftentimes incorrect and confused, in consequence of using words and phrases, the meaning of which is not clearly apprehended.

Every word is a figure representing some object or objects, or, more technically, *every word either represents an object, or a combination of objects, and may therefore be pictured out in words representing objects.*

We literally know nothing but from or through the medium of visible objects. The first step, therefore, is to store the mind with a knowledge of objects, and words expressive of these objects. Once present to the mind a variety of objects, and, by the use of words representing the qualities, relations, and combinations of these objects, the mind may be trained from the known to the unknown.

Pestalozzi introduced the use of objects and prints in popular education. "The training system" has added the picturing out in "words," by analogy and *familiar* illustrations of every abstract term, figurative word, and figurative phrase. Mere objects and prints exhibit only one condition or point of the subject they represent, whereas picturing out in words may be carried *ad infinitum*.

All words being figurative, and all phrases and collocations of words being figures, the most complex may be reduced to simple elements.

Of course there is a limit when we come to facts, which we cannot thus picture out, and these become objects of faith, an example of which we shall shortly give. But the rule of analysis which we adopt is applicable to everything within the range of human perception and reason.

#### ABSTRACT TERMS.

In regard to ABSTRACT TERMS, no explanation can convey the idea of a stone or an egg, for example, until they

are presented to the senses. A fish must be seen before we know what a fish is ; but having seen one we may be easily trained to know any fish. The same is true in regard to a bird ; but having once seen even a humming bird, we may be trained to know the appearance, size, and qualities of an eagle.

#### FIGURATIVE WORDS.

We might analyse innumerable figurative words, requiring a reduction from complex to simple terms, before the idea intended by the use of the word can be formed in the mind. We might take the word *abstract* itself as an example, as denoting something having a previous existence in one condition, and being *drawn out* of that condition into another and distinct condition. I may abstract a stone from a quarry or heap of rubbish, or an apple from a basket ; and thus from simple we may proceed to complex ideas—such as the idea of what a man is who is engrossed with one subject, or who is so peculiar in his mode of thinking, as to be drawn out, as it were, or aside, from the generality of mankind.

In education, many terms are used which, although verbally explained, yet not being pictured out by analysis and familiar illustrations, the real meaning of such terms is not present to the mind's eye, and is consequently not understood. Latin grammar, for example, might be rendered a less dry study, and more interesting, were the boy not permitted to use any term which had not first been pictured out to his mind ; for example, such words as participle, perfect, indicative, pluperfect, subjunctive, &c. &c., why a noun is declined, and a verb conjugated. And the same in English grammar—objective, possessive, &c.

We know of nothing more puzzling to the student than the use of terms not previously pictured out. This, however, being done, which is the natural and training mode, study becomes a pleasure, every term in use having *evidently* a meaning. It is a principle of the training system, that no abstract term, or figurative word, be used, or any passage committed to memory, until each particular term, and the whole subject, be analysed and familiarly illustrated; *the exercise of the understanding thus preceding the exercise of the memory.*

In reading a book, or listening to a lecture or sermon, should even one figurative word or phrase be used which has not been pictured out to the mind of the auditory, that word or phrase may be a barrier to the understanding of the whole subject; hence the slow progress of knowledge in the world, as we have already stated, and the necessity of a previous school training, and a picturing out, by analysis and familiar illustrations, of all figurative words and phrases used in elementary, scientific, and scriptural education. Picturing out to the mind is still more necessary, when not merely one figurative word is used, but when a number are presented in a single sentence. For example, Dr. Buckland, in giving "proofs of design in the effects of disturbing forces on the strata of the earth," thus expresses himself:—"Elevations and subsidences, inclinations and contortions, fractures and dislocations, are phenomena, which, although at first sight they present only the appearance of disorder and confusion, yet, when fully understood, demonstrate the existence of order, and method, and design, even in the operations of the most turbulent among the mighty physical forces which have affected the terraqueous globe." We know such sentences are read in schools, without one word having been pic-



tured out ; the dictionary, with its verbal explanation, alone being accessible to the pupil ; and grown-up persons peruse the same words without attaching any definite idea to them ; and finding no definitions, or rather familiar illustrations, of technical phrases in a dictionary, the sense of the author is lost to them, from the neglect of picturing out every word they met in their early education.

Complex terms, therefore being used, ought uniformly to be reduced to simple terms ; and although the following may be considered an extravagant case, yet as we know it to be an actual occurrence, we give it as an additional illustration of our point, and showing the necessity of a systematic mode of picturing out.

After a public examination of a school in a certain manufacturing town in Scotland, a learned gentleman present was invited to put a few questions to the children. The gentleman proceeded—"Children, look at me—and answer me a few questions ;—answer me this :—Is it not a fact, that *mutation* is *stamped* on all *sublunary objects* ?" The children, of course, remained silent. *Mutation* to them was a mere sound : *stamped* (it being a town where muslin is manufactured) only suggested to them the stamping of gauze or jaconet for tambouring : *sublunary* had never come under the catalogue of their reading, and the term had never been analysed or even explained—to them the word was therefore quite incomprehensible ; and as to *objects*, in connection with the other unpictured-out words, they naturally thought of lame men, it being common to term all disabled persons *objects* ; "such and such a one," they were accustomed to say, "is quite an object."

Amidst such a heterogeneous mass of sounds and im-

perfect ideas, as might be expected, no answer was given ; and of course they were thought stupid children. The question commenced with, "Is it not a fact?" Had the answer been, "No," then they would have contradicted their examiner ; but had it been "Yes," an approving smile, no doubt, would have followed, accompanied with the expression, "Very right, children"—the children remaining, however, as ignorant as before. The verbal answer would have been correct, but, neither the individual words nor the phrase as a whole having been pictured out, or presented to the mind, no idea whatever was conveyed. Any word used by a speaker or teacher, and not clearly before the mind of his pupils, is without meaning ; to the person speaking, it may be perfectly understood, but to those addressed he speaks in a foreign tongue.

In conducting a Bible training lesson, it is peculiarly necessary that figurative words and phrases be pictured out in words to the mind, otherwise no lesson can be drawn. Such as, for example, "Glory," both in the abstract and the conventional meaning. "Saviour," in the abstract—a Saviour, who can save me from danger, and *the* Saviour, who alone can save me from death or hell. Also, "Redeemer," "wisdom," "kingdom of heaven," "rivers of pleasure,"—as well as innumerable emblems which must be understood, in other words, pictured out *familiarly* to the mind, both in their natural history and accepted sense, before any practical lesson can be drawn. Such passages as, "I will refine thee as silver is refined." The whole process of refining silver must be graphically pictured out in words. "The path of the just is as the shining light, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day."—"Iron sharpeneth iron, so doth

the face of a man his friend.”—“As an eagle stirreth up her nest, fluttereth over her young,” &c., “so the Lord did lead them,” &c.—“Like a tree planted by a river.”—As the hart panteth after the water-brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God.”—“Be wise as serpents, and harmless as doves.”—“Keep me as the apple of thine eye.”—“Hide me in the hollow of thine hand.”—“The righteous shall flourish like the palm tree ; he shall grow like a cedar in Lebanon,” &c., &c.

Such words and phrases might be quoted without end, every page of Scripture being full of figurative expressions ; and although it is not necessary to enter minutely into the science or nature of the objects on which the lesson is based, yet as much of the natural emblem or metaphor must be pictured out as to enable the children to draw the lessons themselves. This being done in a week-day elementary school (for there is not time in Sabbath schools or from the pulpit), then the reading of Scripture will become more luminous, and sermons from the pulpit better understood.

Figurative words and phrases, which all come within the range of our senses, we have seen, are capable of being pictured out ; but, as we have already stated, there is a limit.

A word is not an expression conveying an idea, unless it *can* be pictured out. We cannot picture beyond the objects with which we are familiar.\* For example, Paul was caught up to the third heavens, “and heard words which it was not lawful to utter,” or which he was not able to utter ; and why so ? because they were expressive of things and ideas, the reality of which no

\* See page 33.

human language could convey ;\* for all languages, from that of the savage to the most civilised nations, are formed only to express the things that are known. Heaven itself is represented by earthly things and objects, “songs,” “arches,” “harps of gold,” “crowns of glory,” “mansions,” “streets of gold,” “rivers of pleasure.”

The being and character of God are conveyed to us through a similar medium. “His right hand is a right hand of power ;” “He weigheth the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance, and taketh up the isles as a very little thing ;” “His eyes are like a flame of fire ;” “The channels of water were seen, and the foundations of the earth were discovered, O Lord, with the blast of the breath of thy nostrils ;” “He rideth on the wings of the wind.” All is natural imagery of the loftiest character. Again, “Like as a father pitieth his children, so the Lord pitieth them that love him,” &c., &c. And again, He who is revealed as the express image of God, is described as being “The foundation stone, and the chief corner stone, in whom all the building, fitly framed together, groweth into an holy temple,” &c. He is also declared to be “the way,” “the door,” “a rock,” “a stay,” “a star ;” for this latter term we would now of course use *compass*, stars being unnecessary to the mariner since the discovery of that important instrument, in guiding him to his desired haven. These and other expressions prove, that spiritual things can be, and only are, revealed through natural things.

\* In passing, we may state, that it was during the illustration of this point, at one of the criticisms in the Normal Seminary, that one of the students (as he afterwards confessed), had his mind first brought to the humility of the Gospel. He formerly thought there was no limit to the human understanding in this life.

For the sake of those who have not practised the system, we may state that picturing out is not always literal, but is frequently used conventionally. For example, a blind man cannot see colours, and yet the variety in colour may be pictured out, or rendered present to his mind in words by comparison. It is true he cannot see red or green with his bodily eyes, but by touch, or by words describing the difference in feeling, he knows which article is red or green. We have heard a man, blind from his birth, say that a cow which had been presented to him, was the finest *he ever saw*; and this mental sight, we also observed, had been acquired by the butcher by the same process, not by sight, but by the sense of touch. The same may be stated in regard to sound. A deaf man cannot hear music, but he may *feel it*, and can discover, to the extent of his sensibility, the distinction of sounds. We hear persons say, I never *saw* such a wind. Why? *I was almost blown down*; and yet all language, secular or sacred, is formed to convey ideas of things that strike our senses; sight or feeling (conventionally at the least) representing the whole. Picturing out to the mind's eye, therefore, we understand to mean, rendering the word or subject present to the mind, by analogy and familiar illustration, whether simple or complex.

The same idea runs through all language. Thus, we have words derived from sight used to express ideas not directly received through that sense; as transparency, perspicuity, circumspection, perception, &c., &c.

#### A LECTURE AND A TRAINING LESSON.

Why is it that persons greatly prefer a lecture or speech

to a training lesson? Under the former we sit comfortably quiet without effort; we listen or not, as we please—we may be drowsy, or half a-sleep, or wholly asleep—it matters not; we are not disturbed unless the speaker, by his manner and varied tones of voice, compels us to listen. But in a training lesson, the scholar or person to be instructed *must* attend, he must fill in the ellipses, and answer the questions. He must add his own amount of information to that of the master's, and he must at last draw the lesson for himself. Sleep, therefore, is out of the question, and if he cherishes the *vis inertia* of his nature, a training lesson cannot be so agreeable to him as a speech, a sermon, or a lecture.

#### OBJECTS AND PICTURES.

The use of objects, and pictures, and the black-board (on which figures may be drawn), ought not to be rejected in any system of education whatever. These bring to the observation of the pupil at least one condition of the subject which is to be analysed.

This is particularly the case with young or very ignorant children, whose powers of observation require to be cultivated. An initiatory or infant school of course would fail without these. It must be borne in mind, however, that by these only one condition is brought into view. The colour, and size, and form of an animal, for example, are presented, but not its disposition, or uses, or habits, or any quality, but what is merely external. These must be pictured out in words; and it is this which is systematised under our plan, by comparison, illustration, and analogy of things *within and not beyond* the experience and sympathy of the scholars. To be



understood, not merely must the terms used be simple and natural, but so must the illustrations, whether the lesson under review be given to a class consisting of children of three, or eight, or thirteen years of age.

Objects and pictures have always been in use more or less in home and in public education. Milton's mother used the Dutch tiles of her parlour fireside to teach her son natural history ; and every mother knows how highly pictures and objects are valued by her interesting offspring. The most systematic mode of teaching by objects in the public school was that by Pestalozzi. It was an important step in education ; but it was but one step towards a thorough understanding of the systematic mode of picturing out in words, which, in the ascending scale, includes every possible variety of condition that language can convey. Under our system, were we to confine the scientific gallery lessons to such objects as can be presented to the bodily eye, a waggon-load of objects at the least would be required every day for the model schools of the Normal Training Seminary ; and even then, we would be restricted in our gallery exercises. We cannot always present, for example, a cedar of Lebanon, or a lion alive, or even stuffed, or a piece of silver ore ; but the children, in the play-ground or elsewhere, have seen some cedar or plants of a similar description—they have seen a cat or dog, if not a lion, and with which it may in some measure be compared. Real silver they have seen, as well as sand, clay, &c., with which the native ore is found mixed, and they may be made to understand its nature without having the real object before them at that particular moment.

By the master stating facts, and drawing from his class consequences and reasons deducible from those facts, both



in their combinations and decompositions, &c., the whole is rendered visible to the mind's eye without the objects themselves being presented.

As a starting point, however, or to arrest the attention, or to present one condition of the subject to be analysed, objects ought certainly to be used when within our reach ; but as these are not always to be procured, and as the human voice is always ready at hand with both master and scholar, and as such words ought only to be used as are within the comprehension of the latter, with illustrations and comparisons of an equally simple form, there is no object or combination of objects which a master may not thus PICTURE OUT, and progressively render as visible to the mind of his pupils, as if not merely the objects, but the varied changes and combinations of these objects, were actually before the bodily eye. Objects, therefore, are useful, but picturing out in words is infinitely more so. To the use of objects there is a limit—to picturing out in words there is no limit.

## CHAPTER V.

POINTS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE TRAINING SYSTEM—APPARATUS, ETC.

### SIMULTANEOUS ANSWERS.

THE gallery, or flight of ascending seats, affords the best opportunity for hearing simultaneous answers from a large class of children ; and so important is the introduction of this principle into popular schools, with the use of questions and ellipses, that the training system by many has been termed the simultaneous system.

Before noticing a few points of this part of our subject, we may state, that while in general simultaneous answers are required, they are mingled with individual questions, both for the sake of variety, in checking inattention in any of the children, and for particular examination.

The great object in the intellectual department is, to present food for every variety of mind—suited to every capacity, without overstraining any, and to cultivate by exercise, during each day, every varied power of human nature. We thus have the daily exercise of the individual powers, and the combined simultaneous exercise and sympathy of all present, which is best secured by simultaneous answers. All cannot acquire the same amount of knowledge of any kind—and each mind varies in the capacity and quality of its powers. Some are more imaginative—others illustrative—others more logical—some have a stronger capacity for facts, whether dates, terms, or numbers, and some also for music—some have greater powers of observation—others of reflection. It

cannot be supposed, therefore, that all will be equally ready in answering every question, or in filling in every ellipsis. The matter-of-fact boys in the gallery will (*ceteris paribus*) simultaneously answer any question about words or dates, more quickly than those of imaginative or logical powers; while the imaginative will more readily grasp the *idea*—and the logical the *reason*. These are matters of daily and uniform experience; and therefore, we say, it would be unreasonable to expect that any sixty or eighty scholars can ever answer simultaneously any question put by the master, at any one moment. But the questions are so varied, and the subjects of a religious, scientific, elementary, moral, and practical kind, are so frequently brought by the trainer before the pupils, that each variety of mind, moral and intellectual, receives its daily cultivation, and, as already stated, food is presented, suited to the taste of all; so that by the physical department of the system by which attention is secured, each admits as much as his natural powers are capable of receiving;—none are surfeited, and none are starved. We are quite aware that the working of this principle, like the practice of any other art, is only fully understood by those who practise it.

When the system is conducted by a proper trainer, each pupil receives what he is capable of, and the whole gallery receives what any one knows, by the master throwing the proper answer, whether to a direct question or from an ellipsis, back upon the whole gallery, and requiring a simultaneous response, not by mere repetition, but generally by inverting the sentence, as may be seen in the few lessons subsequently given as examples.

That different minds will naturally answer a question which is suited to their taste more quickly, may be

illustrated by making the following supposition of two very eminent men—the one conspicuous for his powers of calculation, the other for those of imagination—the one a noted politician, the other a most eminent divine. Were both of these gentlemen to ascend Benlomond, or visit the lake of Windermere, and were we to require of them an account of what they had seen—what reply should we expect? From the one we should have a particular enumeration of every hill and object within the compass of his view, and a most minute circumstantial account of all that happened, and of any economical improvement that might be introduced into the farms he had seen ; while the other would descant in the most glowing terms, on the splendour of the landscape—the freshness of the foliage—the gilded glory of the setting sun reflected in the still waters of the glassy lake—and would tell with rapturous delight, how much he had been affected by the beauty of the whole. Each would sympathize with the other to a certain degree, but each would narrate his observations according to his mind's peculiar bias. Few may have gifts equal to these men, in their more prominent powers, but these are found to vary in different degrees of intensity—each learning from his neighbour, and therefore all securing improvement. In the first instance, therefore, a simultaneous response is not expected to any question from more than perhaps a fifth of the gallery present, although nearly of the same age, but, as already stated, the proper answer is thrown back upon the gallery, and thus all learn.

Some object to GALLERY and to SIMULTANEOUS ANSWERS, and exclaim, What a noise it occasions! One cannot get *into* the children, as it were. You cannot know or ascertain the progress of each, and besides, only a few

children answer at a time. Not one objection here alluded to is felt, or will be acknowledged, by an experienced trainer. Noise is not necessary, nay, there is less than in the hubbub of an ordinary teaching school. The trainer actually gets nearer his pupils, than by individual appeal ; or rather, the *sympathy of numbers* brings the pupil nearer to him in actual development ; and in regard to the objection, that a few only answer at any one time, we may give the following as a short analysis.

A master, under the ordinary mode of *teaching*, puts a question to the scholars *individually* ; and we shall suppose him to be of an imaginative turn of mind, and the pupil to be the reverse—a plain matter-of-fact boy. It is evident that the question or questions generally put by the master will participate, to a considerable extent, in the particular cast of his own mind, and will either be too lofty, or so different from the ideas of the questioned party, as to be beyond the power of the scholar to answer, and simply because he does not comprehend, or readily sympathize with, the style in which the question is put. But let the same question or questions be put by the same or another individual in the character of a *trainer*, to sixty, eighty, or a hundred children seated in a gallery, and ten, fifteen, or twenty of these are sure to be found with minds naturally constituted like the master's, and who will instantly and simultaneously answer ; or, which is the same thing, with minds so constituted as to sympathize with the kind of questions put, whether these be argumentative, imaginative, or plain matter-of-fact. And if the attention of the other children is alive, they hearing the answers and *joining in them*, all will learn, whatever the conformation of their minds may naturally

be. Whatever cast of mind, therefore, a trainer may happen to have, or in whatever style the questions may happen to be put—whether matter-of-fact, illustrative, argumentative, or imaginative—it is found that among sixty or eighty children seated in a gallery, if permitted to answer simultaneously, the questions and ellipses put by the master will be sympathised with, and met by, some portion of the children present; and, as formerly alluded to, *if the eye and attention are kept fixed on yourself*, all will hear, and all must learn, although one-fourth or one-fifth only answer at any one time. In one word, each child will answer more speedily the questions, or fill in the ellipses of the point of the lesson, which are in accordance with his own natural cast of mind. Thus, there is a power in a gallery simultaneous training lesson that enables any trainer, however constituted, to communicate all he knows, and to work it into the mind of every scholar present.

#### QUESTIONS AND ELLIPSES CONJOINED

ARE A FUNDAMENTAL PART OF THE INTELLECTUAL DEPARTMENT OF THIS SYSTEM.

*Questioning.*—What questioning is, every one knows. A question is an examination; it puts the pupil on the defensive—he is placed on his trial—he knows or he does not know what he is asked. If he knows, he ought to give a direct answer in words which he understands, or he may merely have committed the words of the answer to memory; whichever way it may be, still the boy is put on the defensive, either in regard to his memory of ideas or of words.

For example, a sentence may be worked in the following way, and filled up elliptically by the pupils.

If the master has been speaking of the weather, or



prospect of the weather, and says, The sky threatens ... *rain*; he may invert the sentence so:—It threatens rain to-day from ... the *appearance of the sky*. From this answer, the children prove that they know *why*. Or the master, with older scholars, may express himself thus:—The aspect of the sky ... *indicates the approach of rain*. Before, however, getting this last answer or ellipsis filled up, the master, after saying the aspect of the sky—no immediate answer being given—may require, as he may choose, for the sake of expedition, to put the direct question, What does the aspect of the sky indicate? Of course they will answer—*the approach of rain*. Had they filled in the ellipsis without the question, it is evident they would have shown more knowledge of language, and a greater exercise of mind.

If no cross-examination takes place, the master is left ignorant as to whether his scholars really know what he expresses, or not—so far he is not of necessity trained. Under the training system, mere questioning is found not sufficient for the full development of the intellectual powers. There must uniformly be an analysis, based on simple illustration, within the extent of the knowledge and experience of the children present.

#### ELLIPSES,

therefore, are introduced, which, on the mode adopted, are, to a great extent, another way of questioning. An ellipsis awakens the attention. The old mode of forming an ellipsis is absurd. It is a mere guess, and scarcely any exercise of the mind whatever. One of the examples given is, “God made the sky, that looks so .. God made the grass so ... God made the little birds so ...



In pretty colours ... Not having exercised the minds of the children previously, as to the colour of the sky, &c. in the first line, the pupils might answer or fill up what they choose, either "*blue*," which was the answer required—or cloudy or red—and so on through the other lines. So it is in telling a narrative or story on the "elliptical system," as it is termed. For example, "This morning I left my house, and when walking on the street, I saw a ... Of course any answer or filling up here must be a mere conjecture. I may have seen a thousand things; but had any story or lesson been upon a given point or subject, it of course would have been different. Questions and ellipses, therefore, are uniformly mixed—sometimes only one question, and then an ellipsis—sometimes two or three questions or ellipses together, varied, however, according to the age and amount of knowledge developed by the pupils.

An ellipsis ought never to be made, except when an answer is required upon a point which the children already know, or which the master may have brought out in the lesson in hand, and which he requires to be expressed in words. The ellipsis, therefore, which he requires to be filled in ought not to be merely a single word, or the termination of a line or sentence, but a word or words, *including the idea or point* to which the mind has already been trained. It therefore at once assists the mental composition of the child—leads him to the point without *telling*,\* and in fact, is a *little question* helping him to walk, without carrying, *which telling would be*. It places the child also less on the defensive than in mere questioning, and so fills up those interstices, and that variety of line and shade, which in "picturing out" are so necessary to the full

\* So that to find out what is wanting, becomes an exercise of the understanding, and of course keeps up the attention as the lesson proceeds.

understanding of a subject. By the master inverting the sentence, and leaving out other words than he did at the first ellipsis—but which involve the idea or proper understanding of the point—these being properly filled in by the pupils, the trainer secures that there must be a clear and vivid understanding on the part of his scholars.

As we cannot stop here to give illustrations, we would simply state, that questions and ellipses properly mixed in the process of intellectual training, are preferable to mere question and answer, however varied ; or pure ellipses, however well arranged. The union affords the most pleasing, the most natural, and the most efficient of all methods of cultivating the understanding. We merely add here, that with very young children, unaccustomed to express their ideas in words, ellipses must be more frequently resorted to ; and questions more frequently as they advance ; but however advanced in years or attainments, the use of ellipses, in conjunction with questions, will be found the most efficient course of training.

There is no difficulty in putting questions, and none in forming ellipses, that is to say, in conducting a lesson upon the simple catechetical, or the simple elliptical methods, but there is considerable difficulty in uniting the two principles in a natural manner, so as to form *simultaneous training* : and without this union there cannot be picturing out. To the drawing of a proper picture, there is required not merely direct or straight lines, like questions and answers, but the filling up of innumerable interstices, which the mere questions leave unsupplied. A question may prove the amount of knowledge, but does not supply knowledge to a child. The ellipsis, properly introduced, supplies as well as draws out knowledge.

The mode of reasoning Socrates adopted in instructing

his *disciples*, in which, availing himself of their previous knowledge, he led them from admitted premises to a natural conclusion, does well with men who are furnished with a large amount of facts, but will not do with children, whose stock is soon exhausted. The ellipsis enables a trainer to supply these facts, while the question stirs up what he already knows, and is at the moment acquiring. The union of the two supplies materials, and produces an easy and natural flow of intellectual development and training, and may be stated as the "inductive philosophy" rendered applicable to children.

#### SINGING.

As the training or natural system has been applied to every branch of education taught in the Normal Seminary, it might be supposed that music would not be overlooked. We believe this institution was the first to introduce singing, both with and without notes, as a distinct branch of popular education, which is now becoming all but universal throughout the country. Three great objects were in view—1st, To train the child to worship God in the family ; 2d, in the public sanctuary ; and 3rdly, by furnishing the young with interesting moral songs, to displace in their social amusements, many of at least a questionable character. These great objects have been fully attained by the children attending the model schools ; and not only so, but singing by, and without the notes,\* has proved a powerful assistance to the trainer in conducting the secular lessons and the moral training.

\* In popular schools, singing must, of course, be conducted chiefly without books, the children not being able to purchase them.

Singing is an important accompaniment, and is as necessary to the child under training, as music is to the soldier. The moral songs cheer, animate, and soothe the mind; the marching airs facilitate and regulate every movement to and from the gallery, the play-ground, and the class-room; and the morning and evening hymns are in accordance with the scriptural declaration, "Speaking to one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs." The sentiment of each song ought to be suited to the particular exercise, whether secular or sacred. Without vocal music, the initiatory or infant department would be a failure; and both in it and in the other departments, it proves a powerful instrument of moral culture. The influence of vocal music is not confined to the school-house, but has actually been carried into the family, and at play is exercised in displacing many songs of an exceptionable nature; and since its introduction into the junior and senior departments of this seminary, the practice has been followed to a considerable extent in schools both in town and country, even where the training system has not been followed.

## CHAPTER VI.

### POINTS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE TRAINING SYSTEM.

#### BIBLE TRAINING IN SCHOOL.

The only sure basis of a moral and religious education is the revealed will of God, as contained in the Scriptures of the Old and New Testaments ; our daily morning lesson is, on this account, uniformly read from the Book itself.\* The system, at the same time, has made ample provision for those who cannot read, by the trainer reading it for, and analysing the substance of the quotations conjointly with the children. When the child can read, he does so with the trainer ; and when he cannot, the book is read for him, and is repeated sentence by sentence by him. The child also contributes whatever knowledge he may already possess, during the natural process of picturing out the subject, and in drawing the lessons which may be deduced from it.

The usual period of school education is too short to admit of even the outlines of Scripture being acquired by the children in the course of reading the Bible *straight* through, as it is called. Of how much importance, therefore, is it, that in addition to what parents can communicate at home, or clergymen from the pulpit, the clear and bold outlines of Scripture should be simply

\* For when the idea has been once fixed in the minds of children, that the Bible, *as a whole*, is the revelation of God's will to men, any lesson read from it comes with much more authority than from a book of extracts or the pages of an ordinary spelling-book.

analysed and familiarly illustrated in the first instance, so that, in after life, they may be enabled to make considerable advancement, and thus fill up these outlines by reading, observation, and reflection. If this simple and natural mode be pursued, the children will receive as much religious instruction *during school hours*, before they are able to read, as after they acquire the art of reading. Independently, therefore, of the proved efficiency of this principle, when practically and perseveringly carried out, the period of instruction is, in this way, greatly extended. Let us suppose a child to commence his school education at the age of six, and to receive no Bible lesson whatever till he attains the age of eight, when we shall suppose him able to read the Scriptures fluently for himself. If he leave the English school at ten—which is too frequently the case—his religious instruction is thus confined to a couple of years. On the principle of *Bible Training*, however, he would receive religious instruction from the day of his entering school, continued in a regular and progressive course, till the time comes for his commencing his labours in the factory and workshop. If, in addition to the privileges he will thus have enjoyed, we suppose him to have been sent to the Initiatory or Infant Department at the age of two or three, he will have had the very first foundations of Bible knowledge firmly laid, and his mind prepared for the further development of that course of Bible training which, we have said, progresses, both in extent and in minuteness, up to the time of his leaving school.

We are aware that no book can exhibit the power and beauty of Bible training ; for, in addition, it requires the sympathy of master and scholars ; the eye, the action, and the tones of the voice. Indeed, to know the system



properly, we must be able to practise it. We therefore feel the absolute weakness of representations on paper of that which no words can adequately express.

The truths of Scripture are stated in language suited to the condition and capacity of all ranks ; to the young and the old, the peasant and the philosopher, the governor and the governed ; and, whilst “milk” is found in the narratives, “strong meat” is richly imbedded in the emblems and imagery.

The most illiterate may find all that he needs to satisfy him, and the most learned may find ample exercise for all his powers, in the contemplation of that sublimest knowledge which it reveals—knowledge of the character of God, and the condition and prospects of man.

All nature and art seem brought into requisition in the communication of God’s will to man, *from* which, and *through* which, its lessons are drawn and conveyed ; and while in the history, and poetry, and natural emblems and reasoning of Scripture, the intellect may be cultivated, there is in the lessons drawn from these, that which teaches how we may serve God here, and enjoy him through eternity.

“As” and “so” are of frequent occurrence in the Sacred Volume. Spiritual things can alone be communicated through earthly things. *As* the natural thing, *so* the spiritual or practical lesson. For example, *as* the leopard cannot change his spots, *so* they that are accustomed to do evil cannot learn to do well. *As* the day-star to the ancient mariner, *so* Christ. *As* the hart panteth, *so*, &c. *As* the eagle, *so*, &c. *As* silver is refined, *so*, &c. *As* the shield to the warrior, *so*, &c. When the *as* of the natural emblem is clearly pictured out, the *so*, or practical lesson, will be apparent to the minds of the pupils. They



must be able to give its application, and this is the test of the trainer's having properly conducted the lesson.

What ancient or modern poetry can equal in sublimity some passages in the books of Job, and the Psalms, and the prophet Isaiah, or the statement in Genesis, "God said, Let there be light, and there was light."

What ordinary historian could or would have condensed such a scene as the transfiguration of Christ within the space of seven short sentences?

The lover of natural history may bring into exercise his knowledge of animal and vegetable life, as in the emblem, "As the eagle stirreth up her nest, fluttereth over her young, spreadeth abroad her wings, taketh them, beareth them on her wings," &c., or the "Flower of the field;" "Fig tree putteth forth her figs first" (not leaves); with the innumerable allusions to animal and vegetable life, all of which, though intended not to teach science, but to convey moral lessons, presuppose a knowledge of the laws and facts to which they refer; hence the necessity and importance of teaching natural science as an ordinary school exercise.

The geologist may discover proofs of extreme old age in this terrestrial globe, but he will find nothing inconsistent with the account of the creation, contained in the first chapter of Genesis. That chapter was not written to teach geology. A thorough analysis, or a training lesson, will discover to every candid mind, that that narrative contains nothing which can prove whether the creation of the materials of the earth took place 6000 or 60,000 years ago. Every figure of Scripture is true to nature, and only requires to be unfolded to the mind's eye, to show its appropriateness, beauty, and consistency.

All analogies and associations in conducting a Bible

lesson, whether narrative or doctrinal, ought to be such as, while they illustrate the subject, do not, at the same time, cause the mind to wander from the point in hand. This may be familiarly illustrated. In travelling along a road, I may wander not, although my *right eye* takes in, as it were, the hills, and fields, and villas, on the right side of the road, provided all the while I keep my *left eye* on the road ; and, having glanced shortly in that direction, neither do I wander, though I look to the scenes on the left, observing the same precaution as before, viz., that the road *itself* be kept in view. I wander, however, when I take both eyes off from the road—viewing, it may be, the distant horizon or lofty mountains—while all the time I move along the road, unmindful and unobservant of what is immediately at hand and ought to be the object of my primary observation.

We ought to enjoy whatever is visible in the course of our journey. Some wander so far from their subject, that the original topic is lost sight of ; others adhere so rigidly and drily to it, as to deprive themselves of the natural associations and analogies which tend to give it greater vividness and interest, and to rivet it on the memory. On this point, no rule can be laid down, save this plain one, the practical application of which must be left to every trainer's discretion and experience—that all digressions be such as to lead back the scholar easily and speedily, and with *increased* interest and intelligence, to the original topic.

The trainer, whether in Scripture, or science, or morals, will find his truest and most natural model in our Saviour's practical exhibitions of doctrine and conduct while on earth. "Is it lawful to give tribute to Cæsar?" said the Pharisees; "Show me a penny," said our Saviour.

“Who is my neighbour?” said the same party; our Saviour pictured it out by the story of “the good Samaritan.” “They watched him, whether he would cure on the Sabbath-day;” our Saviour looked upon them and asked, “Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath-day, or to do evil; to save life, or to kill?” but they held their peace. He did not *tell* the Pharisees whether it was or was not lawful to do good on the Sabbath-day; he appealed to their consciences; *he trained them*; they felt the rebuke; “they held their peace.” Our Saviour’s illustrations were uniformly within the range of the experience of his auditory:—“The sower went forth,” &c. “Even as a tree,” &c. “In the evening it will be fair weather, because,” &c. He only employed illustrations which were suited to the experience and occupations of those he addressed. Had Christ lived at the present time, in illustrating spiritual truth and practical duties, he no doubt would have adduced illustrations from many points of modern science—Astronomy, Mechanics, Optics, and Geology. The velocity of the locomotive would not have escaped his notice any more than the “weaver’s shuttle.” Scripture generally, indeed, but our Saviour’s example in particular, is the best standard of training, as suited to the nature and character of man: and how could it be otherwise? for “He knew what was in man.”

We would now briefly notice a few of the common errors into which teachers are apt to fall in the communication of what they esteem religious instruction, as also an objection which, particularly in England, may perhaps may be made to Bible Training.

I. *Bible Reading* alone *does not secure*, as we have

already seen, the understanding of what is read ; more particularly if read by the teacher to the scholars.

II. *Bible Questioning* is important, but partakes more of *examination* than *training*.

III. *Bible Explanation* leaves it uncertain whether the child *has* or *has not received* the information intended.

IV. *Bible Instruction* is too generally confined to the historical parts of Scripture, and the questions put are generally regarding the facts of the narrative, very seldom in reference to the lesson or lessons which may be deduced.

Again, it must be manifest to every unprejudiced mind, that our reverence and love for any book cannot be promoted or increased, by its having been made the platform for the drudgery and toil of learning to read and spell. This is a serious and wide-spread evil as respects the Bible, and we must raise our voice against what we esteem so highly injurious—so levelling in its tendency, to the minds of our youthful population. Bible training, on the contrary, is something more than mere reading or spelling, or explanation, or question and answer. We never place the Bible in the hands of children as a school-book till they can read it with tolerable accuracy ; and long before it is so placed, they have acquired a relish, if not for its lessons, at least for the narratives, and emblems, and imagery through which these lessons are conveyed.

*Bible Training* includes the great outlines of the narratives, precepts, promises, threatenings, parables, and emblems of Scripture. Every word, and every emblem or metaphor, is *pictured out* and familiarly illustrated, and this secures a thorough understanding of the subject.\*

---

\* A knowledge of the climate and productions of Palestine, and the manners and customs of the Jews, is absolutely necessary to the Bible trainer, otherwise he is apt to founder at every step. He may be greatly

Some of our English friends may object to laymen explaining Scripture in school. We would, however, entreat them to examine any child who can read well, but whose mind is uncultivated (for cultivation is the result only of an exercise of the faculty of understanding), as to the amount of information he has drawn from the Bible, by its being simply read by him or to him. We have made the experiment a hundred times, and found it to be almost nothing. A point or narrative may have been apprehended, but no lesson has been deduced. The whole picture is not present to the mind ; the child, therefore, *does not see that on which the lesson rests*. For every practical purpose, then, the mere reading of the Scriptures is in a measure lost, and the person may continue reading on without the understanding or affections being at all impressed by the words he reads. And what, after all, is the use of Bible reading, or Scriptural knowledge, unless we are in circumstances to derive practical good from the lessons it is intended to convey ? If this objection to laymen be still urged by our brethren in the English Church, we would venture to suggest that an order of deacons might be set apart by the bishops for the instruction and training of youth in the Church Schools, who would then be placed under authoritative superintendence and control. To all who admit the propriety of common explanation, we would say, that *if Scripture is to be explained at all, it should be conducted in the fullest and best manner possible* ; not to admit this

---

assisted by perusing several publications by the Religious Tract Society of London—such as, Scripture Emblems ; Manners, Rites, and Customs of the Jews, &c. Also, African Light, by the Rev. J. Campbell ; Jamieson's Scripture Emblems ; Paxton's Illustrations of Scripture ; Horne's Introduction to the Bible, abridged.

is assuredly to be inconsistent. The command is not merely, read the Scriptures, but "search—search as for hidden treasures." "Everything worthy of being done at all ought to be well done ;" and truth loses nothing by simplification through the fullest analysis. In prosecuting Bible Training, we do so as a natural and efficient process, and the most powerful we have yet seen or practised ; not, indeed, in the tame and imperfect mode we are able to represent on paper,\* but as it may be exhibited in actual practice. Let the meaning of words, and the bearing of the subject in all its points, relations, and associations, be *familiarly* illustrated or *pictured out* to the mind's eye of the child, and he ought and will be found to be able to draw out the lesson equally with the master or trainer.

It is foreign to our system for the school trainer to assume the character of a preacher, whatever parents may do at home. All that is expected or required of him is, so to conduct the lesson as that the *natural picture* be fully drawn ; in other words, rendered visible to the mind's eye of the youngest and most ignorant child present ; and then, as we have already stated, the children will be prepared to give the moral lesson.

The master in Bible training, no doubt, may lead the children into error, but he only can do this when he blindfoldly leads the minds of his pupils—when he does not naturally and clearly *picture out* the whole outlines first, and then the minuter points of the subject that has been read as the text or foundation of the morning lesson.

A physical trainer can no more lead his pupils from the safe path into a furnace or ditch, for example, with their

---

\* See Practical Illustrations.



bodily eyes open, than the Bible trainer can lead his pupils into erroneous intellectual or moral conclusions, provided he clearly pictures out to their mental eye the plain and natural truths embodied in the narratives, promises, threatenings, precepts, imagery, emblems, &c. of the Divine Record. Intellectually on the one hand, as well as physically on the other, *they must know what they see.*

To read without picturing out the meaning, is as absurd as to teach a Welchman, a Highlander, or an Irishman to read the English Bible, before he scarcely understands a word of the language—examples of which have come under our notice.

Out of nearly one thousand students, male and female, who have passed through our hands in the Normal Training Seminary, we never met with one, who, on entering the institution, *first* pictured out, and then drew the lesson. Some, no doubt, more naturally than others, attempted it. The general practice, however, has been (the unnatural one), to draw or rather give the lesson at the very commencement, without any attempt to draw the natural picture, or lay the premises on which the lesson rests. Others do so to a very limited extent, always, however, teaching or telling, rather than training, and compelling the children to take upon trust, that of which, with the proper *mental* picture before them, they might be (and actually are found to be) able to judge for themselves.

Many cures are proposed for the woes of Ireland. One thing we may safely affirm, that *Bible training coupled with moral training can alone fully accomplish the work.* From the experience we have had of Irishmen who have passed through our institution, as students, and also



Irish parents in Glasgów, we know enough of the Irish character, to prove to us that it could not resist being highly interested with scripture emblems and imagery, properly pictured out.

It is not too much to say, that our Irish students have been a valuable appendage in the progress of our system, wheresoever they have been placed. Give us one hundred well-trained students, and set them down in any county of their native isle; and, without the slightest attempt to proselytise, or intermeddle with the external rites of the Roman Catholic Church—permit them to conduct or picture out one short Bible training lesson on the morning of every day; and after the lapse of a few years of such an elementary course, we might safely leave the youth of that interesting country to form their own judgment of what is truth, from the Scriptures themselves.

Could we persuade parents, then, of the inestimable boon which such a course of training would prove to their offspring—bearing in mind, as they ought to do, that a period of life is fixed by act of Parliament under which labour as well in factories as in mines is prohibited—what a moral revolution would be produced among the masses, reaching in its effects to generations yet unborn. If our country is ever to be morally raised, it must be alone by directing strong and united efforts to the training of the young. We would here, therefore, call the attention of legislators, clergymen, and teachers, to the important fact, which all the statistics of crime—all the experience of the most devoted philanthropists prove—viz., that in proportion as you morally and religiously train the youth of a country, you are laying still firmer the basis of national prosperity, and bringing into operation an engine

for effecting the greatest good, exercising, as they do, a reflex influence on their parents and relations at home. We trust the day is not far distant when the Legislature of our country will interfere, and stem the tide of infidelity, vice, and crime, by the endowment of institutions throughout the land, to be conducted on some such principles as we have endeavoured to explain in this section on BIBLE TRAINING.

## CHAP. VII.

### POINTS AND PECULIARITIES, ETC.—TRAINING LESSONS—ELEMENTS OF SCIENCE.

#### ELEMENTS OF SCIENCE—SECULAR TRAINING LESSONS.

WE would recommend that at least one training lesson be given in the gallery each day, upon some point of science, applicable to the purposes of real life ; for whilst this is particularly valuable to persons in the humbler walks of society, in fitting them for manual and other labour, it is also valuable as the foundation of a more thorough knowledge of science, to those whose circumstances may enable them to prosecute their researches still further. To the former, these school exercises may be all the theoretical knowledge they can acquire in life. To the latter, a thoroughly analysed or pictured out training lesson, day by day, will be found an elementary exercise greatly superior to the ordinary mode of mere reading lessons, even when accompanied by explanation.

As we have already stated under a former head, when objects are within our reach we make use of them in conducting the lessons as a sort of text, or starting point ; but whether within reach or not, our principle is to picture out the whole lesson, and every point of the *subject matter* of which it is composed. Facts are stated by the master—the lesson being then drawn from, and given at the time by the children themselves. Their ability to do so, as we have already said, under the head of Bible Training, is the test whether the subject has been properly pictured out or not—for if so, they must understand what

they mentally see. For example, if separate lessons have been previously given upon the properties of heat, and water, and steam, and air, and the condensing influence of cold, and the screw, and the pulley, and the inclined plane, and the lever, and the centrifugal force, and if all these and other forces be pictured out, as combined in one machine, the children will readily form a steam-engine in their minds, and tell the trainer the combined effect upon a shaft which may move spinning machinery, raise water, or propel a steam vessel, or railway train.

This is a fundamental part of the training system, and a knowledge of secular subjects, particularly what is termed natural science, also enables the Bible trainer more easily to elucidate the lessons of Scripture.

The introduction of daily secular gallery lessons, on the simultaneous principle, which is new in popular education, is, next to Bible training, the most direct mode of exercising the mind of the pupils. These scientific and secular lessons give a decided tone of intelligent observation and reflection in the ordinary intercourse of every-day life.

Visitors sometimes say, What have children of the poor to do with science? let them learn to read their Bibles, and repeat their Catechism. Science, however, is valuable alike to the mechanic and the man of business, in promoting the arts of life, so indispensable to the wealth and comfort of all ranks of society. If the bold and clear outlines of science be given to all ranks, each may maintain his proper place in the scale of its ascension. The poor man, as we have said, if he chooses, may advance beyond the limited period of his elementary school education, and the man of leisure and scientific research may rise as high as he pleases; while the genius, of whatever

grade, acquires enough to enable him to prosecute his studies, and take his just place in society. But we rise a little higher in our secular gallery training lessons, and use scientific terms, expressive of scientific principles, such as are used by lecturers on natural philosophy. In consequence of which, it is still urged by some, WHY TEACH SCIENCE to children in an elementary school? What can they understand of latent heat, the radii of a circle, centrifugal and centripetal forces, gravitation and electric fluids, and innumerable other more complex terms? Now, we have to say, that all such terms can be simplified, and when reduced to simple terms, they can be understood by children of a few years old. Having these outlines clearly analysed by familiar illustrations, they can be made to understand the most complex terms, expressive of the most complex movements and conditions. For example, the motion of a child round the circular swinging-pole in the play-ground, may illustrate, in some measure, how the moon keeps in its orbit round the earth, and the latter, or any other planet, round the sun; in other words, what is meant by the centrifugal and centripetal forces. The proper course of education in science has too generally been reversed: and the reason why so many adults stop short in their progress, and cannot educate themselves (for education ought only to close with life), is, that they have committed to memory technical terms, which, *not having been pictured out* and illustrated, are not understood; and also, that the minute points of science have been given before the great outlines were drawn.

The philosophic terms which a public lecturer finds it necessary to use, are not understood by the youth; they have not been explained, far less pictured out to his

mind's eye. He does not therefore *see* the bearing of each point of the premises laid down, or the conclusions to which the lecturer arrives, and at the close he is found oftentimes to have acquired no distinct impression of the actual lesson, which otherwise might have been received. He may applaud the lecturer as being a *clever man*. "It was an excellent lecture." "What beautiful experiments he performed." "How remarkably bright he made the gas to burn, and what an explosion it produced." But the lecture itself he has not comprehended. This is the everyday experience of the young and the old in attending public lectures on science. It would have been otherwise after a course of early school training.

The lessons during the first stage, or the outlines, at whatever age the child commences his course, ought to be exceedingly simple, and should comprehend a number of the more obvious things in nature and in art, which every child ought to know in their great outlines, before he is perplexed with minute points, or the use of technical terms; a knowledge of which he gradually acquires as he advances from stage to stage.

As a child, I wish to know what wheaten bread and oaten bread are; the distinction in quality, and how they are made; how butter and cheese are made; what salt is; how wine is made, and of what composed; what brown and loaf sugar are; the nature of tea and coffee, with the places where they are grown, and how they are brought to the condition in which they are found, when used at home at the fireside; the distinction between woollen, cotton, and silk, both how they are produced, and why more or less warm.

The child ought to be made acquainted with articles of furniture. These are continually presented to his



notice, and they afford the means of exercising his powers of observation, and training him to think. Their nature and relative qualities ought to be made familiar to him.

The natural history of the more common animals, domestic and foreign, is also an object of interest and a means of enlargement to the young mind, particularly when united with a short history, not merely of the habits of the animals themselves, but of the countries and inhabitants in and among which Providence has placed them, and the peculiar adaptation of each to its own particular circumstances. As a child, I wish to know why the swallow is not seen during winter; why the hen has open, and the duck webbed feet; with other more minute points of the formation of animals; why the butterfly is seen in summer only; from what origin it has sprung. What are all these, the child naturally inquires, and whence does the latter derive its pearly whiteness? Of what use rats and mice are, saving that they are so troublesome in our dwellings, and why and when they may be killed, without our being chargeable with cruelty; how the foot of the rein-deer is suited to the frozen regions of Lapland, and that of the camel to the sandy deserts of Arabia. From one and all of these training lessons, the children may learn something of the power, and wisdom, and goodness of God, to all his creatures; and such lessons ought uniformly to be drawn.

The child sees himself surrounded on every side by men of trade and handicraft, and he wishes, and ought to know not merely the qualities of things, and the materials in use, but how they are moulded, or joined, or mixed, or decomposed, so as to render them serviceable. He sees the smith form a nail or a horse-shoe; why does he heat the iron in a furnace before laying it on the anvil,



and striking it with the hammer? The uses of the pulley, the screw, and the lever, ought to be pictured out to him by analogy and illustration. The child sees paper, why not woven as a piece of cloth, and why more or less impervious to moisture.

The child breathes air, drinks water, sees steam, hail, and snow. What are all these? the child naturally inquires; and why is the last *white*, and, when melted, turns into water? The sun to him appears always round, not so the moon—why so? The principal parts of his own body, and those of other animals, with their relative functions, ought to be known; the qualities and names of the more common minerals, and the great outlines of botany, &c.

In the industrial department, there are many important points which the girls ought peculiarly to be made acquainted with, and which may be carried into domestic and social life, such as, the scientific reasons why a room is better aired by opening the top of a window rather than the bottom—how to sweep a floor without “watering,” and without raising the dust—the effect of making tea with water just brought to the boiling point, and water which has boiled for some time—how to make or mend a fire, so as to save fuel, and whether the top or bottom of the fire ought to be stirred in rendering it what is termed either a good or a lasting fire—the science of combustion, and whether smoke ought to exist at all, or to what extent, and how it may be cured or prevented—the scientific and practical effect of toasting bread, and laying one slice above another—and the effects, practically and scientifically, of fire on woollen, cotton, linen, and silken cloths. These, and a number of other practical matters, may be rendered highly useful to the children of this class, in after life.

The child is exercised daily on some point in each of these departments. Whatever is done, ought to be well done. Analyse one point clearly, rather than a dozen points imperfectly. Variety does not dissipate the mind, or render knowledge superficial. It is only so when the surface is presented without a *picturing out* and a proper analysis. The child is fatigued and disgusted when kept too long on any one subject. The natural process on entering a garden, for example, is first to look at every thing within its four corners; but the plan generally adopted by the lecturer is, to spend a week at the door-step, analysing the first plant met with. Let the mind see the whole outlines of each department it enters upon in the first instance, and then with interest and intelligence it will patiently investigate.

In the daily Bible training department of our course, the lessons, as we have already stated, are uniformly read from the book itself, and in a great many instances the natural picture can only be drawn by a reference to science, more or less minute. There are only *a very few* good text-books on science and secular subjects, which can be read by the children before, and at the moment the daily secular lesson is given, both because they are generally too lengthy, and because nine-tenths of the points to which our gallery lessons refer are less abstract, and of more practical advantage for the working classes than the subjects to which these treatises refer—the greater proportion of our gallery secular training lessons, therefore, are conducted by the trainer, without book. The intelligent reader will see not only the propriety, but necessity of this arrangement, from the statement already made under the present head, and, by consulting the course of daily lessons contained in a subsequent chapter.

## MONITORS.

There is scarcely any point in education that has excited so much interest and discussion as the use of MONITORS. The question, however, may be easily solved. It is simply this, whether a young untrained and inexperienced boy shall take the place of a mature and cultivated master?

Were this the only question brought under consideration, every rational man would quickly determine which he would choose; for what parent would prefer having his children educated by the former, if the latter were within his reach?

The benevolent public, upon whom chiefly rests the responsibility of establishing schools for the poor and ignorant, too generally desire to have the work done as cheaply as possible—masters are expensive, but monitors may be had for nothing. Most certainly if apprentices could do the work in any branch of business, we would not incur the expense of employing masters. This is precisely the point at issue in regard to schools conducted on what is termed the Bell, or Lancasterian, or Monitorial systems. Monitors, who are apprentices in the art, cannot and do not do the work of teaching, far less of training. In employing monitors, we have the semblance but not the reality of education.

Subscribers to a school remain satisfied, when a wholesale number, such as 200, or 300, or 500 children are sought out and congregated together into a school-room, with one master to teach a certain number of monitors, each of whom is to teach his petty class, that they have done enough—that the proposed number are being *educated*. From fact and observation, we believe they are deceived,

as also the parents of the children, the public at large, and more unfortunately still, the Government of the country, which has the necessary funds at command, to pay *for masters*, and the will also to do what is needful, provided only the country at large would show the actual necessity and the means by which true education can be accomplished.

Eighty pupils actually present, having, it may be 100 on the list, we consider the maximum for one master to be superintended by him, both in-doors and out of doors, whatever number of departments there may be in the whole school or establishment. We ought not to use a monitor but under the full impression that we are employing a jobbing apprentice in *the art*, whose work must be of necessity imperfectly done, and whose materials must be so torn, mangled, and misshapen, as scarcely to present the form intended. This, for a time, might be borne with, in reference to inanimate things, but when we have the moral and intellectual nature of a whole generation to cultivate for time and eternity, we must pause ere we tamper with interests so vastly important.

Monitors may teach facts they already know, but they cannot develope the ideas of the children or their extent of knowledge, nor work the facts repeated or dwelt upon into the minds of their classes. Most unquestionably they cannot morally train. They do not possess the felt authority requisite, and they have not the necessary experience to handle with delicacy the shades of the moral affections and habits. Now, this is just the point in question ; for the great end of all philanthropic exertions on the part of Government and private individuals is, the moral, and with it the intellectual elevation of the poor and working classes. The employment of monitors in-

stead of well-trained masters serves to stultify our best efforts and intentions.

The statement is continually repeated and pressed upon our attention, that money cannot be had to pay masters for every school of 80 or 100 pupils, and therefore, that monitors *must* be employed. Has the experiment ever been made on a large scale, or beyond a few solitary cases? Has the public exclaimed as long and loudly for the emancipation of our people at home, from vice, and ignorance, and sin, as they have done for the emancipation of the colonial slaves? Has the Legislature been fairly assailed for an equal sum for home, as for foreign emancipation? We know it has the power to grant, and the country can easily bear the expenditure.

Monitors may be employed under the training system, as well as under any other, with the firm conviction, however, that in exact proportion as we employ such substitutes, we are destroying the efficiency of the system. Our aim, however, viz., the cultivation of the *whole man*, is too high, willingly to place apprentices as the teachers and trainers of youth, if we can get masters.

All we have already said refers chiefly to the effect of the use of monitors upon their pupils. But we must attend to some evils which relate to themselves.

A monitor is oftentimes found favouring certain companions of his own; or, if too old for such an acquaintanceship, he frequently threatens to punish such of the pupils as may chance to have playthings, or sweetmeats, if they do not share them with him; and this he secures, by putting such questions as may cause them to lose several places.

One of our students at present in the seminary, says, that when a monitor, he has frequently sent up boys to

the master, to get flogged, simply because he had been refused some playthings or sweetmeats—the boys, of course, not daring to complain, lest a second beating should follow on leaving school.

Humility is indeed the basis of all improvement, intellectual, or moral, or even physical. Pride and vanity, therefore, must be barriers. No one who has witnessed the self-important gait, and manner, and strut, of many of these little gentlemen while engaged in their temporary or more permanent official elevation, but must be convinced, that whatever intellectual vigour or *fury* they may acquire by exercise, their own moral training is seriously injured, and that pride and vanity are decidedly and most directly cultivated. More than this, whilst the office of monitor is expected to render them eventually superior teachers, the reflecting mind must perceive that the habitual exercise of the opposite principle to *humility* must prove a formidable barrier to their every improvement in after life. If we are to have moral training in our schools, really or professedly, and if monitors cannot morally, or even intellectually train, and in a moral point of view reflect a decided injury on themselves, we would use them as seldom as we could—the seldomer the better—and would call on intelligent teachers, and the reflecting and benevolent directors of schools, to consider calmly whether they ought to use them at all.

We believe, strong as the desire is to favour the monitorial system, in whole or in part, that for reasons we have already stated, no intelligent man would argue for their use, provided money could be had to pay properly trained masters. Monitors must be held only as substitutes, and poor substitutes they are. Keeping



this in view, we have no objections to employ boys to revise the lessons in arithmetic or spelling, or to put aside the pens—place out the forms and desks, and other little matters that may serve to ease the labour of the master ; but, as already stated, they cannot train—they cannot explain or analyse any point or difficulty, as the master himself may do.

If monitors must be used for a time in these days of educational parsimony, and we had almost added, ignorance, and used we believe they will be, let us keep the truth steadily in view, that the attempt to communicate knowledge by monitors, to whatever extent, deceives the public and ourselves, by raising undue expectations, and robs the youth of our country of that substantial religious and secular knowledge, and those practical exercises of the moral affections, which it is our duty to cultivate.



## CHAP. VIII.

POINTS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE TRAINING SYSTEM—EMULATION, ETC.

### EMULATION.

THIS is an important point of the system, and much animadversion has been directed against us because we do not allow the children to take places. How then, it is said, can you have emulation without a stimulus? We have a stimulus, and also emulation, but it is conducted upon different principles, and arises, in some measure, from different motives, than the mode generally pursued. I as a child may be stimulated from love of distinction or from a love of learning; unquestionably the former feeling is more generally active than the latter; but if it can be proved, in actual practice, that the latter, or higher motive (although other motives may and ought to form ingredients), can be made to stimulate, why should we cultivate selfishness or any inferior motive? But after the experience of eighteen years, we are fully of opinion, that the stimulative process of the whole system combined, but more especially that of simultaneous answering, renders the "taking of places" quite unnecessary, and medals of distinction actually injurious in a moral point of view.

To illustrate this position: Suppose the trainer is conducting a lesson, he of course puts a question, or forms an ellipsis, which is answered or filled up by one or more,

according to their natural talents or extent of knowledge. Some of the answerers may be right, or nearly so ; others may be wrong. It is clear that when the answer which the master accepts as right is received, and thrown back upon the gallery upon the principle already stated, that that boy who may have given the correct answer feels himself, for the moment, the “dux ;” and all who thought as he did (although not expressed by them), also feel to a certain extent elevated with him. The very next question may be answered by a boy or girl of quite a different temperament, by which he or she is immediately elevated, without changing his or her local position ; and so on through the whole class. One boy may become the leader by answering every question, which is not likely, from the variety of the exercises ; or any boy in the gallery, on this principle, may be “dux” during some part of every day. Those who cannot answer, or have answered or thought improperly, of course feel themselves in the same position as if they actually were at the bottom of the class. The great point to be gained, whether in the moral or intellectual departments, is to cultivate and stimulate the higher powers in the acquisition of knowledge rather than to appeal to, and stimulate by, the selfish and lower motives of human nature.

This principle, a few years ago, was a matter of theory on our part ; now, however, it is a matter of fact and experience, and is found more efficacious in cultivating the understanding of children ; and, without any of the evils alluded to, tends greatly to improve their moral sensibilities.

The reader will now readily anticipate our views on the subject of prizes.

## PRIZES.

We give no prizes in the Model Schools of the Normal Seminary, nor does any one do so who faithfully follows the training system. We do not say it is not impossible to give prizes without injuring the finer feelings, or injuring the moral sense, when it is confined to one particular branch of education—such as writing an essay on a given subject, although much qualification may be made even here—but to give prizes in a school in which a variety of subjects are introduced is, upon the whole, attended with serious evils. Prizes are generally, in such circumstances, awarded to the memory of words, or general rapidity of verbal answers, seldom to memory of ideas or good behaviour. Pride and vanity are strengthened ; the sensitive and physically-weak are discouraged, however high their intellectual capacity may be. Many a “poetic Cowper” creeps into his shell in the presence of the physically-furious, whose voice or manner overbears them, and operates like a loadstone, depressing and weighing them down during the whole period of their education. Ought not the forward to be restrained, real talent brought forward, and the modest and sensitive encouraged by attention and kindly notice ? Who that has witnessed and narrowly observed the heartburnings, and jealousies, and bending of principle, and lowering of the moral sensibilities of boys, under the influence and excitement of place and prize, does not perceive that, with all the apparent advantages of such a practice, it is not without a deep and serious alloy ? It is quite clear that the intellect is that part of the child which is stimulated and rewarded by the distinction of place, and the

prospect of a prize. The moral powers, if not positively injured, are at least left dormant, or remain unexercised. The vanity or pride of the possessor is exercised and strengthened; those who are unsuccessful are discouraged, and frequently sink into carelessness; and at the very best, it is elevating the few at the expense of the many. The higher moral powers are absolutely sacrificed at the shrine of the intellect—forgetting, sometimes, that “knowledge puffeth up, but charity *buildeth* up.”

We admit that there is a great difficulty in treating this question, as strong intellect and strong health are alike gifts of nature, and not dependent on the will of the possessor, although the proper exercise of either or both of these unquestionably is.

We do not pretend to have removed all the difficulties, but the principle of the Training System, as a whole, has made a considerable approach to it; and would be complete, we believe, as far as human nature can permit, were the system universally established from the earliest childhood. Places and prizes may be necessary, we admit, in a school for cultivating the understanding alone, but are unnecessary and inconsistent with the principle of moral training, or training *the whole child*; at all events, to dispense with these, in the very worst view of the case (but which we are not prepared to admit), is sacrificing the very few for the good of the many, and most certainly elevating the moral sensibilities of *all*.

It is evident that a prize cannot be given to the most moral; for where is the standard, and how can we gauge the moral sensibilities, as well as the moral external conduct? And as human beings, even intellectually, are so differently constituted, to be just, we ought to award places and prizes to all the following powers of mind, all

of which, whether separate or combined, are powers which, if properly directed, are good in themselves, and ought to be in exercise each day in a school education—viz., memory of facts, memory of numbers, acquisitiveness, tune or power of music, reason, comparison, imagination, illustration by narrative, benevolence, firmness of purpose, conscientiousness, and several others too minute to mention. It is evident that if the power of memory of words or facts, and the memory of numbers alone, are stimulated, which is a very common practice, then other and higher powers of the intellect are left dormant; at all events, they are not stimulated. Now, our object and principle is, to stimulate every one of these powers in varied and rapid succession, not by the mere sordidness of acquisitiveness or vanity, but to stimulate the higher intellectual powers themselves, by natural and animating exercise, and to regulate their proper bearing and end, by the still higher powers of the mind, viz., the Moral. The union of the play-ground and the gallery enables the trainer to accomplish this.

It is stated by some that the Scriptures hold out a prize. True; but it is a prize which all may attain without excluding any. No prize is held out to intellect *alone*, or the outward doings alone, but to the right use of all the powers bestowed on us by God, and all are required to be dedicated to his glory. Not one power, but many powers. All may receive “the crown of glory,” according to what he hath, and not according to what he hath not. The Training System acknowledges and endeavours to act upon this principle. Each child is rewarded by the acknowledged approbation of the master, which is to him a prize.

Simultaneous Answers, Emulation, Places, and Prizes,

on the principle here laid down, and for which we contend, are according to nature, and every day proves that they are sound, practical, and efficient. A boy, by the sympathy of numbers, may be moulded into obedience, and stimulated to exertion, without taking places, prizes, or being flogged.

#### PUNISHMENTS.—THE USE OF THE ROD, &c.

In Scripture parents are commanded to use the rod of correction, and “not to spare the child for his much crying.” This, of course, is a command to parents, not to schoolmasters. We admit, however, that when a parent delegates his power to a guardian or schoolmaster, he may, if he chooses, in common with other authority, delegate also the divine right to chastise ; but the schoolmaster possesses no inherent right in himself to do so. The parent, of course, is not commanded to whip when there is no occasion for it, neither must the master ; and it is a question whether the literal rod is always to be used, or the ferula, or cane, or ruler, or kick with the foot, all of which are common in schools. It is evident that the mere sensation of bodily pain is not punishment, unless it is understood to be so ; for how much pain will a boy sustain from his companions at play without a murmur, certain punishments being the forfeits of the game ; and, therefore, he suppresses his torture with the utmost heroism. The understanding of the punishment must be present, or the mere sensation of bodily pain is no punishment to him. Instead, therefore, of passing into the understanding, through the physical department of the human being, we prefer punishing as well as stimulating the higher sensibilities of our moral nature.



If a mother can make it an honour and privilege to her child to lift her handkerchief, and a punishment not to be permitted to do so ; or, if it be possible and practicable that for disobedience, or any other fault, a child's exclusion from table for half an hour, is felt to be a punishment so severe, as almost to tear his heart-strings asunder ; then it is clear, that by the same process, and by the additional power of the sympathy of numbers, which the mother cannot have, may the master of a training school punish a child most severely, without corporal infliction. To order a boy out from the gallery, *after being properly warned* once or twice, is found to be really more severe than half a dozen "palmies." A cuff is a summary mode of settling a dispute, but by no means an efficient mode of preventing a recurrence.

Corporal punishments in school tend to harden or break the spirit. We ought never to associate the idea of punishment with what we should love. A child ought to love school, and his teacher, and his exercises. To punish a child by causing him to commit a large task to memory, or write a long exercise, or read six chapters of the Bible, is the most certain mode of generating a dislike for all these. Our object is to stimulate from a fear of offending, rather than from a fear of the rod. Nothing can be more unjust than to punish a boy for a deficiency in the power of calculation, or the memory of words, while he may possess in a high degree reason and imagination—thus stimulating the lower at the expense of the higher powers of the mind.

Some old teachers, and impatient young men, who have been accustomed to use the literal rod to save time or the trouble of investigating a fault, are apt to imagine that there are difficulties in refraining from the use of it,



which do not exist. Patience in this department of moral training is indeed “a virtue,” and lies at the root of all proper training. From long experience we know, that in exact proportion as a schoolmaster trains does the use of the literal rod appear to be unnecessary. We can show, by actual experiment, that schools of 100 or 150 boys and girls have been taught and trained together for years, which is the fact, without having had recourse to the use of the literal rod ; we then are entitled to argue for its discontinuance in the public school. It may be difficult to remove the literal rod altogether from the teaching school, but it is unnecessary in one for training. We know of many schools conducted upon the Training System in which the rod has never been used at all. The rod is an excellent excuse for the trouble of training ; it frequently silences the culprit, but seldom convinces him of his fault. The sympathy of numbers, prudently used, will do in a school what, without such a sympathy, the parent cannot do at home ; and, therefore, parents are wisely permitted, nay, enjoined, to use the rod—whether literally or otherwise is left to the judgment to determine. A parent whose affections to his offspring are strong, and who is frequently blind to their faults, may be safely trusted with the rod. We would not always have the same confidence in a stranger. It is well, therefore, that there is a mode by which schools can be conducted without it. We know of nothing that so certainly compels a master to train than the feeling that he must not strike. In fact, if he do his duty, and uses the means within his reach, the use of the rod is quite unnecessary. The sympathy of numbers is powerful in every department of life—amongst the old as well as the young. This principle, in the school gallery, whatever the size of the

class may be, is the great instrument in convicting the guilty and inflicting punishment.

How, then, it may be asked, do you act in the way of punishment? for punishments, you admit, are necessary. One plan, and the most common, is to threaten the child, calmly yet firmly, that he will be taken out from the gallery and made to stand out by himself on the floor. This is felt so severely, that very quickly the culprit ceases his misconduct ; but should the offence be repeated, and he be actually ordered out from his seat, it is rare, when the whole process is properly conducted by the trainer, that the child is not in tears before he reaches the floor ; and then is the time, tenderly yet firmly, to exercise the whole class, as well as the offending party, on what is the offence and the cause of punishment. And after remaining to compose himself a very short time—according to circumstances—the child is permitted to return to his seat, the offence of one thus affording an opportunity of training the whole.

## CHAP. IX.

### POINTS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE TRAINING SYSTEM.

#### READING.

READING is a most important acquisition, and every possible means must be adopted to render it what it ought to be, a means of acquiring real and substantial knowledge.

We apprehend, however, that impressive reading can never be acquired without the understanding of what is read. We must understand what we read, before we can feel its force; and without feeling, there cannot be good reading.

Look at the eye and manner of a man who feels what he reads, and observe how it tells on his audience, compared with the man who reads as a task, however elegantly.

Impression, however, is of the first and last importance. Every one cannot arrive at what is termed elegant reading, but by a simple process in necessary accordance with the training system, every individual may arrive at the power of being distinct, and even impressive.

What some few individuals naturally exhibit, viz., a clear and distinct articulation, we propose as a uniform system to be acquired. One or two simple rules may be attended to. Open the mouth well—rest on the consonants—never slur one word into another—avoid a sing-song, or a monotonous tone; and if a distinct pause be made at the end of each word, so as to give a slow and distinct articulation, and that continuously for a few weeks or months together, the children will acquire the habit

of reading distinctly ever afterwards, even when reading quickly. It must be overdone a little at first, in order that at last it may be well done : just as the drill-serjeant does with his raw recruits. In order that they may acquire the habit of lifting the heel, as it ought to be, three inches above the ground in marching, he causes them in the first instance, to raise it five or six inches. Were he to cause them to raise it only three inches at first, many would eventually scarcely clear the smallest pebble, and even scrape their heel on the ground. So it is with readers.

The public speaker, *ceteris paribus*, is uniformly the most impressive and popular who reads and expresses his words separately and very distinctly. Why are we so very much interested with a public address from a foreigner? Not from his foreign accent so much, as that being under the necessity of translating his ideas into another language, he has acquired the habit of repeating each word separately and slowly. The repeating of each word *separately* and distinctly, is as great an improvement in the art of reading, as the same principle is in singing the notes of music.

Let every step be progressive. During the first few weeks or months, let the pause between each word be *long*, pronouncing the word slowly and very distinctly (the master, of course, showing the example). Then diminish the length of the pause a little, during the next few weeks, as a second stage ; and so on step by step, until the children, following the example of the trainers, and themselves *doing* the thing, they arrive at the desired point of excellence.

It is a principle, that the whole class should read simultaneously, and a few individually. The former,

viz., simultaneous reading (and seated in a gallery), assists in securing the following important objects: first, the saving of time, as all may read what any one reads. Secondly, the most perfect concord as to tones of voice, as in the case of singing—"the sympathy of numbers" producing this effect. And, thirdly, the great means to be used for attaining this end, is to cause the children to read each word slowly and *separately*, as if it stood alone, and in the precise tones of the master or trainer, also frequently repeating them. According to this plan of procedure, 80 or 100 children in a gallery must attain the same tones which the person training them chooses—thus following his example, and that of one another by "the sympathy of numbers." This, however, ought to be frequently tested, by calling upon one here and there, and sometimes a dozen or half-a-dozen at a time, in the gallery to read alone, equally slowly, and in the same tone of voice. This attainment, however, is more easily secured by *simultaneous* than by individual reading. Wherever the training system is applied to reading, therefore, if the children do not read distinctly, the fault is in the master, not in the scholars.

The children may be trained as follows: repeating *after* the master, not reading *with* him. For the first two or three weeks, making a long pause between each word, as in No. 1; again for the same period, as in No. 2, and so on—simultaneously in general, and here and there in the gallery one child individually.

1. All — people — that — on — earth — do — dwell.
2. All — people — that — on — earth — do — dwell.
3. All — people — that — on — earth — do — dwell.
4. All, people, that, on, earth, do, dwell.
5. All people that on earth do dwell.

*Reading* on the part of parents is generally, nay, almost exclusively demanded as the all in all in education, not merely in juvenile schools, but for children of three or four years of age in the infant or initiatory department. Let the master give all the instruction and training possible as a preliminary course, it is nothing in the eyes of parents without the art of reading, Give them it, and no complaint will be heard, although not one word be understood of what they do read. This prejudice on the part of parents, however, is a serious difficulty, as it places the most accomplished masters, in many cases, nearly on a level with the old dame, the lame soldier, or broken down tradesman, either of whom can at least teach to read and spell, *i. e.*, the sound of words without the understanding. This prejudice is pregnant with this serious evil, that not merely are juvenile schools injured and levelled almost to the rote system, but nearly every infant school is in a great measure destroyed, and turned into a reading school. So long as the master teaches reading from boards in the initiatory or infant department, he is safe ; but introduce even one spelling-book, and then, like the letting in of water, other books will follow, until moral training be entirely excluded, and the health of the young children become seriously injured. Another difficulty presents itself: where there is no partial endowment, the teacher is, generally speaking, too dependent on numbers for his subsistence, consequently, in most instances, he overcrowds his school. A great proportion of parents have no desire for moral training, or even intellectual training for their children, nor do they understand the principles of either. They do indeed experience their waywardness and improper conduct ; but how the public school can assist them, or remove the



evils felt and complained of, they know not. We have education, therefore, brought down too generally to the very lowest point. Hence the extreme low rate of wages, and the consequent lowering of the profession of the schoolmaster from the rank which he ought to hold in the scale of society. The fault lies not merely with the ignorant parents, but with the more intelligent directors, whose greatest anxiety seems to be—to have the largest number of children EDUCATED, *as it is termed*, at the least possible expense.

The mere reading of words, or repetition of sounds, without understanding, is almost useless ;\* and we have known persons in mature life, in these circumstances, lose the memory even of the sounds they have been in the habit of repeating in youth. The figures or combination of letters awakened no definite idea ; they, therefore, ceased to interest them, and they again to remember even the sound. The understanding of what we do read, greatly assists the memory of words. But whilst we condemn the idea or practice of reading without the understanding, it must not be supposed that we wish to limit the amount of reading in school or out of it. Even with the training lessons in science and Scripture, and the moral training lessons besides, all of which are additional to what is usually given under other systems, the gallery simultaneous principle enables the children to have as much, or even more reading than any children enjoy. For example, when a class of 20 or 30 children are exclusively confined to individual reading, they can seldom read more than two or three sentences each, *i. e.*, two or three turns of the whole class will occupy as much time as the

---

\* See pages 4 and 3?, also Factory Statistics.



teacher can spend during the limited period of school hours—leaving him little or no time for explanation, and none for training. On the contrary, under our system, although one here and there in the gallery, or in any of the divisions, is required to read individually, for various reasons mentioned under another head, yet on the simultaneous gallery method, whatever one reads, all read ; and each and all may in less time read audibly, four times at least as much as is the ordinary practice in schools. If, therefore, *less time* be occupied in reading under our system, the remainder of the time, or at all events, part of it, is spent in analysing and picturing out the lesson to be deduced—thus carrying the memory of the understanding along with you, as well as the memory of sounds, and giving a taste for reading at home, as well at present as in after life. The training system, therefore, *whilst it saves time*, secures at the least an equal amount of reading ; and in addition, when faithfully practised, a thorough understanding—a taste for private reading, and we trust a proper discrimination of what books ought to be read.

#### ENUNCIATION.

A distinct forcible enunciation is an important assistant in intellectual training. Assisted by suitable action, it is fully one half of the power of either a public speaker or a school trainer. Great pains, therefore, have been taken to reduce the training in this department to natural principles ; and when we ask ourselves the question, Why is it that so few persons enunciate clearly, forcibly, and distinctly, even when they have been under the care of professors of elocution ? we can only solve the difficulty upon the following principle : Elocutionists generally

exhibit in themselves the highest point of elegant reading, reciting, or speaking, as a standard to their pupils, but not the mode of arriving at that point, reversing the mode adopted in the art of writing, for example, which is first, *strokes*; second, *turns*; third, *text*; fourth, *half-text*; and lastly, *small writing* or *current hand*. A child will not readily acquire the art of writing, by commencing with *small writing*. Yet this is the usual mode attempted in the art of elocution, and, therefore, pupils generally fail. They may repeat or read a few select pieces, with force, and sometimes with elegance; but their ordinary reading is little improved, and their mode of speaking in conversation not in the slightest degree. In general, those who acquire a distinct impressive mode of delivery, in addition to having received the power partially from nature, have generally trained themselves, as in the art of writing. We would commence on the natural principle, with *strokes*.

This principle of pausing sensibly at the end of each word, without a drawling or monotonous tone of voice, secures that eventually all will read impressively, if not elegantly; the power of elegant reading or speaking being dependent, in a great measure, on the taste and ear for harmony.

The power of the voice is very apparent when we consider what different meanings may be attached to the words *yes* or *no*, simply by the variation of the tone of voice, so complete, indeed, as that *yes* to the ear may be made to mean *no*; and most persons are familiar with the effect such changes may produce on these words,—Do you ride to town to-day? &c. A clear and distinct enunciation, therefore, is not merely a polish or finish, as is generally imagined, but a main pillar in the whole process

of communication between master and scholars. We would, therefore, commence elocution as we would the art of reasoning, with the alphabet.

Under the training system, three-fourths of the information received by the scholars passes to them direct from the master, without the intervention of books. The master having previously made himself thoroughly acquainted with the subject, works it, as it were, into the children's minds—developes, at the same time, their extent of knowledge and understanding, and enforces the knowledge he himself is possessed of, with all the warmth and natural effect of the human voice ; hence the great importance of cultivating *a clear and distinct enunciation*, as, without this, not only does speaking lose much of its power, but the half of what is said is smothered and lost in its way between master and scholars. It is well to speak and read slowly, and rather in an under tone : what is lost in rapidity ought to be made up in energy. Cause the pupil to open his mouth well, and move his lips freely. The slightest approach to drawling or *singing* is injurious, and ought to be avoided.

Many intelligent and well-instructed young men fail in speaking impressively to their scholars, from their not sufficiently opening the mouth ; a clear enunciation, otherwise, is seldom if ever attained. The following method has been practised with advantage, by the Normal students. Spend three, four, or five minutes at a time in repeating clearly, loudly, and emphatically, such words as the following, each word to be repeated several times in succession : Re-ca-pi-tu-lation, Re-ca-pi-tu-lation, Em-phatically, Em-phatically, Im-pract-i-ca-bility, Im-pract-i-ca-bility, In-com-pre-hensi-bility, &c. ; any word indeed, which of necessity causes a considerable motion

and expansion of the mouth and lips, may be used. Every syllable ought to be fully articulated ; and the formality, in the first instance, will quickly soften down into a clear enunciation. Much of the effect produced by addresses from the pulpit and the bar, or even in ordinary conversation, is unquestionably dependent on a proper enunciation ; and, when accompanied with suitable action, forms the perfect speaker.

A master can mould his pupils to almost any tone of voice and manner he pleases, and this is promoted upon the common principle of social sympathy, by each new scholar adopting the tone and manner established in the class.

#### SCHOOL BOOKS.

Almost all systems of education that have come under our notice, consist of a list of books, or subjects to be taught, or *what* should be taught, not the manner *how*. The latter is the great and important consideration, for on this depends the difference between learning much, or very little.

Every child receives instruction in the gallery, from the day he enters school, and before he can read, as well as when he can read—thus tripling, at least, the ordinary term during which school children are placed under instruction—a matter of paramount importance to that class of society *in particular*, whose period of school attendance is so extremely limited.

Books are not used in the initiatory *training school*, although quite common in infant *teaching* schools, or in what may be termed the *cramming* system. The introduction of books tends uniformly to subvert the moral train-

ing, and sometimes even the physical and the intellectual training, and is decidedly injurious to the health of very young children. But while books, for these reasons, are excluded in this department, the children nevertheless are taught the elements of reading just as they are taught the elements of every other branch. Large printed sheets, containing spelling lessons and simple stories, are pasted on boards, and are daily in use. By the simultaneous and oral method of development, the children acquire the art of reading, with delight to themselves, and without injury to their health, or diminishing the amount of other more important mental and moral exercises. Thus a child of five or six years of age, who has been two or three years in school, may read a simple story fluently, without having had a book in his hand in school. The only objection that can be urged against this is the prejudice, that books and the mere power of reading form knowledge : but we must not sacrifice health, and knowledge, and moral training at the shrine of a foolish imagination.

Too many school-books are put into the hands of children generally, and too many tasks are required to be committed to memory. Our conviction is, that *not more than one-fourth of the lessons usually given to be learned at home ought to be exacted*, and full three times additional information communicated by the master in school.

The human voice and action, and *the mental sympathy of the gallery*, simplify education, impress the knowledge more lastingly on the mind, and save much of the drudgery to the pupil, although the labour of the master, as a trainer, may be increased, particularly during the first few months of children being placed under his charge.

If a few sentences in prose or verse are to be committed

Each child having grasped a rope with both hands, nearly as high as he can reach, they all start at the same instant of time, and their arms being necessarily extended, has the effect of opening the chest, and allowing the lungs to play freely. As their feet reach the ground, the whole children run as fast as possible round the circle, and the centrifugal force gradually throws them off their feet, until one and all find themselves whirling in the air, to their inexpressible delight. The motion is continued by one or more of the children extending their feet, to the ground, and running a few steps. Arms, limbs, and indeed every muscle of the body, are thus exercised. After going several rounds in one direction, those engaged should stop, change hands, and go round in the opposite direction. Each child being independent of the other, may continue or leave off at pleasure. It affords a greater variety, and engages a larger number of children in the same space, than the old swing; for although four or six children only are swinging at one time, on either pole, yet 20 or 30 may, and usually do, form a circle round it, singing and counting to the number 30 or 40—those engaged must then instantly let go the ropes, and make way for others. If the children remain in school from nine o'clock, A.M. till four o'clock, P.M., it is well that *full half of the time ought be spent in the play-ground, at play*. Any approach to fatigue ought to be avoided, and, with this view, let the master or mistress, while they join in their sports, carefully *lead* and not *drive*.

Amidst this busy scene, the trainer must be present, not to check, but to stimulate youthful gayety. All is free as air, and subject only to a *moral* observation of any particular delinquency, the review of which is reserved



for the school gallery, and taken up on the children's return there, and pictured out as a *mental* moral exercise.

If the master did otherwise, a full development of character would not take place ; and, while he takes no notice at the moment, he nevertheless marks what he sees amiss. The master and mistress ought constantly to be in the way when the children are at play ; but if both cannot, one *must* be present. A monitor or *janitor* won't do as a substitute for the sovereign authority of the master, which all acknowledge, and whose condescension, in taking a game or swing with them, is felt as a kindness and a privilege, and who, in consequence, is enabled to guide them by a moral, rather than by a physical influence.\*

*Arithmeticon or Ball Frame.*—This instrument is made to fix on the Bible stand, in a small slit or groove in the wood, to be moved off, and hung up against the wall, at pleasure. In a nursery it might be of a smaller size on a stand. The frame is oblong, with twelve rows of wooden balls, and twelve balls in each row, painted alternately black and white, or black and red, so that they may be easily distinguished when moved horizontally along the wires on which they are strung. This instrument may assist, but should not supersede the putting of arithmetical questions in regard to natural objects, by the trainer.

Arithmetic assisted by objects, whether the ball frame or otherwise, may be commenced at a very early period, just as soon as the child can be made to understand that collecting play-things is addition, and scattering subtraction.

---

\* See "Grandmother's First Visit to the Training School." A dialogue. Sixth edition.



After the children are exercised on the ball frame, otherwise; or it is advisable to propose questions like the following:—

How many beads are three beads and one bead?

If you take one bead from four beads, how many remain?

How many apples are four apples and one apple?

If you take one apple from seven apples, how many remain?

How many are five pence and one penny? &c. &c.\*

*Bible Stand.*—This is simply a neatly turned pillar of wood, with double row of shelves slightly inclined upwards, the top forming a small desk, (see Plate), and is placed on the floor, on a stand in front of the gallery, about eight feet distant; on this lies the large Bible from which the daily lesson is taken. It also holds any other school books requisite for the master or mistress, besides the small hand bell and whistle. A small slit or groove is made in front of it, into which may be placed, when required, the ball frame, or the black board, or a map of Palestine, of our own or any other country.

*Geometrical Figures* may be taught by means of printed sheets, or the Gonigraph, a small instrument, composed of twelve flat steel rods, connected by pivots, which, at pleasure, are formed into all possible geometrical figures from a straight line or triangle to an octagon or decagon. The furniture, pillars, windows of the school, &c., ought to be used as illustrations.

The mere outlines only are taught in the initiatory department, the more complex being left till the children

---

\* It is common for children in infant *teaching* schools to repeat number up to hundreds of millions on the ball frame, who are yet perfectly ignorant of how many are two ducks and three geese.

enter the juvenile school. Serious objections are started against the use of these figures, but they arise from a want of due consideration ; for nothing is more easily comprehended by the youngest children. A knowledge of these terms enables the child to describe the shape of any object, square, oblong, round, or octagon ; also the position of two or more pieces of wood, parallel, perpendicular, or horizontal, also the proper manner of carrying the head, and angling the toes, &c., while sitting in the gallery. Direct usefulness, or innocent amusement alone, will warrant the introduction of this, or any other exercise.

*Pegs for Caps and Cloaks.*—These are placed round the class-room, or under the gallery, in double rows ; attention to regularity in this department, and giving each child his own peg or nail, prevents quarrelling or confusion, in seeking those coverings on leaving school, and besides the habit of order thus acquired, will, without doubt, be seen in future life, in the neatness of the mechanic's tool box, and the tidiness of the housewife's fireside. We do not mean that this habit alone will accomplish such important objects ; at the same time, the various plans of order pursued in training schools will (and we have innumerable proofs) greatly promote them.

*Small Whistle and Hand-Bell.*—These simple apparatuses are greatly more important than most persons are apt to imagine ; they promote the most important habit of the school, viz., *obedience*. In no other way can *instant obedience* be obtained in school so easily, as by a touch of the bell or a blast of the ivory whistle ; and in no other way, can one hundred and fifty or two hundred children, at their various sports, be called in from a play-

ground, within the short space of fifty or sixty seconds ; we would, therefore, recommend every trainer to use both, during the progress of the school exercises.

*Obedience.*—The first lesson enforced in a training school is obedience ; or, rather, every exercise, physical, intellectual, or moral, is so conducted, that *instant obedience* is essential to it, and this equally in the intellectual, as in the moral department of the system.

The true method of training to the habit of obedience, is just to make the child do the very thing which he may have omitted, forgotten, or refused to do.

In this manner, the celebrated Dean Swift cured his housemaid of the habit of uniformly leaving the parlour door open on going in or out of the room. Leaving the house one day, to witness the marriage of a friend in the country, and having as usual, left the room door open, she was allowed by the Dean to proceed on her way nearly a mile, when he sent a servant express after her, who stated that her master wished to speak with her ; she hurriedly returned, inquired the cause, “ O ! nothing particular,” replied the Dean, “ only shut the door.”

A parent or schoolmaster may adopt a very simple method of training children to obedience, and of strengthening their perceptive powers, by requiring of them a clear description of any occurrence. For example, make a child walk from his seat a short space, then order him to run—to sit down—to run again from one seat to another—to walk out of the room—to walk or run in again—to sit on his former seat, or any other to which he may be ordered. After which, require him, or some other child, or several children alternately, audibly to state in distinct language, every particular movement the child has made, and in exact succession. This may be

varied many ways. Closely allied to the principle of obedience, is giving *a direct answer to every question*. The following is a sentiment inculcated in school, which elliptically the children are left *audibly* to fill up. We should always do what we are ... *bid*. Children should do what they are ... *bid*.

*Cleanliness*.—This is a very essential part of physical training ; it forms an occasional exercise in the morning, when every child is inspected by the master or mistress.

Whatever may be the habits of the family at home, all should, and do actually appear clean at school. Strange to say, some parents give it as an excuse for not sending their children to school, that they are obliged to keep them so neat and clean !

Cleanliness, order, and obedience, are not merely important parts of the system, but distinguish it even to the most casual observer.

Some children are naturally more filthy in their habits than others ; all such tendencies, however, may be checked, and in a great measure subdued, *at the early age of two, three, or four years*, while they can seldom be so at the later ages of eight, ten, or twelve. How much less so in maturer years ! In every school cleanliness ought to be held as “next to godliness.”

*Closets*.—For arrangements, see Appendix.

*Vocal Music*.—Music is known to possess a powerful influence over the affections, and even the memory. Rhymes, moral songs, hymns, and psalms, therefore, form an important part of each day's exercises ; and, as these are generally adapted to the lesson immediately under consideration, they stamp the impression more deeply on the thoughts and feelings ; and, from what we have learned regarding those children who have long left

school, we believe the essence of such rhymes will never be forgotten.

It is a fact, that nearly every child learns to sing. No one, we believe, is entirely destitute of the natural power, and the frequent exercise of it in the initiatory department—the variety and the social and pleasurable feelings it engenders, certainly call up in almost all, a taste for music. Music tends to refine and humanize the pupils, whether in the infant or juvenile department, and we are surprised that this powerful instrument for good (*as well as for evil*) has been permitted so long to lie unused in public schools.

Singing is a necessary qualification in an initiatory schoolmaster; but if he cannot sing, then his wife, or other female assistant, must. An initiatory training school without music would be a complete failure.\*

*Prayer.*—The school is daily opened and closed with prayer, and singing a hymn. The master's prayer ought to be *short, simple, and impressive*, and he ought not to use a single expression which is beyond the comprehension of his pupils; and should the children afterwards repeat the Lord's prayer, which it is well they be trained to do, care should be taken that it be distinctly, simply, and thoroughly understood, by having it pictured out according to the training system; and also that they be made, as much as possible, to feel its importance.

Standing with eyes shut will naturally appear a more suitable posture in the gallery, and they may be trained to rise up and sit down simultaneously, nearly as if a solid mass. The usual physical exercises being gone through, and their attention secured by the motion of the

---

\* See page 90.

hand, before prayer, or at any other time, the whole may be trained to move quickly and in perfect silence, on the following principle, thus rendering the exercise as applicable to a Sabbath, as a week-day school.

GALLERY SIMULTANEOUS RISING UP AND SITTING  
DOWN.

To attain this object, the trainer commences the physical movements as follows—expressing the orders very distinctly and firmly.

No. 1. Shoulders back. (This naturally elevates the neck and head).

No. 2. Feet in (drawn inwards, with toes perpendicular to the top of the knees.)

No. 3. Heels close.

No. 4. Toes out (forming an acute angle).

No. 5. Hands on knees. (This causes the children to incline forward preparatory to, and in the best possible position for rising.)

The trainer, in the first instance, must himself show the example, by sitting on a chair at a sufficient distance from the gallery—himself making every motion he intends the children to follow, and to see that each of the five motions be attended *by every child*, also frequently repeat them day after day, until the habit of rising up and sitting down simultaneously, without confusion, or the slightest noise, be formed into a habit.

After a few weeks the trainer may then cause them to understand, that the raising or lowering of his hand is to be the signal for rising up and sitting down, as perfectly as a regiment of soldiers would fire a volley, and as free from bustle, in fact, that a mouse in the act of stealing



would not be disturbed. This gallery arrangement is not confined to the initiatory, but is carried forward and established in every department, and with children of all ages.

*Emulation, Taking Places, and Prizes.\**—It is almost unnecessary to mention that, in infant training schools, taking places, or the usual means whereby dull or selfish children are stimulated to exertion, are of little use. Under this system such stimulants are comparatively unnecessary, or if, in any case, they prove useful, this is more than counter balanced by the envy and jealousy which they engender. Give the children *plenty of fun*, lively and cheerful exercise, and *full occupation*, and without presuming to condemn all other stimulants, a smile or a frown from the master, so much beloved, because so much the children's companion and friend, will accomplish that, which many, nay almost all other means, will fail of doing.

The Bible, and secular, and other gallery lessons, are conducted in their great outlines on the principles already laid down, and according to the simple arrangements of the school lessons.

*Children's Diseases.*—The only object in introducing this subject is, to suggest the guarding against infection, by using proper precautions. Children under six or seven years of age, it is well known, are subject to diseases more peculiar to that age, such as measles and hooping-cough, and the moment the symptoms of either appear in any one, that child ought to be sent home to his parents. The symptoms of measles may easily be guessed at, or ascertained by the particular appearance of the eyes, sickness, &c., and that of the hooping-cough by the

---

\* See Chapter VIII.



hoop itself. Care ought to be taken to prevent the spread of such diseases, and when this duty is attended to by the schoolmaster, an airy school-room, and commodious play-ground, diminish, rather than propagate children's diseases. A confined school-room without play-ground, as is commonly the case for children of all ages, is sure to propagate, if not generate disease.

*Cruelty to Animals.*—It is of great importance that the children form a right notion of their duty to the inferior animals ; why we ought to protect and be tender towards some, and why we may destroy others.

*Responses.*—This exercise is gone through when the children are seated in the gallery, and is done in several ways. By two boys or two girls, or a boy and a girl questioning each other in presence and within hearing of the whole scholars, or one child standing a few feet in front of the gallery, and being questioned in succession by any child who chooses. The master himself sometimes stands in front of the gallery and permits any of the children to ask him questions. The subjects are various. The natural history of animals, or of an animal. The quality or uses of an object. A Bible story. Life of Christ, or Moses, Joseph, Daniel, Balaam, Noah, Paul, Timothy, or Samuel. Sins recorded in Scripture. Graces recorded in Scripture. It forms in the juvenile, as well as in the initiatory school, an interesting and improving exercise, and forms a revisal of what the children already know, although it is not a training lesson.

The minuteness of the questions put, must, of course, depend upon the age of the children. *Correctness* in no case, however, ought to be dispensed with ; at the same time, the words used must be the children's own—no set form of answers.

*Practical Grammar.*—The master may ask *all*, or each child in rotation, what they would wish to have, provided they went to a toy-shop? One will say *a top*; a second, *a whip*; a third, *a baby doll*; a fourth, *a gun*. Now, then, the master will say, the name *top—whip—doll—gun*, are called nouns. The name of a thing is a...*noun*; but the boy who chose the *top*, or *whip*, might say, I want a *large top* or a *long whip*; *large* shows the kind of *top*, and therefore is an adjective, and *long* is also an *adjective*. Now, both these words are adjectives, because they tell or denote the kind of *top* and ... *whip* which you ... *want*. If you had said you wanted a short whip or a small *top*, which would have been the adjectives? The children may, perhaps, not even yet be prepared to answer, and, therefore, the master will elliptically say, short is the ... *adjective*, meaning a short ... *whip*, and small is the...*adjective*, meaning a small...*top*. Thus, the older or more advanced children may be taught the articles *A* and *The*, and also the verb, such as Robert *spins* his *top*, &c., &c., every step being slowly, surely, and pleasantly taken.

*The Master.*—The infant trainer, in order to be able to mould the children's habits, and infuse correct information, must not merely be a highly moral and sensible man, but he must possess literary, religious, and scientific knowledge, greatly beyond what he requires to communicate. To communicate even the correct outlines of a subject, as is the principle of the system with all beginners, and more especially with infants, requires the utmost tact, and the most delicate management. Few persons rise so high in practical knowledge as to be able to train infants properly. The delicate portrait pencil ought to be applied, not the hard brush of the common painter.

PHYSICAL OR MANUAL EXERCISES.—See page 64.

*Bible and Secular Training Lessons.*—One each is conducted daily in the gallery, according to the order ; see Chapters VI and VII.

If the fireside and its limited, yet fond sympathies, enable the parents to train their children, as we have already said, more especially for the duties of domestic life, so the school gallery, with its extended *sympathy of numbers*, enables the master more especially to fit the child for the duties of civil and social life. The fireside training is incomplete, without school training ; each assists the other, and neither can be dispensed with in the training of *the child* as a whole, from the earliest to the latest period of his education. Teaching is not *training* the child, neither is training the head, training the child, (let the system pursued be as improved as it may). The child may know what is right, and do what is wrong. He is not under moral training unless he be acquiring the *habit* of moral *doing*, any more than he is under intellectual or physical training, unless he intellectually or physically does the thing. Moral training is moral *doing*, just as intellectual training is intellectual *doing*. The gallery is indispensable to moral training, and it greatly assists the intellectual training, arising from the *sympathy of numbers*.\* In it the children get a knowledge of morality, but it is in the play-ground where they can be seen and stimulated to practise it.

*Calculating men* by nature, and men compelled to calculate *closely* from want of means, may, and we know do, say, “such a system of school training, *especially for infants*, WILL NOT PAY.” We admit this to the full. There is no demand for moral training on the side of the

---

\* See former Chapters.

poor, and if the wealthy and enlightened classes of the community do not provide such means for its cultivation, as, by the blessing of God, will gradually create a demand, it is folly in the extreme to expect that money will be paid for that to which they attach no value. There is no alternative. Training schools, infant and juvenile, *on Christian principles*, must be provided for the whole youthful population of our towns, else they will continue to sink in moral degradation. Let every means, likely to promote and extend the moral and spiritual improvement of the advanced in life, be provided. Our hopes must chiefly rest with the young, in regard to whom the peculiar "promises" are given.

---

### KEY TO THE FIRST SPELLING-BOOK.

Although, under the training system, books are not placed in the hands of the children under six years of age, yet the lessons of the first elementary book are used in the classes of the initiatory department, being painted in large characters in sheets, and pasted on boards, as an introduction to the art of reading; thus preserving a uniformity in the mode of communicating knowledge in that department. The first spelling lessons, therefore, are used at the close of the infant department, and the commencement of the juvenile. In the former case, in sheets on boards; and in the latter, as a book, placed in the hands of every child.

Those children, of six to eight years of age, who enter the Junior School, and who have not undergone the training of the Initiatory School, in addition to the lessons from

Spelling-Books, No. I., &c., must be daily exercised in the same simple and natural mode of picturing out in words, as is pursued with infants of two to five or six years of age; in other words, the child of six to eight years of age must be commenced with precisely in the same mode as the child of two to four. No Juvenile School, however, can succeed so well with children who have not been previously trained in infancy, and whose physical, intellectual, and moral powers have lain waste till that period.

It is desirable, even in a First Book, composed as it ought to be of monosyllables, that every sentence should convey a distinct meaning, which may be easily pictured out and illustrated; a little sacrifice is made, however, for the sake of sound. This book is constructed upon the principle, that the children should not be puzzled with new sounds in which they have not been previously exercised. We would not stop to analyze every word or sentiment in a First Book; at the same time we would employ none, which, when analyzed, would leave any improper impression on the young mind.

In describing the form of the letters, as well as in analyzing words and sentences, take to your assistance objects and pictures; avail yourselves of these in every stage of the child's progress, and when these fail, as fail they must, seeing that pictures can only present one state or condition, then picture out in words the idea which you wish to convey.

Do not forget to articulate and enunciate every syllable slowly, clearly, and fully, and suit your action and modulation of voice to the words, while drawing out and training the minds of the children. Never forget that physical exercises must be given at short intervals, during the pro-

gress of the shortest lesson ; *more particularly* with the younger children ; if not, *the steam* will accumulate and break out into mischief. The natural buoyancy of youthful health and energy ought to be directed, not merely restrained.

## LESSON I.

The powers of the letters ought to be given before their names. This is now becoming a general practice under all improved systems of education. It is more rational to the mind of a child that certain figures, presented to his eye on a book or board, should have simple sounds, and that he should be afterwards told that each of these sounds, represented by the particular figure, has a name, than to give the name first, without the power or sound, and then compel him to spell a word, and utter sounds, he had not been trained to express. For example, the word WHAT will be spelt by the child, who has *learned* the powers of the letters, almost instinctively, and the motion of the mouth at each letter leads him to pronounce the word properly; but the names of the letters double uu, aitch, ay, tee, afford no key whatever to the sound of the word *what*.

The arrangement of the letters in Lesson I. is intended for reference. The children are supposed to have acquired a knowledge of the geometrical figures prefixed to this lesson. In giving Lesson II. on the plan next to be explained, the attention of the child will be called to the forms of the letters, as composed of one or more of these geometrical figures, and the power associated with the form, by presenting them simultaneously to the mind.

## LESSON II.

The trainer ought to sound a few letters to the young scholar on entering school, showing the child that the teeth, lips, palate, gums, &c., are necessary to the formation of sound: b, p, show



a different pressure of the lips; *s* clearly shows the teeth—and this letter is called a dental. The man who pulls teeth, and sets teeth, is called ... *a dentist*; dental, then, is something belonging to ... *teeth*.

In commencing Lesson II. the trainer may proceed in this way: Children, look at me; sit upright, straight *up*; draw in your feet; heels ... *close*; toes ... *out*; hands on ... *knees*.

Observe what I print on the board (making the letter *b*). Then putting his mouth into the form for pronouncing it, he gives the power of the letter. The children must imitate the sound twice or thrice, and then print it on their slates; or if infants, place the letter, pasted on wood, in a frame opposite the class. The trainer will then print the vowels successively, and give their most common power. He may then require the child to imitate him in placing each vowel alternately before and after *b*. In this way he will treat in succession each letter in Lesson II.

The same plan is pursued with the others, the process becoming always more easy and more rapid.

### LESSON III.

<i>s</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>s—o</i>	<i>so</i>
<i>l</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>l—o</i>	<i>lo</i>
<i>n</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>n—o</i>	<i>no</i>
<i>h</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>h—o</i>	<i>ho</i>
<i>g</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>g—o</i>	<i>go</i>

Each letter that occurs for the first time must be printed on the black board, and pronounced simultaneously, and, occasionally, individually, by the children, as well as printed on their slates.

The trainer calls upon the children to observe the form of his mouth, while he sounds *s o* slowly and separately, which they repeat twice or thrice; then *s—o* a little more rapidly, and then *so* as before. This last being a word having a meaning, and which may be pictured out by one or more familiar illustrations.



The most simple and ordinary sound of the vowels alone is given at first and firmly rooted in their memory, as illustrated in the succeeding lessons.

It materially assists the scholar that he is required to picture out, by description and visible action, some of the expressions that occur in the ordinary reading lessons, such as, *we go*. What is meant by, *we go*? What motion do you make? You do not ... *sit* or ... *stand* when you ... *go*. The child shows how he goes by walking, probably; but the trainer may ask, Do you always walk when you go? The answer will most likely be, *Yes*. The trainer, however, will not tell the child his error, but *bring it out* that he is wrong; and for this purpose may put one or two questions. Were I to say, *I go* to Paris immediately, would I walk the whole way? Could I say, *I go*, when, perhaps, I might ride in a coach, or on horseback, part of the way, and sail the rest in a ship? You thus train them to understand that to *go* is not simply to walk. The child sits too passively when he does not fill up an occasional ellipsis, and his mind is too much on the defensive by the mere question and answer system. The whole process is better conducted on the gallery principle,—with a dozen or twenty children than with one or two.

This simple and progressive mode may be adopted with beginners, whether of three, five, or seven years of age; the great principle being ever kept in view, that the understanding of the meaning should precede the committal of words to the verbal memory. Unless this is done, the child has the feeling of one walking in the dark, and the labour of committing to memory is rendered extremely irksome. The very name of the book in which the child is taught may remain a mystery. We were lately informed by a learned gentleman, that he had left the parochial school three or four years before he knew, and was astonished when he discovered, that the name of the spelling-book, which he had been accustomed to call *Readie-me-deezy*, was actually *Reading made Easy*!

In the Initiatory department we do not proceed much further than the first Spelling-Book, or stories composed of monosyllables, printed on boards.

## \*CHAP. XIV.

### POINTS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE TRAINING SYSTEM.

#### JUVENILE DEPARTMENT.

THE Initiatory Department is for children of two or three to six years of age, and the Juvenile for those of six to fourteen. This latter is again divided into Junior and Senior divisions ; the former for children of six to eight or nine years of age, and the latter for those of nine years and upwards. Girls are not admitted into the School of Industry, as regular pupils, until about ten years of age, as we shall notice in its proper place. This is the arrangement in the Normal Training Seminary, as one step in the progress of classification, although in parochial and private establishments, the Juvenile Training Schools hitherto have embraced children of from six to fourteen years of age.

Many persons superintend a school of 150 children of all ages, from five to fifteen years, sometimes with only one untrained assistant, and sometimes even alone. All such schools, even with the assistance of monitors, must be more imperfect than where there is a proper classification, and masters to each department, who can *train*, rather than monitors, who can only *teach facts*.

The subdivision we propose in the Juvenile School, although not perfect, is perhaps the nearest that can be followed out in the present starved state of education, ignorance of the public mind as to what real education is, the limited attendance of children generally, and the

prejudice of parents in favour of mere reading, or the sound of words without the understanding of them.

A man and his wife can as easily train 140 to 160 children in the Infant Department, as one master and an assistant (both trained) can train 80 or 100 in the Juvenile ;—for this reason, that, in the Infant Department the exercises are nearly all simultaneous ; whereas in the Juvenile there are not merely the superintendence in the playground of children very dissimilar in age, the Bible and secular gallery lessons, to children varying in age and attainments, at the least six or seven years, but there are all those elementary branches of writing, arithmetic, grammar, geography, science, &c., which require classification ; and although the same training principles are followed out with all the classes, yet if the pupils are to advance progressively, there must be many subdivisions in a Juvenile School of 80 or 100 scholars.

Each department, then, ought not to have more than 80 or 100 children present at any one time, with first and second masters, and both trained.

All that we have noticed under the head INITIATORY DEPARTMENT, as to the mode of training in the playground and the gallery, equally applies to the Juvenile Department. They are parts of the same system, varying in one particular, that from the day the child is placed in the Juvenile Department, a spelling or reading book is put in his hands (which is carefully excluded from the infants, for reasons already assigned), he continuing to breathe the same moral atmosphere, in-doors and out of doors, throughout the whole course of his education, and not, as he must in general do at present, if he has not passed through the Initiatory Department, entering a Juvenile Training School with mind unculti-

vated, and rude habits, like a garden overgrown with weeds, which must be rooted out or subdued, ere a particle of good seed can enter the ground. On the other hand, should some benevolent lady have set up an Infant Training School, where the weeds of nature have been carefully rooted out as they sprung up ; and liberty, and joy, and healthful exercise have been granted to the child in the infancy of its days—no Juvenile Training School being in the neighbourhood of the beloved Infant Seminary, they must go to a teaching school without the fresh air of the play-ground, or the liberty and ennobling exercises of the gallery. Plod over his book he must ; and kind as the teacher may be to all, the child feels the school to be a prison, and an unpleasant restraint. And the teacher of the school is apt to affirm (we believe with great truth), that “ *the children from the Infant Training School are the most restless of all his pupils.*” This is precisely what might be expected, until their bodily and mental energies become inured to the restraints under which they have been placed.

The Juvenile Department is insufficient without the previous training of the Infant, and the Juvenile scholar cannot continue his training unless both the departments be conducted on the same system.

Before particularising the requisite apparatus, we remark, that a different course must be followed with those children who have attended the Initiatory department from those who have not. In the one case it is only adding a succession of links to the chain of good habits already begun ; whereas, in the other case, a new course must be entered on, and bad habits already formed, which stand as a barrier to the formation of good ones, must be overcome. The training in a Juvenile School, without the

previous cultivation, will thus exhibit less efficiency for a considerable period of time. Under a prudent and vigorous master, however, much will be overcome, more especially if the school consists of one half or even a fourth of trained infant school children. The power of imitation and social sympathy, added to the master's exertions, will, to a great extent, overcome these difficulties.

**SCHOOL-ROOM.**—The school-room ought to be the same in size as the one for Infants. Particulars will be found in the plans in the Appendix. The gallery differs only in the height and breadth of the steps. A few of the pictures in Natural History are the same, although many are added. The circular swings and other out-door arrangements are the same.

The maps, and pictures of objects, are hung round the walls in double rows; above these are placed a few Scripture texts, in large characters, such as,—“Fear God”—“Love one another”—“Honour thy Father and Mother”—“Lying lips are an abomination,” &c.

**CLASS-ROOM.**—This room, which should open from the school-room, is used by the master for examining each class separately. Each class moves from the class-room into the play-ground without returning into the school, which would disturb the other classes. The play-ground, therefore, must be entered direct from the class-room, as well as from the school-room.

The class-room, or the space under the gallery, may also be used for hanging hats and cloaks, as in the Initiatory Department. The habit of order is promoted by this and similar arrangements. With some individuals order is natural, but with most persons it needs to be acquired. What a sad drilling do some

apprentices require from not having been trained to habits of order in early life ; and to the same cause may be traced the untidy slovenly dress, and oftentimes confused household, of untrained females.

GALLERY.—See Chapter III., and Appendix.

SLATES are used in the gallery from the time a child enters the Juvenile School ; he may be taught to form lines, the letters of the alphabet, and outlines of objects ; in the more advanced classes, the whole, or any part of the class, when seated, may write down on their slates the root, construction, or meaning of any word, or the answer to some questions verbally given by the master, or chalked on the demonstration board, or the older classes may be called upon to express their ideas on the slate, in single sentences.

The slate is an excellent preparative for the more correct art of writing upon paper. It may be suspended by a piece of tape at the left side ; and for durability as well as safety to the children, those framed with a narrow rounded wooden edge are to be preferred.

DEMONSTRATION OR BLACK BOARD.—The variety of uses to which this instrument may be put, whether in reference to objects or geometrical lines, words, sentences, or calculations, are quite familiar to every intelligent master of a school : and we notice it not merely as being part of the requisite apparatus, but as being peculiarly valuable to a large school when the children are seated in the gallery with slates in their hands, enabling the whole or one-half of the number to receive a lesson at one time.

OBJECTS AND PICTURES OF OBJECTS.—It is understood, if the children have attended the Initiatory department, that they will have been made acquainted with the outlines of the natural history of animals, and other



objects, assisted by pictures, and, therefore, their attention may now be more particularly directed to the classification, &c. of the various species. The object or picture, however, ought to be presented to the eye as frequently as possible in conducting a lesson. (See page 79.)

WHISTLE AND SMALL HAND-BELL (OR SOMETHING ANALOGOUS).—These, like the pegs, &c., in the class-room, lead to order, and—as already stated under the head Initiatory Department—although apparently insignificant parts of the apparatus, yet they are powerful in their results, and are the more necessary in the Juvenile School from the exuberance of the animal spirits of rude, untrained youths, from time to time received into the school, and not yet softened by the genial moral atmosphere into which they have just entered.

BIBLE TRAINING LESSON.—Every morning preceded by hymn and prayer ; see chapter VI.

SECULAR GALLERY LESSON OR ELEMENTS OF SCIENCE ; see chapter VII.

MODE OF TRAINING THE CHILDREN TO RISE UP AND SIT DOWN SIMULTANEOUSLY IN THE GALLERY ; see Initiatory Department, page 202.

MUSIC.\*—The singing of rhymes, psalms, and hymns, is introduced, the latter at opening and closing the school, and the former at movements of the different classes. Vocal music, till lately, has been almost entirely neglected in week-day elementary schools. Yet the practice is of great importance, in several points of view, alternately enlivening and solemnizing the mind, awakening kindly affections, and early habituating youth to this important part of the worship of God. Accompanying every move-

---

\* See page 90.

ment in school, and into the play-ground, with singing some moral song to a cheerful air, adds much to the happiness of the children, as well as to their habits of order and obedience.

PHYSICAL EXERCISES\* in-doors and in the play-ground, are in use in this as in the initiatory department; varying, however child-like, although less childish as the children advance in years.

PRIZES, PLACES, AND PUNISHMENTS; see chapter VIII.

OBEDIENCE.—Under this head we remark, that the habit of *instant* obedience, acquired under previous training, will easily be continued in the juvenile school. The exercise of this principle lies at the foundation of all right training, and closely allied to it is that of giving a *direct answer* to every question.

THE PLAY-GROUND.†—This is the *uncovered school-room*, and is an indispensable part of a juvenile training school; for, independently of its salutary influence upon the children's health, bodily and mentally, it is here where their true character is best developed, and, from the exhibitions in which their moral habits can be best formed. For size, shape, &c., see Appendix. The whole principle in the juvenile play-ground, as regards superintendence, &c., is the same as in the initiatory, and the more closely it is followed, the more thorough will be its efficiency; the chief difference lies in the amount of time to be spent in the play-ground, it being evident that, in it, infants ought to spend a larger proportion of the day than juveniles. The scholars are allowed nearly half an hour in the play-ground in the morning, before the usual time of commencing the in-door exercises; again

---

\* See page 64.

† See Chapter III.

nearly one hour at mid-day,\* and also during each hour they are allowed ten minutes to play ; say five minutes before, and the same after each hour. This hourly relief is found to be no loss of time, as it invigorates, animates, and *permits the steam*, which may have accumulated, *to escape*, not in furious mischief, but in innocent and joyous amusement.

FLOWER BORDERS.—These ought to be at least three or four feet broad, all round, or on three sides of the playground.

CIRCULAR SWINGS.—These are two in number, one for each sex, who never tire of this exercise.†

WATER CLOSETS, ETC.—The arrangement of these is as in the initiatory department, and the training is particularly valuable at this early period of life.

CLEANLINESS OUT OF AND IN-DOORS.—The strictest attention ought to be paid to cleanliness in the juvenile as well as in the initiatory department ; and a lesson should be drawn from the case of any grossly in fault. Sympathy and example operate powerfully in establishing this habit.

SCHOOL BOOKS—See page 133.

Extracts from poetic works are suitable to advanced scholars ; and withal they are better understood and appreciated, when a solid foundation of useful knowledge has been laid, and the scholars have been accustomed to associate distinct ideas with the words they employ.

All the subjects of a school-book ought to be interesting, and of a decidedly useful character. Few persons are suffi-

---

\* The master, of course, must also take some refreshment, for a very few minutes. If he lives on the premises and can see the children at play, so far well ; but if at a distance, however short, then such refreshment ought to be taken in the class-room, from the window of which he has the play-ground in view.

† See Initiatory Department, page 190.

ciently alive to the evils that flow from bringing the young mind into acquaintance with bacchanalian songs and extracts from foolish plays, in school-reading. Children, in actual fact, get more evil from the reading of these, than good from reading the Scriptures; and, as under the training system, every word, and the meaning of every expression, is progressively and incidentally pictured out in the ordinary course of reading and spelling, it is of the utmost importance that every sentiment brought under their consideration be correct, and of a moral tendency.

Books are eagerly sought after by strangers, with questions and answers set in regular form and order. No given number of books, however, even with answers, will make "a scholar," unless the master cause the children to analyze them.

ORTHOGRAPHY.—In the Juvenile department, instead of selecting an alphabetic vocabulary of difficult words, the ordinary reading of a collection is preferred, the *connecting* narrative being found to secure a more permanent remembrance, and, at the same time, a sufficient variety of words. Every word is spelt, which is more interesting to the pupil than when the great ones only are selected. For example: This man—cannot walk—a single mile; and so on through the whole paragraph, giving each child two or more words to spell, as may be.

CATECHISMS.—In almost all schools in Scotland, parochial and private, the Westminster Assembly's Shorter Catechism is taught. It is also introduced in the junior and senior departments of the Normal Seminary, and the exercise is conducted by the master on the uniform principle of this system, *i. e.*, picturing out each answer *before* the exact words are committed to memory by the

children. Of course, in different parts of the country, each Christian communion will adopt its own particular catechism.

**SCHOOL LIBRARY.**—Every school ought to have a small library, consisting of books suited to the various ages and circumstances of the pupils.

**MUSEUM.**—A museum is a very useful appendage to a juvenile school ; it brings the young mind into familiar acquaintance with real objects, which can be exhibited but imperfectly in a coloured picture. Of course, a very limited variety only can be looked for in an ordinary parochial or private school. Let the few, therefore, that are selected, be of the most useful kind, such as may cultivate a taste for natural history, and can aid in illustrating Scriptural and other lessons. Many things suited for a school museum may be had at a trifling expense. The children themselves, if requested, will bring many things, such as minerals, stuffed birds, &c., to which may be added implements of handicraft, models of ships, steam-engines, and steam machinery.

#### EVENING CLASSES.

There are no evening classes in the model schools of the Normal Training Seminary. We have already stated our objections to them in respect of factory children ; and these are not less forcible in regard to ordinary schools. First, the master who teaches all day, must be over-fatigued by having an evening class ; and either his health, or the education of the children, must suffer.

If the master, during the day, adds *training* to teaching, then the necessary amount of speaking and superintendence for so many hours, viz., from 9 o'clock A.M. till 4

o'clock P.M., renders it impracticable for almost any man to conduct an evening class. The master ought to have the evening to recruit his strength, and to prepare the substance of his daily lessons ; also to examine written essays, &c.

We object to evening classes because there cannot be moral training ; and as the master has his scholars at too many stages of learning to admit of a proper classification, they cannot reach the point of intellectual training.

Evening classes, moreover, subject grown boys and girls to peculiar temptations, which ought to be avoided, and the children are absolutely half-asleep, and incapable of intellectual exertion, even though the teachers may be in the highest degree energetic. Upon the whole, evening classes are bad, unnatural, unreasonable, and inefficient.

It is as absurd to rest upon such a broken reed for week-days, as it is to rest upon Sunday schools, or one day in seven, for the education of the people. This nibbling, mistaken, uneconomical system of educating the poor and working classes, may occupy our attention, and waste our energies, but in the meantime the youth are growing up in ignorance and immorality ; and should a liberal grant not be made immediately by Government, let the kingdom only be visited by depression of trade and bad harvests for two or three years in succession, and then, from facts already disclosed in public documents, and in our own experience (see Chapters I. and II. of this publication), we fear there will be exhibited a physical fury and insubordination on the part of the working classes, which will make the stoutest heart to tremble.

SCHOOL FEES.—These, of course, vary in different parts of the country. Our aim is to make them as low as in



the parochial and ordinary private schools. The training system, however, being new and not understood, we, in the first instance, adopted the following plan. The first quarter, *free*—the second, 1d. per week, which caused no diminution in numbers—the third or fourth quarter, 2d. per week. The numbers rather increased, but the attendance was irregular, and we found that when a boy or girl happened to be unwell on a Monday, or perhaps the following day, the mother said, Oh, John, or Mary, it is now not worth while to pay 2d. for you this week, *just wait till next Monday*. To cure this evil, 2d. per quarter was charged, payable in advance. By this time the influence of the system physically, morally, and intellectually, was felt by many of the parents, and the numbers actually increased. The attendance was more regular; on the broad principle, that what is paid for, is sure to be possessed. *Quarterly* fees, payable in advance, therefore, we recommend to the master of every training school.

The fees of the model school of this institution, during the last eight or ten years, have been as follows (and at which it is felt a great favour to gain admittance; so much so, that although 700 children are now in attendance, some of whom travel to the schools from the most distant parts of the city and suburbs, double the number could easily be obtained):—Initiatory department, 2s. per quarter; Junior, Senior, and Female Industrial Schools, 3s. per quarter. To the last three, or at least, for children above seven years of age, 1s. additional is charged for pens, ink, the use of slates, and fire.

## CHAP. XV.

### FEMALE SCHOOL OF INDUSTRY.

WE have no Model School for training boys to manual and other labour. These are very valuable in Poor-law Unions and other institutions in which boys are boarded, with a view to train them up to industrious habits ; and as they continue there for several years together, a number can be had to work at any particular branch ; but the establishment of such schools is out of the question in ordinary parochial or private seminaries. When boys live at home, parents can have them better apprenticed to trades, in the regular and ordinary arrangements of the social economy. It is the same in respect of schools for rearing female servants. What interest can a girl have in her work to sweep a floor which has been swept twice before ? or rub up a stove or grate which, just before, has been brightened up half-a-dozen times ? Schools for rearing female servants, therefore, except in large public institutions, have not succeeded. Like as in other branches, they are best trained when they have full work, and in circumstances where they perceive a real value and use in what they are doing.

No such objections can be stated, or difficulties presented, in the case of Schools of Industry, in which sewing, darning, patching, and knitting are taught. They are valuable to every housewife ; and much of the comfort and economy of a family depend on the neatness and

expedition by which articles of dress may be kept tidy, and whether time may, or may not, be afforded to make every thing new. It is well that the practical influence of the saying be kept up,—“A stitch in time saves nine.”

In our Model Industrial School, not only is plain work taught, which is highly valuable to all, but fancy work; and many girls, on leaving school, have been enabled, in consequence, to maintain themselves by plain and fancy work. It is well, also, that the taste be cultivated a little even as domestic servants.

In addition to the industrial work now mentioned, the girls are continued in a few of the elementary branches in which they may have been imperfectly trained before entering this department,—such as writing, arithmetic, outlines of science, geography, and arithmetic. More particularly, they have a Bible-training gallery lesson every morning, as in the other schools; and their conduct is superintended by the mistress and her assistant in their own play-ground, and reviewed, when necessary, on their return to the school gallery.

The girls are not admitted under from nine to ten years of age, in order that their moral and intellectual training, with the boys, in the Juvenile department, may not be broken up before that age.

#### INTRODUCTION OF THE TRAINING SYSTEM AMONG THE WEALTHY CLASSES.

Two extremes ought to be avoided in providing education or training for the people; the one confining the attention exclusively to the middle, and the other to

the poor and working classes. As the latter cannot afford to pay for the best masters without a partial endowment, come from what quarter it may, so as to bring the fees within their reach, a benevolent society would, of course, commence with this class. But if any improvement in the mode of communication has been discovered, which, after all, is the power of any system of education, or any additions can be presented, they ought not to be confined to any one class of society, but extended to all. During the last eighteen years, a model for the poor and working classes has been established, and teachers have been trained to practise it ; and, six years ago, a school was opened for the wealthier classes upon the same training system, having galleries, play-grounds, &c.

There are difficulties peculiar to the training of each class or rank in society. *Three* of these may be noticed. *First*, Children in work-houses and hospitals ; *Secondly*, Children of the working classes, collected from all parts of a city or parish ; and, *Thirdly*, The more wealthy of the community. The first, although more sunk in their general habits, are yet capable of being raised higher by the power of training, or at least the effects are more visible in their case, from the simple fact of their being kept under its influence for a number of years in succession. The shiftings and changings, and limited period of attendance of the second class, diminish the effects of their training to a certain extent ; and the limited number of the third or wealthy class, at any one stage of progress, and the variety of branches expected to be taught, still farther diminish the effects of the system in regard to them, *at least in the first instance*. Each of these classes of society has its more open or more *hidden* moral delinquencies to check and subdue, and each requires

the same Christian principle as the basis of its moral training.

The wealthy classes of society can afford a longer period of time to be trained intellectually and morally. Their station in society renders them more influential, and their thorough school training, therefore, an object of high importance.

The system pursued in this private Training Seminary is the same with that of the public one, with a little more attention to fitting up, in accordance with the ordinary habits of the children. The branches are more varied, and the fees of course higher, than in our public schools. The branches are conducted on the principles of the Training System, and the masters have been trained in the Normal Seminary, as every one of the masters has been in every department.

The course of the Private Seminary is as follows :—

English reading, spelling, grammar, etymology, mental composition, written composition, elocution, geography illustrated by history, ancient and modern history, elements of science, writing, mental arithmetic, arithmetic on slates, sketching, Latin, French, practical mathematics ; vocal music, practical and theoretical ; first stage of gymnastics, &c. ; Bible training, and moral training, each day throughout the whole course.

This class continued for about three to four years, increasing in numbers and celebrity, until Government having proposed a grant to the Normal Seminary in a department of which buildings the Private Seminary was conducted, and the grant being exclusively for the children of the poor and working classes, we felt it a duty to close this department, and fill it with the children of the poor.

At the time of its being given up, there were ninety boys and girls, with a first and two assistant (trained) masters. The fees charged were £2 2s. per quarter for about two-thirds, and £1 1s. for one-third of the number.



## CHAP. XVI.

### POINTS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE TRAINING SYSTEM.

#### WEEKLY COURSE FOR TRAINING SCHOOLS.

WE subjoin a course of an Initiatory, a Junior, and a Senior School, as one mode of arranging the lessons, but which must be modified according to the circumstances of there being one school for children of all ages, or two schools, or three schools (as we recommend), with a Girls' School of Industry, in the particular parish, or district, or village, in which the school establishment is placed.

The four schools, or departments, of the Normal Training Seminary, are a model of what we consider every school establishment ought to be: not that it is perfect, for we would still farther subdivide, or classify, the children under separate masters had we funds at command. However, the more nearly the children of a school are of one age the more perfectly may any system be conducted, and more particularly the training system. We have, at least, approached one step towards a proper classification, by having two departments for children of from six to thirteen or fifteen years of age, instead of one, which is the almost universal practice. A man who is required to teach every elementary branch, may hear lessons repeated, but it is beyond his power to train.

In most parishes or districts, if an additional school be established, it is generally what is called an Infant School, or a Sewing School for girls. The latter is highly useful

under almost any circumstances ; but the establishment of an Infant School, unless it be *initiatary* to the Juvenile, and both be on one system, is not productive of the good intended. The principles of our system enable the child, as we have formerly stated, to be trained from the age of two or three years to fourteen or fifteen, and also in the most advanced branches, upon precisely the same natural system ; whereas, when the child is removed from the Infant (should it be a training one) into an ordinary English school, he feels no liberty to expand those mental or bodily energies that may have been under previous cultivation. In fact, his education and training are broken or disjointed.

We, therefore, present these three tables of a weekly course, that they may be followed according to circumstances, and the number of branches that may be taught ; every lesson, however, being conducted on the principles of training. See Chapters III., IV., &c.

## DAILY COURSE FOR AN INITIATORY TRAINING SCHOOL.

From 9 till 9.30.	From 9.30 till 10.30.	From 10.30 till 11.	From 11 till 11.30.	From 11.30 till 12.	From 12 till 12.30.	From 12.30 till 1.30.
Superintendent children assembling in school-room or training- ground. Physical exercises.	Assemble in school. Children in gallery. Inspect as to cleanliness. Praise & prayer. Bible training lesson.	Inquire after absentees.	Play-ground. Master or mis- tress present.	Assemble in school. Children partly in class- room, & partly at lesson-posts, under master and assistant. Training on powers of let- ters, & reading from lesson- boards.	Children assemble in gallery. Secular training lesson by the master. Physical exer- cises during lesson.	Dismiss. Children who remain all day have their rolls and milk. Afterwards in play-ground under the superintendence of the master or assistant.
From 1.30 till 2.	From 2 till 2.30.	From 2.30 till 3.	From 3 till 3.30.	From 3.30 till 4.	At 4.	
Children assemble in school-room. A portion of the children in class- room under assist- ant, and a portion in large gallery with master. Secular training lesson.	Children in class- room and at lesson-posts. Powers of letters, and reading from lesson-boards, under master, and assistant, and monitors.	Play-ground. Observe what dispositions the children manifest, and train them accordingly on their return to gallery.	All the children at lesson-posts under monitors. Lessons on Natural His- tory, Trades, Objects, &c.	Moral training on Gallery. the dispositions which the children may have mani- fested during the day while at lessons, and on the Play-ground.	Dismiss after praise and prayer.	

## ROUTINE FOR A JUNIOR TRAINING SCHOOL.

	9	9. 30	10. 20	11.15	11. 30	12.30	1. 30	2	3	3. 15	4.15
Monday	At play	Praise, Prayer, Bible Training Lesson, Old Testament History.	Reading with Meaning, Derivation, Spelling.	At play	Writing, Senr. Class, on Copy-books, At Junr. on Slates, with Assistant.	Do.	Secular Lesson in the Gallery.	Senr. Class, Arithmetic on Slates or Mentally, Junr. Mentally, with Assistant.	At play	Senr. Reading, with Meaning, 30 min. Grammar 30 min., Junr. Reading and Spelling.	Dismiss.
Tuesday	Do.	Do. Do. Emblems.	Manual, 15 minutes, then do. Master, with Junr. Class.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Senr., Catechism, with Meaning. Junr. Reading in Bible.	Do.	Do.	Geography.	Do.
Wednesday	Do.	Do. Do. New Testament Biography.	Senr. with Master Do. Junr. with Assistant.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Secular or Scientific Lesson in Gallery.	Do.	Do.	As Monday.	Do.
Thursday	Do.	Praise, Prayer, Read a Chapter, Senr., Drawing; Junr., Writing.	Do. Do. in small Classes with Monitors.	Do.	Arithmetic, Slate and Mental with Monitors.	Do.	Geography.	Reading and Analysis.	Do.	Music.	Do.
Friday	Do.	As Monday, Miracles or Prophecy.	As Wednesday.	Do.	As Monday.	Do.	Secular Lesson in Gallery.	As Monday.	Do.	As Monday, Master with Junr. Class.	Do.
Saturday	Do.	Do. Do. Sacred Geography.	Music.	Dismiss.	N.B.—The Senr. Class to be always taken by the first Master; the Junr. by the Assistant Master, unless the contrary is specified.						

\*\* Physical exercises during lessons.

## ROUTINE FOR AN ADVANCED TRAINING SCHOOL.

DAYS.	From 9 to 9.30.	From 9.30 to 10.30.	From 10.30 to 11.15.	From 11.15 to 11.30.	From 11.30 to 12.30.	From 12.30 to 1.30.	From 1.30 to 2.	From 2 to 3.	From 3 to 3.15.	From 3.15 to 4.10.	From 4.10 to 4.30.	4.30.
Monday	Children and masters in playground.	Praise, prayer, and Bible history in gallery.	List called, and dictation on slates.	Play.	Writing.	Pieces &	Secular lesson.	Arithmetic and geometry.*	Play.	English grammar.	Vocal music.	Sing dismission hymn.
Tuesday	Do.	Praise, prayer, and Bible training lesson in gallery.	Manual reading and analysis.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Shorter Catechism.	Mental and slate arithmetic.	Do.	Geography.	Grammar.	Do.
Wednesday	Do.	Do.	Etymology, reading, and analysis.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Secular lesson.	Arithmetic	Do.	History, reading.	Vocal music.	Do.
Thursday	Do.	Praise, prayer, and Bible reading in gallery.	Manual reading and analysis.	Do.	Linear drawing.	Do.	Secular scientific lesson.	Mental and slate arithmetic.	Do.	Geography.	Grammar.	Do.
Friday	Do.	Praise, prayer, and Bible training lesson in gallery.	Etymology, reading, and analysis.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Shorter Catechism.	Arithmetic and geometry.*	Do.	Linear drawing.	Vocal music.	Do.
Saturday	Do.	Praise, prayer, and Sacred Geography.	English grammar in classes.	Dismission hymn.				* With the elder class.				

\*\* Physical exercises during lessons.

## CHAP. XVII.

### PRACTICAL ILLUSTRATIONS OF BIBLE TRAINING LESSONS.

#### THE MODE.

So far as the system can be exhibited in this place, we practically proceed in the following manner :—

The whole scholars are sitting before you in parallel lines, each row rising above the other in the form of a gallery. In a school of 40, 60, or 80 children, of course, it must be a regularly built gallery.\*

#### PSALM OR HYMN.

Select such as are best suited to children, and which you wish them to retain permanently in their memory. Supposing the hymn contains four, five, or six verses, say five, and you commence it on Monday. Analyze one verse, and no more, then sing it. On Tuesday, analyze the second verse, uniting the ideas contained in the first verse with the second, and then sing both. Wednesday, analyze the third, and sing it with the other two verses, or alone. Thursday, analyze another verse, singing the third and fourth verses together. Friday, the same course, adding to the verse for that day the one of the previous day, or on Saturday, or on any day succeeding, the one which finishes the hymn, give a rapid analysis of the leading sentiments of the whole, and sing them all. Thus, if properly analyzed and pictured out by familiar

---

\* See Plate, Appendix.



illustrations, the meaning will be understood, the exact words will have been committed to memory, and if the same tune has been sung on each of the days, the tune also will be remembered. It might be well also to cause the whole class to repeat the hymn, clause by clause, the trainer repeating each in the first instance, as an example, 1st, simultaneously; 2nd, row by row; 3d, three or four of the boys and girls individually. The children by turns might also, as a variety, be called upon to repeat each a line or a word in succession. We have trained a class of thirty or forty to repeat in this latter way occasionally, so nearly in the same tone of voice, and with such expedition, as almost to appear one voice a few yards distant. This mode, as an occasional exercise, annihilates the frequent drawling tone of simultaneous repetition, when the natural principles of elocution are not attended to.\* It also awakens and secures the attention, and actually forms a physical exercise; for example, when the children cannot have their usual sports in the play-ground, and are dull during a wet day. This may be resorted to in other lessons, as well as in repeating a hymn.

By this arrangement, a new hymn will have been understood, committed to memory, and sung, on the average, each week of the year.

When a hymn is committed to memory in the first instance, the words prove a barrier to the understanding, but the previous understanding greatly assists the verbal committal; we speak here of the great average of children, not of those whose whole power of mind consists in

---

\* See Chapter IX.

the memory of facts.\* We believe many of our readers will remember how much the mere sound of words weakened the meaning.

The hymn is followed by a short prayer, which ought to be *simple*, and at the same time, audibly, *slowly*, and impressively repeated. The lesson of the psalm or hymn ought to be embodied in the prayer, and one or more points of the Bible lesson formerly given, or about to be given. The practice of embodying the Bible lesson in prayer, besides awakening the attention, secures variety, and fixes the subject on the memory.

The necessity and importance of taking only one verse each day, for analysis, will appear, when we bring to our recollection how many verses we can repeat, which we did not understand at the time they were committed ; and the very words (we mean the sound of the words) formed a stumblingblock to the understanding.

A friend of ours was taught to repeat the twenty-third Psalm by rote. The fourth line had been committed thus, "The *quayt-wait* waters by," the sound *wait* instead of *iet* filling up the requisite number of syllables, and years elapsed before he understood that "*quayt-wait*" meant *quiet*, or could get rid of the sound. We might state twenty ludicrous mistakes ; such as, "Whose son was Moses ?" One boy answered, and none of the others could correct him, "*The son of his daughter, sir.*" As

---

\* Like the blind man at Stirling, of weak intellect, with whom we have conversed, and who could repeat every word of Scripture, from Genesis to Revelation, without a mistake ; and more than this, we were astonished to find on trial, he could give, after the pause of a single second or two, the middle clause, or any clause of any verse, even in the least known passages of the Old or New Testament. This man appeared neither to understand nor appreciate the meaning ; and yet he had all the words in his memory. He, of course, had had the Scriptures read to him.

a question by itself, it was not perhaps very easily answered, but as the sound of the answer, *the son of his daughter*, strongly resembled the one wanted, viz., *the son of Pharaoh's daughter*, it was of course given.

A lady of our acquaintance, when residing in Jamaica, taught a negro Sabbath-school for religious instruction, and she states, that her uniform experience was, that the children who had been taught in schools where they had committed the words of Scripture to memory, without explanation, were more dull of apprehension than those who had not been taught at all.

Avoid putting any fixed set of questions to the children. Avoid repeating verses or passages not previously pictured out. Avoid putting questions above the comprehension of your scholars, or in terms not already pictured out. We shall give one illustration on each of these three points.

No. 1. Imperfect as mere verbal answering is, when every child knows all the answers in the lessons, and can repeat them, it is still more imperfect when the child only commits his own particular one to memory, which formerly was, and still is, too common in school. Most ludicrous scenes have taken place occasionally during public examinations, when a child happened to absent himself, and thus, by withdrawing a link of the chain, broke its continuity. An alert examiner, however, in most cases, can heal the breach, by a rapid movement to the next question in the order. A case lately occurred which illustrates the *rotation* system. The public examiner, among other written questions which he was to ask, put this one, "Who made the world?" The child answered, "*Noah, sir.*" The examiner said, "I beg your pardon, children, I am wrong; that child is not

here (meaning the child who was to answer the question) ; I ought to have asked, " Who made the ark ?"

No. 2. At an entertainment lately given to a large body of children, by the teachers, a friend of ours was requested to read out the words of the blessing they were to sing previously to their enjoying the feast :

" Be present at our table, Lord ;  
Be here and everywhere adored ;  
These creatures bless, and grant that we  
May live in Paradise with thee."

This had been repeated and sung perhaps a hundred times before by the same children at different times. He ventured to ask what they meant *by creatures* (it being evident that on this hinges the whole meaning of the verse). They had no idea whatever, that *creatures* meant the beef and plum-pudding of which they were about to partake. But that a dog, or a cow, or a pig, was a creature, they easily comprehended ; and it took twenty minutes at least to bring out this clearly to their minds by a variety of illustrations which it would be too tedious to mention. Had these children previously received a dozen or twenty training lessons, two minutes would have been sufficient to have elucidated such a point, for they were children who had been largely instructed, although not trained, in Scripture. In a properly conducted training school, children will be found ignorant of the meaning of a vast variety of words which they have read even in school ; but the difference is this, that being accustomed to analyze words and sentences, the trainer can touch some chord which instantly suggests the idea to the mind of his pupils. This fact, however, proves the paramount importance of their not repeating or

singing any passage in prose, or verse before they have been trained to understand its general and particular meaning.

No. 3. We may state a single case or two of unpictured out words being used by most intelligent examiners. The other day in the school of a friend, the children were asked, "Who is the efficient in regeneration? What is the instrument in regeneration? How does the word operate, casually or instrumentally?" &c. My friend adds that his scholars received from —— as in explanation: "This arises from the hypothetical union of the divine and human natures," &c., &c. Another examiner proceeded, "Little children, was there ever a time in the history of man, when the being and perfections of God were known by the light of unaided reason?" Of course, no answer was received. Such high-sounding words addressed to ignorant children, might as well have been propounded in Greek. He meant to ask, Was ever God known to man before the fall without the Bible? To the latter mode of putting the question several would have replied.

Before you conduct a Bible lesson, see that all are sitting erect, with their heels drawn in, their toes angled outwards, and their hands folded on their knees or lap.\* Then tell the children, slowly and very distinctly, what you intend doing. The passage having been read, point after point, *after* you (not *with* you), and only one sentence at a time—you proceed with some leading point elliptically and interrogatively, as it were *telling the story*, and making it the children's own. You then *picture* out the subject in *all* its leading points and relations, having recourse to analogy and whatever may

---

\* See page 202.

afford suitable illustration ; thus rendering the whole subject present to the mind's eye in a simple manner, always preferring natural imagery or emblems to abstract terms. Such has been the mind of the Spirit in dictating the Scriptures, and all teachers of Christianity ought to follow it.

This can be accomplished only by a slow process, step by step ; but then, as we have already stated, the children will be quite prepared to draw the lesson which the subject is fitted to convey. If the children cannot do this, then you have led or driven them too fast, or they have been blindfold on the way—consequently, you must again go over every point progressively until you attain the object in view. Some may say, “This is too tedious a process, and requires more patience than we would choose to exercise ;” or that it is too difficult. Our answer is, You will find it so only at the commencement. Every fresh attempt will open up new views upon every point, which will lengthen and expand, and become more easy by every exercise.

It is a principle of the training system not to tell the children, in the course of the lessons or exercises, any thing but facts, provided they can be made to find the answers for themselves by analogy or illustration. The reason why, or the consequence, they must be prepared to tell you.

We would say to every Bible trainer—Avoid what is termed *preaching* in the school. It is really useless, *whatever self-complacency it may engender* in the young man who practises it. The Gospel should be *taught* in the school, and afterwards preached and enforced from the pulpit. To the parent there cannot be, and ought not to be, any restriction.

No trainer must expect to succeed in his wishes at his



fall. Tell  
 A staff for second attempt ; but we can assure him that each  
 Very successive week or month will find him better able to  
 a stay, develop and train the children upon the simple and  
 threat upon any. No unnatural restraint is placed  
 to .. upon any. Every one is left to exercise the children  
 very according to his own peculiar cast of mind, as to the kind  
 he of questions he may propose, the ellipses he may form,  
 or the illustrations he may present.

Be content with illustrating one point each day—make use of all the knowledge the children may have previously acquired, do not take the honey, as it were, out of other flowers, not analogous, and put it into the one presented, as if you had made a discovery of what really is not in it, but take out the sweets out of the one daily presented in all their variety. Consider what 300 points per annum, and that number added for three, five, or seven years in succession, would do in illustrating the pages of Scripture during private reading, or while listening to a gospel ministry.

## STAGE I.

### AN EMBLEM PICTURED OUT.

“The Lord my Stay.”—PSALM xviii. 17, 18.

In these verses, David the Psalmist says, that God delivered him from his ... *enemies*, his strange ... *enemies*. How did David's enemies feel towards him? *They hated him*. But David says, the Lord ... *was his stay*.\*

Tell me, children, the meaning of the word STAY? (No answer.) What do you mean when you say, the Lord is

---

\* Apparently the children are acquainted with the meaning of the passage.

my stay?\*

When David was surrounded by enemies who hated him and said, that “the Lord was my stay, what do you mean by God being his stay? *Stayed.* wish to know from you what a stay is? *A thing that stayed.* Think for a moment, children ... *The thing that’s stayed.* Do you call the thing or person a stay, that is supported. (No answer.)†

Allow me to ask, have you seen peas growing in a garden? *Yes, sir.* When the peas were grown a few inches above ground, what have you seen the gardener do to them? *Stick them.* The gardener stuck or ... *stayed them.* He supported or stayed the peas by...*sticks* —*he stayed the pea sticks.* Think for a moment, children. (They reply), *He stayed the peas.* The gardener stayed or supported the peas by ... *sticks.* Each stick that supported or held up one of the peas, was to that pea a ... *stay.* The peas were stayed by the sticks, and the sticks were to the peas...*a stay.* The pea, you know, has little fibres, called ... *tendrils*; you remember we had a gallery lesson upon creeping plants lately. The pea seizes hold of the ... *sticks* with ... *its tendrils.*

Are the peas able to stand upright of themselves, like a tree, or how? *They are weak—they have sticks.* Very weak, and they require ... *sticks.* Very right. The pea requires a stick or something else to keep it ... *from falling.* And without being stayed ... *it would not grow.* Would it not grow? *It would not grow up.* It would ...

---

\* Unless the children have committed to memory some technical answer, generally speaking they will remain silent. The trainer, therefore, may put the question in one or two other forms before he receives, or even expects an answer—each question being more and more simple, and each, of course, exercising the understanding of his pupils.

† Every word in italics is supposed to be supplied by the children.

*fall.* Tell me, now, what the stick is to the pea? *A stay.* A staff to an old man on which he leans is ... *a stick.* Very true, it is a stick; but the stick or staff to him is... *a stay. It keeps him up.* And when the wall of a house threatens to fall, and beams of wood are placed against it to ... *keep it up,* these beams are called ... *They are very thick.* True, they are very thick, but what are they to the house? (No answer.) The stick kept the pea from ... *falling.* What do the beams to the wall? *Keep it from falling. A stay. Stays, sir.* Any thing on which we lean, or cling to for support, may be called ... *a stay.* If any of you, children, are acquainted with ships, you will know, that part of the rigging is supported by stays. *I know about ships, master, my grandfather lives at Greenock.* Very well, boy, you can tell what the rigging of a vessel is stayed by? *Ropes.* The ropes tied up in a particular way by ... *the sailors, keep up ... the sails* and other parts ... *of the rigging.* What do you call the ropes when used in this way? *Stays.* A staff to an old frail man may be called...*a stay.* And you told me what the pea requires to keep it up? *A stay.* You will remember what was said about ivy clinging to ... *trees,* and ... *bushes;* and these trees and bushes were to the ivy, ... *stays.* Suppose I were weak and unable to stand upon my feet, and some of you held me up, what would you be to me? *A stay.*

Now, what does David the king of Israel say in the verses you have just read? Look at your books. (The children read the two verses simultaneously.) The king of Israel speaks of enemies that he had to meet stronger than he was himself. To whom do you think could he look for help? *God.* David says ... What does he say? "*The Lord was my stay.*"

You know that the pea has little fibres, called ... *tendrils* or ... *holders*, that lay hold of any thing, such as a ... *stick* to ... *keep it up*, and when it loses its hold, what happens? *It falls*. Now, David, when he had very strong enemies to meet, and was likely to fall before ... *them*, he naturally looked for some stay to ... *support him*. Who was David's stay? *God*. He believed that God would ... *help him*. He trusted ... *in the Lord*, and he was to him ... *a stay*. You say that the Psalmist believed that God would ... *help him*. That is, that he had ... *faith* in ... *God*, and like as the pea held ... *the stay* by its ... *tendrils*, so David, as it were, held by God, how? *By believing in him*. Give another word for believing? *Faith*. David in every difficulty trusted ... *in God*. And what did God do? *He supported him*. At the time we now speak of, when he had strong enemies who came against ... *him*, and who ... *hated him*, to whom did David look for help and support? *To God*. The Psalmist, trusting in him, and feeling that he was ... *supported*, said, ... *The Lord was my stay*.

## STAGE I.

### A NARRATIVE PICTURED OUT.

MARK III. 1—5.

“ And he entered again into the synagogue ; and there was a man there which had a withered hand. And they watched him whether he would heal him on the Sabbath-day that they might accuse him. And he saith unto the man which had the withered hand, Stand forth. And he saith unto them, Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath-days, or to do evil ; to save life, or to kill ? But they held their peace. And when he had looked round about on

them with anger, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, he saith unto the man, Stretch forth thine hand. And he stretched it out; and his hand was restored whole as the other.”\*

In giving the following illustration, so far from fixing down certain questions and ellipses to be slavishly followed by the trainer, we merely give the idea as a general principle. The most experienced trainer would assuredly not bring out the same answers twice from the same children.

In actual practice, let it be observed, that nearly double the amount of words in these examples will generally be used, consequently some of the transitions may appear rather too abrupt. Patience is particularly requisite in training.†

POINTS TO BE PICTURED OUT, EACH SEPARATELY, IN THE FIRST INSTANCE.

1. The synagogue.—2. Difference between a synagogue and a church or a mosque, &c.—3. Jesus entered.—4. Those in the synagogue.—5. A man who had a withered hand.—6. The Jews all around watching Jesus.—7. What ought to be done on the Sabbath-day: good or evil?—8. Their silence.—9. Jesus looking on them with anger.—10. Was it right to be angry?—Passages regarding anger in Scripture.—11. The man asked to stretch forth his hand.—12. He believes in Christ's power.—13. Makes the attempt; stretches it out.—14. Restored whole as

---

\* The trainer conducts the reading of the passage, as follows: verse 1st, And he entered. The children repeat, *And he entered*—again—again—into the synagogue—into the synagogue; the children repeating after the master simultaneously, and in the exact tone of voice with him. After they have acquired the habit of reading slowly, distinctly, and in a proper tone, they may be permitted to read simultaneously and individually, without previous reading by the trainer.

† The first stage is intended for infants in knowledge, whether of three, six, or twelve years of age.



the other.—15. If he had refused to stretch forth his hand, what would have followed?—16. But he did stretch it out.—17. Therefore, &c.

Now, children, we are to have a lesson from this book : What book is this? *The Bible*. What other name is it called by? \* *Scriptures*, or the ... *Bible*.† Any other name? *No, sir*. You say, *No*. Suppose, children, that any friend wrote or sent a letter to you from London, or the West Indies, about something they wished to say to you, what would you say that that friend sent you? *Word*. That they had sent ... *word* about something they wished you ... *to know*. You would say, you had got ... *word* from your ... *friend*. Well, then, God told his servant Mark to write what is contained in this ... *book*, and when he speaks to you in it, he is sending you ... *word*. This book, then, is the word ... *of God*; just what God wishes to say to me and to ... *us*,‡ and to ... *every body*. This book is the ... *word of God*.§

We shall now read a short passage out of the ... *Bible*, or ... *Word of God*, and I have to request perfect ... *silence*. It is about a man who had a withered hand. The lesson is from one of the miracles of our Saviour. You know our Saviour lived

\* Should none of the children know the name *Scriptures*, the trainer will of course tell them. When once the children get to a right understanding of what the Bible is, as the word of God, this introductory mode will be quite unnecessary.

† Every word in *italics* is supposed to be the answer of the children; the pauses marked thus ... show where the trainer forms an ellipsis, which (by the children) is afterwards answered and filled up by the words in *italics*.

‡ Action or manner, and tones of voice, suited to the words, ought constantly to be kept in view in the process of training.

§ Our limits forbid enlarging upon this point. It is better that the child do not get too much on any one day, only little by little. The "Word" being one of the titles of Christ, and the "Word" being "made flesh" must be brought before the children's attention at other and subsequent exercises. Such minuteness or variety of preliminary observations as we are exhibiting in this example of the FIRST STAGE in training, is not requisite at the commencement of every lesson. It must be done, however, occasionally, to engage their attention, and impress their minds with the idea that the Word of God is a word or a message sent to themselves.



n this earth about ... How long? *About 1800 years ago.\**  
 You will find the passage in the Gospel† according to Mark, iii. 1.  
 All will find the place, and make no bustling or noise in turning  
 over the ... *leaves*. Look at me. You will turn over the leaves  
 in this way. Hold your Bibles properly, not with the thumb in  
 the middle, for that will ... *dirty the book*. Placing your thumb  
 in the middle, will soil or dirty ... *our books*.‡

The whole of the gallery will read each of the verses in one ...  
*voice*. That is simultaneously. Remember that the whole gal-  
 lery repeating in one ... *voice*,—a number of children reading  
 together in one...*voice*, means ... *reading simultaneously*. Repeat  
 the word,...*simultaneously*. Reading simultaneously, means ...  
*altogether*. Very well, look at your books. (Three or four  
 read a verse individually, in succession, after the master.) The  
 whole gallery will now read the first verse with me :

“And he (that is *Jesus*) : entered again into  
 the synagogue, and there was a man there  
 which had a withered hand.”

He, that is...*Jesus*, entered. Jesus entered into the...*syna-  
 gogue*, and who is said to have been in the synagogue? *A man  
 which had a withered hand*.

Do you know what a synagogue is? (Children are silent.)  
 What do you call the place where Christian people go to worship  
 on Sabbath? *A church*. Very well. Christians worship in...  
*church*. The Jews also went to a place of worship. What do  
 you call the place that the Jews worshipped in? (No answer.)  
 Look at your books, children. *Synagogue, sir*. The place where  
 the Jews worship, is called a ... *synagogue*. Don't forget the

---

\* If the children do not know this fact, of course they must be told it.

† Previous to conducting a first lesson from one of the gospels, pro-  
 phets, or epistles, the distinction between each class of books must  
 be pictured or drawn out, and occasionally afterwards, to refresh their  
 memory, and at the same time secure that no new scholar remains igno-  
 rant.

‡ Those who cannot read, listen to the passage being read conjointly  
 by the master and those who are able to read ; all, however, unite in the  
 exercise of picturing out.

name ... *synagogue*. The Jews worship in a ... *synagogue*, and the Christians in ... *a church*. Churches and synagogues, therefore, are places of ... *worship*.\*

The Bible says, He (that is ... *Jesus*), entered into the synagogue or place of ... *worship*, and there was a man there which had ... *a withered hand*. Do you think Jesus had been in the synagogue before? No, *sir*.† Look at your books, and read

\* The frequent repetition of the same terms, and the employing of varied illustrations, may appear tedious to some of our readers, but in actual practice they are absolutely necessary, even to a greater extent than we exhibit here, to secure the understanding of the passage by all. Repetitions and variety make the requisite impression on the human mind; like the ancient and modern engines of war—the battering ram and the bullet, on the resisting bastion. What one shot will not do, a dozen may accomplish.

† This shows the slight impression the simple reading of the Scriptures makes on the mind of an uncultivated child. Every error in the answers ought to be corrected, not by saying, Children, you are wrong; but by the master repeating the answers properly, as they ought to be in tone and substance; then causing the children to fill up the sentence in one voice, sometimes in the same, and sometimes in other terms. The using of various terms having the same meaning, cultivates the understanding, as well as the verbal memory. If it is asked, What shall we do, when probably three or four wrong answers, and one or two right ones, are given at one time, by different children under *this* simultaneous method? we answer, fix upon one of the wrong answers, repeat it audibly, and you may either ask a question somewhat analogous, in order to show its absurdity, which the children very quickly perceive—the simple repetition sometimes will do—or you may repeat one of the right answers given by another child, in such a tone and manner as to show the answer to be the correct one: then cause the whole gallery to repeat it, as the correct one, in different terms, however, and then proceed with the next step of the subject. *You have trained them on that point*—they are prepared to walk forward. It is of great importance that the children's answers be acknowledged, whether *right* or *wrong*, or at least one of the answers. Children like to have what they say attended to, *and graver persons too*. If you do not acknowledge the answers, the scholars are apt to get into confusion, by repeating the answers over and over again, some of which may be right and others wrong. As the trainer proceeds with the exercise or lesson, one or more amongst the number present are almost certain to know the answer required, and to express it; so that, although only a very few may have known, or thoroughly remembered the facts; by this principle of development, not only is the memory refreshed, but those who are ignorant, joining in the answers of their companions, must therefore, learn. Whatever answer or ellipsis any one gives, if correct, the master should require the whole scholars to express the idea in a firm,

with me, "And he entered *again* into the synagogue." *It says 'again.'* What does that mean? *That he had been there before.* Yes, Jesus had often been in the temple,\* and in the Jewish synagogues to ... *worship*, and thus he has left an example that we should follow ... *his steps*, that we also should go to ... *church*, and worship ... *God*. Jesus worshipped ... *God*, his heavenly ... *Father*. Give me an example? One child answers, *Jesus prayed all night on a mountain*. Another, *he sung a hymn*.† Well, then, after Jesus had entered the ... *synagogue*, he saw there a man who had ... *a withered hand*.

Do you know, children, what a withered hand means? *A withered hand*.

No doubt, a withered hand is *a withered hand*; but can you inform me what it is? Can you give me some illustration of what you mean?‡ Is it a fat or a lean hand, or is it neither? What is it? *It's lean, sir*.

When you see a very old person's arm, how does it look? *Withered*. Quite withered? *Withering*. What would a dead man's hand be? *Like a stick*. A withered hand would be parched up like ... *a stick*. Well, then, the man's hand was ... *withered*. Of what use could his hand be? *None, sir*.

Why? *Because it was withered*. Without any ... *power*. Actually ... *withered*; useless, like a dried ... *leaf*. The man's withered ... *hand* was as lifeless as ... *a dried leaf*. Well, such was the condition of this man's ... *hand*. Tell me, who was in the synagogue when Jesus entered it?

Look at your books and read simultaneously.

Verse 2nd.—"And they watched him

soft tone, avoiding boisterousness and too great rapidity; and what is lost in celerity, ought to be made up in emphasis.

\* The children are supposed to have had a lesson on the temple, as a place of worship, but none on the synagogue.

† This we term an incidental lesson, which occasionally occurs during the course of a general lesson, and ought always to be seized upon when it can be *naturally* drawn.

‡ The teacher might show what a withered arm is, from the history of many of those Indian devotees, who, to atone for sin, or to get themselves idolized, hold their arm or arms up for years, until they get withered.

whether he would heal on the Sabbath-day, that they might accuse him.”

They ... *watched him*. This means those who were ... *present*. Who were present? *The Jews*.

What particular sect of the Jews were present? Look at your books, children.

Pharisees, and Sadducees, and Scribes.—Were all these sects present?

*Scribes and Pharisees.*

Look at the sixth verse, and tell me if you have answered right.

*No, sir, they were Pharisees.* And no mention is made of ... *Scribes*.

We have had one or two lessons before on the character of the Pharisees, and, therefore, I need not enter particularly into their ... *character* and ... *history*. What kind of people were the Pharisees?

They were ... *hypocrites*, and made ... *long prayers in the corners of the streets*, to be seen of ... *men*. They did not pray except to be ... *seen of men*; not out of love to ... *God*, and dependence on ... *God*; and, therefore, what do you call them? *Hypocrites*, in praying to God when they did not mean what ... *they said*. These hypocrites watched Jesus, to see whether he ... *would heal on the Sabbath-day*.

For what purpose did they watch Jesus? Look at your books, children. *That they might accuse him*. Think for a moment what a sad thing this was. A man was in the synagogue who had a withered hand, that was of no ... *use to him*, and the Pharisees—that is, those hypocritical ... *Jews*—watched him, to see if he would cure this man on ... *the Sabbath-day*; to see whether Jesus would do a good ... *thing*. A good thing or a good ... *action* on ... *the Sabbath-day*. What sort of conduct do you think this was? *Bad*. Had they been kind, good people, they would have been ... *happy* or *glad*. Very well, they would have been glad that this poor man was likely to ... *have his hand cured*. But, instead of this, what did they do? They ... *watched him*, to see if he ... *would heal it*.

Allow me to ask, children, What made these Pharisees so anxious to watch Jesus on the Sabbath-day? Was it because they loved the Sabbath-day? Or what caused them to watch Jesus? *They were hypocrites.* Very true, they were ... *hypocrites*, like too many people in the world, who say one ... *thing*, and ... *think another*, or pretend to be what they ... *are not*.\* Very well, but tell me why they wanted to accuse Jesus? *Because they did not like him.* Give me another word for like ... *wish*; another still ... *love*. They did not ... *love him*, neither did they love ... *the poor man*. Why do you think they did not love the poor man.† *Because they did not wish him well.* That is to say, you think they did not wish to see his ... *hand cured*. If you look at your Bibles, you will see the verse says, that "they watched him to see if he would ... *cure on the Sabbath-day*." Was it out of love to the Sabbath-day, think you? *Yes, sir.* Think for a moment, Christian people, that is, those who love ... *God*, also love God's holy ... *day*, called ... *the Sabbath*.‡ Were these Pharisees persons that loved God, think you, or what were they? You have already told me that they made long ... *prayers*, to be ... *seen of men*.|| Now, answer me, What was their motive in watching Jesus, to see if he would cure him on the Sabbath-day? *That they might accuse him.* You also told me that they did not ... § How did they feel towards Christ? *Hatred.* They did not ... *love Christ*,¶ and those who do not love Christ, are not likely to keep ... *his commandments*, and those who do not love to do good, cannot ... *be good*.\*\* Now, I ask you, Was it love for the Sabbath-day that induced them to watch Jesus? *No, sir. That they might accuse him.* To

---

\* Incidental lesson.

† An ellipsis ought never to be made in a question.

‡ Incidental lesson.

|| Rendering former knowledge available, as already stated.

§ Make a pause thus ... without using the word *what*.

¶ The frequent turning of sentences during a training lesson exercises the mind of the child in the use of words, and gives him a facility in mental composition, independently of the direct exercises in that elementary branch of education.

\*\* Incidental lesson.



whom? You don't know this (fact), therefore\* I shall tell you: It was to the chief priests. The chief priests hated Jesus; and the Pharisees, knowing that they hated ... *Jesus*, and wished to do him harm, even to ... *kill him*, they watched an opportunity to tell these priests.† You will remember they were the ministers of the Jews, but they were very unlike ... *ministers*. They were very unlike ministers who preach the ... *gospel*, and ought all to be very ... *good*. These priests were ... *bad*, for they desired ... What did they desire or wish to do to Jesus? *To kill him*. They wanted to find some ... *pretence* against ... *Jesus*, that they might ... *put him to death*. The Pharisees, therefore, could have no real love for the ... *Sabbath-day*. Their motive in watching him was not love ... *for the Sabbath*, but ... How did they feel towards Christ? *Hatred*. Their motive, then, in watching Jesus, was not love to the ... *Sabbath-day*, but ... *hatred to Christ*, and a desire to inform the chief priests, who also ... *hated him*. What did they think Jesus likely to do? *To heal the man with the withered hand*.

We shall now read the next verse:

(Tedious as this process may appear on paper, most certainly in actual practice a larger amount of words would require to be used than are here exhibited, and besides some other imperfect or improper answers by the children, not imagined here, would require to be disposed of *on the principle of the system*. For the sake, therefore, of economising our limited space, in what follows of this lesson, we shall presume on the children's possession of a larger amount of facts.)

Verse Third—All read in one voice, that is ... *simultaneously*, and very slowly, and ... *distinctly*.

“And he saith unto the man which had the withered hand, Stand forth.”

---

\* The trainer has developed the extent of the children's knowledge, which is this, that they do not know the name or fact; he must, therefore, tell them; but the lessons to be drawn from the fact or facts, he must not tell; such must be pictured out, and they tell him.

† They of course know something about the priests before, but still they are noticed lest every one might not know.



Where do you think the man was when Jesus said, *Stand forth?* What part of the synagogue was he in? *In the back seats.* How do you think so? *Because Jesus said, Stand forth.* You think then, that this ... *poor man* who had the withered hand was in a ... *back seat.* Why? *Because he was to stand forth—to come out.* Where was he to stand? *In the midst.* In the middle of ... *the synagogue.* Before all the ... *people,* that is, before all these proud ... *Pharisees.* And for what purpose? *That they might see him better.* That they might see what Jesus was ... *going to do.* What was he going to do? *To cure the withered hand.* Then, this man was asked to ... *stand forth,* or rather commanded ... *to stand out from ... the back seats.* And why do you call this man poor? The Bible does not call him poor? *The Pharisees always took the best seats.* You think, therefore, he was a ... *poor man,* and not a ... *Pharisee.\** Now, then, children—Does the Bible say there were seats in the synagogue? Look, if you please, at the verse. It simply says ... “*Stand forth,*” whether he, or any, or ... *all,* had been sitting, we are not ... *told,* but Jesus bade the man ... *stand,* we shall suppose in the ... *middle of the synagogue,* that he might be ... *better seen.* By whom? *By the Pharisees,* all around the ... *church.* We are now speaking of a Jewish ... *synagogue,* not a Christian ... *church.* Then, we shall suppose the man standing in the middle of ... *the synagogue,* with the ... *Pharisees* and other ... *Jews* standing ... *round him.* So that every one could see the miracle that Jesus was about ... *to perform.* Heads up, children; shoulders ... *back,* heels close, toes ... *out,* forming an ... *acute angle.†* Hold your books properly.

Verse Fourth.—Now, read as before.

“And he saith unto them, Is it lawful

---

\* The trainer must be content with this answer, otherwise “both eyes would be taken off from the road.”—See page 96. Yet, in revising the lesson (as usual), a field is opened for an INCIDENTAL LESSON, that a poor man might be a Pharisee in real disposition and character.

† Knowledge of geometrical terms is useful at this point of physical training.

to do good on the Sabbath-days, or to do evil? to save life, or to kill? But they held their peace.”

The Pharisees were looking ... *on*, and Jesus asked ... *a question*. Did they answer the question? *No, sir, they held their peace*. Why? Because—because. Well, I shall help you out. Their consciences told them that they ... *watched him*, that they might ... *accuse him*. To whom? *To the chief priests*. Was it for doing evil or for doing good on the Sabbath-days they meant to accuse him? *For doing good*. Think of this, they meant to accuse Jesus of doing ... *good* on ... *the Sabbath-day*. Could Jesus do anything that was not good on Sabbaths, or any other day? *No, sir, he went about doing good*, both on Sabbaths and ... *on week-days*. And, therefore, they gave our Saviour no answer; they ... *held their peace*.\*

Before reading the next verse, suppose you all rise ... *simultaneously*, just as if you were one ... *body*. Shoulders ... *back*, heels close, toes outward, forming *an acute angle*. Hands, with Bibles in ... *left hand*, resting on knees.† Now, observe my hand, and rise up and sit down slowly or quickly, just as I move my ... *hand*. (Up,—down;—again—repeating this simultaneous movement.) All eyes on ... *books*.

Verse Fifth—“ And when he had looked round about on them with anger, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, he saith unto the man, Stretch forth thine hand. And he stretched it out; and his hand was restored whole as the other.”

\* Another Incidental Lesson is here presented, which may be applied to the children by familiar illustrations during the revisal; but the trainer must proceed onward to the great lesson of the whole narrative.

† The conjunction of action and word secures the attention and ready obedience of the whole children, without the trainer using the rod.

Jesus looked round about on them with ... *anger*. Who is said to be meek and lowly? *Jesus*.

And yet here it is said, he looked round about on all the Jews who were ... *in the synagogue* with ... *anger*. Was that right? (Silent.) Jesus was angry with these ... *Pharisees*. Let us read a little more of this verse: "Being ... *grieved for the hardness of their hearts*." Now, can you tell me why Jesus was angry. He was ... *grieved for the hardness of their hearts*.

And therefore you think it was ... *not wrong* for Jesus to be ... *angry*. No, sir.

Why? *Because they were hypocrites*.

True; they were hypocrites, and they showed their hypocrisy—in which way, think you? (Silent.) I shall tell you so far. These Jews, called ... *Pharisees*, were in the synagogue for ... for what purpose? What do people go to a place of worship to do? *To sing, and hear a sermon*. Anything more? *To pray*. Very well.

These Pharisees had gone to the synagogue professedly to worship ... *God*, and yet they watched Jesus to see if he would cure ... *the man with the withered hand* on ... *the Sabbath-day*, that they might accuse ... *Jesus* before the ... *chief priests*. What did all this prove? *That they were not good people*, because they did ... *these things*. Jesus, therefore, committed no ... *sin* by looking round about on them with ... *anger*.\* Jesus could not ... *sin*. He, however, was grieved that their hearts were so ... *hardened*. They wanted to destroy ... *him*; but Jesus did not render evil for ... *evil*, but was grieved ... *for them*.† Well, after Jesus looked round in this way, and when the man with the withered hand was standing on the middle

---

\* If the children were more advanced, or during the revisal, they might be required to give illustrative passages, such as, "Be ye angry, and sin not," &c.; or the trainer might quote another passage, illustrative of the distinction between anger as a passion and righteous indignation at duplicity and sin.

† During subsequent lessons, many passages might be adduced on this point, such as, "Be ye angry and sin not," the subject matter causing anger being the test of the propriety of exercising this feeling of our nature.

or the floor, and the Jews all ... *round about*, Jesus said ... What did he say? "*Stretch forth thine hand.*" And what did the man do? *He stretched it out.*

How could the man stretch out his hand when the fingers were withered. (Silent.) You told me that his hand was withered like a ... *dried leaf*. Suppose my hand were withered and curled up this way (the master showing his own hand closed), and quite withered, do you think I could stretch it out? *Jesus gave the power*. I could not ... *do it*, you think, but Jesus could give me the ... *power to do it*. Now, then, answer me the question, How did the man stretch out his withered hand? *By the power of Jesus*. Christ gave him power to ... *stretch out his hand*. If I told you to rise up from your seats just now, and walk to me, would you be able? *Yes*. But were your legs withered? *We would not be able*. I would be asking you to do a thing you could not ... *do*. You could not ... *walk to ... me*. Could I or any other man enable you to walk to me by yourselves, if you were so lame? *No, sir*. Who alone could do that? *Jesus*. But was not Jesus Christ a man? *Yes, sir*. *He was both God and man*. As God, therefore, what did he do? *He gave power to the man with the ... withered hand*. What did he give the man power to do? *Power to stretch it out*. Jesus commanded him to do what he could not ... *do*, that is, to stretch out ... *his hand*, but at the same ... *moment* he gave the ... *power to do it*.

What did Jesus say to the man? "*Stretch forth thine hand.*" And ... *the man did so*, and it was restored ... *whole as the other*. The man did what he was bid to ... *do*, and in was restored whole as ... *the other hand*. If your hand were withered, and I asked you to hold it out, would you be able? *No, sir, we could not.\**

But that would be doing what you were bid? *Yes, sir, but you would not be able to cure it*. Very right, children. I

---

\* Put your question as seldom as possible in that form that requires an answer—a mere yes or no. A yes or a no partakes more of examination than training.

would not be able to cure a withered ... *hand*, or to work a ... *miracle*; but Jesus Christ was able to do ... *all things*; to tell the man to stretch ... *out his hand*; and what more? To give him ... *power to do it*. Suppose, when Jesus asked the man to stretch forth his hand, that he had stood still, and said, "I cannot do that," what would have happened? *His hand would not have been cured*. And it would have proved that he did not believe in Christ's...*power* and willingness to...*cure him*.

But he did believe in Jesus that he was ... *able* and ... *willing*. He did stretch ... *out his hand*. And what followed? *His hand was cured*. What do you call that? *A miracle*. A thing done out of the ordinary course of nature is ... *a miracle*. No man or ... *doctor could do it*. No physician or ... *doctor* could cure a hand that was completely ... *withered*.

Christ, therefore, first gave the ... *command*, the man ... *obeyed*, the man had faith in ... *Jesus*, that he was able ... *to cure him*, he stretched out ... *his hand*, Christ gave the ... *power*, and his hand was ... *cured*, made whole as ... *the other*.

Now, children, what lesson does this teach you? That you should ... *do all that God wishes us to do*, and believe all that God wishes you ... *to believe*,\* and he will give the ... *power to do it*. Jesus says to you, my dear children, "He that seeketh me early shall ... *find me*." Now, answer me, Do children always seek Christ early? *No, sir*. Why? *They are sinful*. Yes, they are ... *sinful*, and what does the Bible say? ... *dead*; and, like the man with the withered hand, your hearts need to be made ... *alive*, and ... *better*. Well, although you say you cannot come to Christ early, yet he bids you come to him ... *early*. What do you make of that? *If we come*.

You mean, I suppose, that although you cannot go to ... *Jesus*, yet, if you ... *believe*, and endeavour to do those things which he ... *bid us do*. Mention one of the things you ought to do? *Pray*. That you should ... *pray*; and if you seek God in prayer, you ... *shall find him*.

---

\* Incidental practical lesson.

Very right. Now, what do you call this? It is ... *faith*, or ... *belief* in ... *Christ*.\* Belief that he is able and ... *willing* to cure your ... *hearts*, your sinful ... *hearts*, as he cured ... What did he cure? *The man's withered hand*.†

Hymn and prayer ought to be in accordance with the lesson.

---

### EXAMPLE III.

#### STAGE I.

AN EMBLEM—"EVEN AS A HEN," &c.

"Even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings," &c.—Matt. xxiii. 37.

Children, I shall see if you remember the lesson we had formerly from this passage. The Jews had killed many of the prophets whom God had sent to teach and to ... *preach to them*. Do you remember any of the prophets that they killed? *Isaiah*, *Jeremiah*. Any others? *Abel*. Yes, from righteous Abel, whom Cain, his brother, ... *slew*, down to ... *Zechariah*, the son of *Barachias*, the Bible ... *says* God would require their blood of that ... *generation*. That is to say, that that generation would be punished for all these ... *murders*, because they had not ... *repented of their sins*. God had sent his servants

---

\* Were this lesson conducted at the close of Stage I., not more than one-half of the amount of words would require to be used, from the amount of facts and ideas the trainer would have to build upon, which the children must have acquired. And, for the same reason, if at the end of Stage II., not above a fourth of the words would require to be used.

† On returning to this narrative at a future time, the deceitfulness and wickedness of the Pharisees would be more fully pictured out.



the ... *prophets* to ... *preach to them*. And what did the Jews do? *Killed them*; many of those whom God had ... *sent*, and now they were about to ... What were they about to do? Whose life were they about to take away? *Christ's*. After they had killed God's servants, the ... *prophets*, they were about to kill his ... *Son*. As the Bible says, His only ... *Son*. Tell me how Jesus felt when he entered the city. *He rode upon an ass*. True, he rode upon an ass; but what did he say? How did he express or tell how he felt? *He wept over it*. Yes, another part of the Bible says, Jesus, the Son of God ... *wept*. He wept when he beheld the city of ... *Jerusalem* doomed to ... *to be destroyed*. Whether do you think he was grieved for what the Jews were about to do to himself, or was it on their own account that he wept? (Silent, being rather too complex.) Did Jesus weep for himself or for them? *For the Jews*. He wept for ... *them*, because they were soon ... *to be destroyed by the Romans*. He was not sorry for ... *himself*. He willingly gave himself to ... *die*. For whom? *For us*,\* and for the ... *Jews*. For all mankind that believe ... *in Him*. Well, then, what did Jesus ride into Jerusalem upon? *An ass*. And, thinking upon what was to happen to them, he ... What did he do? *He wept over it*. Do you remember any other occasion when Jesus wept? *At the grave of Lazarus*. Jesus wept with Martha and Mary who had lost ... *their brother*. The Bible says, Rejoice with them that do rejoice, and weep with them that ... *weep*. Jesus, therefore, wept with those that ... *wept*.

Read with me verse 37.

"How often would I have gathered them together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not."

Christ says he would have gathered them together, "even as a hen." Can you tell me how a hen gathers her chickens

---

\* Incidental lesson.

together? Have any of you ever seen a hen gathering her brood of chickens together? *Yes, sir, my mother has hens.* And have your mother's hens any chickens? *Yes, sir, they have seven chickens.* One of your mother's hens, I suppose, has ... *a great many chickens.* This girl will tell us if she has ever seen the chickens run under the wings of the mother? *Yes, sir, she chucks, and they run under her wings.* Chickens are ... *young hens.* When do they run under the wings of the mother hen? *When they are frightened.* Fear causes them ... *to run under the hen.* Whenever the hen perceives, that is, sees or ... *thinks* there is any danger to ... *the chickens,* she spreads her wings out round about her body, and cries ... What does she cry? *Chuck, chuck.* And what happens? *They all run under the wings* of their ... *mother.\** If you held your father's hand in the street, on a dark ... *night,* you would think you were ... *quite safe.* You would think yourself quite ... *safe* from ... *danger.* Or if this little girl were to be attacked by a dog, and her mother took her in ... *her arms,* how would she feel herself? *Safe.* Quite ... *safe.* Very well, the chickens run under the wings of the ... *hen* when they are afraid of being ... *hurt.* And when they are under the wings of the hen, they ... *think they are safe.* And are they safe, think you? *Yes, sir.* Suppose a dog or cat were to run after the little chickens to seize them, where would they run? *Under the wings of the hen.* And the chickens would feel themselves *safe,* and a dog or a ... *cat* would be afraid to come near the hen for fear of ... *having its eyes being picked out.*

Now, then, children, do you know how many inhabitants there were in Jerusalem at that time, that is when Jesus was in this world? *Fifty thousand—More than half a million, sir.†* The last answer was right, children. Jerusalem was an immense city like ... *London,* and it contained more than fifty thousand

---

\* Action is of great importance at this stage of the exercise. The trainer may spread the fingers of both hands, moving them circularly round his body, and pointing his fingers to the ground in imitation of the pinions of the hen.

† Various answers, of course, are given in the gallery.

... *inhabitants*. It contained, let me tell you, above half a million of people—men, women, and ... *children*. It is said by Josephus, a Jew, who lived about that time, and who wrote a book or history of the awful destruction of ... *Jerusalem*, that in the city and neighbourhood, of men, women, and children put together, there were destroyed by the Romans twice the number you state. How many would that be? You said above ... *half a million*. Well, I shall tell you something of this sad affair, which is told by ... Who wrote the book we are now speaking of? *Josephus*. The man lived at the time of our Saviour, and he says that there were a great many strangers gathered together at Jerusalem, just before the Roman army came against it, so that, although there were not nearly a million of inhabitants in ... *Jerusalem*, yet, one way or another, what with the sword when they were ... *fighting*, and by famine and other ... *things*, more than one million persons were slain and otherwise destroyed, not merely men and women, but ... *little children*. Yes,—the people not being able to get out of the city, on account of the Roman army that was round ... *the city*, many thousands wanted food so long that ... What happened, think you? *They died*; but, before they died, they were known to eat almost anything they could get; even rats and other ... *vermin*. What a sad condition they were brought to by the Roman ... *army*, and by famine, or want of ... *food*; and what was still worse, children, they fought among themselves. No wonder, then, when Jesus knew all these sad things that were to ... *happen*, that he ... What did he do when he looked on the city? *Wept over it*. Jesus was sorry at the punishment that was to come upon ... *them* for their wickedness. Mention any of those great sins? *Killing the prophets*, and rejecting ... *Christ*, and now they were about to ... *kill him*.

But Jesus said he would have taken all these people,—all this immense number of ... *people*, under ... *his wings*. Look at your books. The Bible says, "How often would I have gathered thy children together." Jesus here says that He would have gathered all the children of Jerusalem, not merely the little ... *children*, but the ... *big children*, all the people of

... *Jerusalem*, under ... *his wings*. And they would be quite safe, as safe as the chickens are ... *under the wings of the hen*. *Jesus had no wings, master*. This little boy is quite right; *Jesus had no ... wings*. Can you tell me of what use the wings of the hen are to the "chickens"? *To keep them safe*. Then, suppose any of you, children, in the gallery were afraid of being attacked by some animal while you were going home from school, and I were to take you under my arm, what would my arms be to you? *Protect us*. I could not fly with my ... *arms*, but my arms could ... *keep us*. My arm could keep or protect the ... *boy* or ... *girl*, as the ... *wings of a hen* to the ... *little chickens*. My arms are able to protect a ... *child*, and the wings of the hen are sufficient protection to ... *little chickens*.

Now, would *you all* be safe at this moment were a furious bull or dog to come into this school? *No, sir, there are too many of us*. Would I be safe under your wings or protection? *No, sir, we're too wee*. Give me a proper word for *wee*. *Little*. *Little* is the ... *proper word* to ... *use*.

\* Now, children, you think that one of you might be safe under my ... *arms*, but that the whole school would not be safe. Let us see what the Bible says:—"How often would I have gathered you together"—that meant ... *all the people of Jerusalem*—"even as a ... *hen gathereth her brood under her wings*, and ye ... *would not*." (Expressed very slowly, and in an under tone of voice.) "And ye would ... *not*." Just like too many persons who will not put themselves under Christ's protection. They will not come ... *to Christ*.† They will not put their trust in ... *Jesus*, or believe ... *in him*.‡ And although Jerusalem was a large city, almost as large as ... *London*, yet Jesus says he would often have taken the whole hundreds of thousands of the ... *people* of the ... *Jews* who lived in ... *Jerusalem*, under his wings, and keep them all quite ... *safe*. Could I or any here do that? *No*.

\* Physical exercises must not be omitted, to keep up the attention in conjunction with picturing out.

† Incidental lesson.

‡ Incidental lesson.

*sir.* Who could do that? *God.* God only could do ... *such a thing.* Then, who must Jesus Christ be? *God.* But Jesus wept when he looked on Jerusalem. You remember we had this lesson formerly; at another time when Jesus looked on that large city, doomed to destruction for its great ... *wickedness* ... What did he do? *He wept over it.* You remember, also, that Jesus wept at the ... *grave of Lazarus.* It is said in that interesting account, on approaching the grave, ... *Jesus wept.* Can God weep? *No, sir.* God cannot ... *weep* or shed tears as ... *we do,* but Jesus ... *wept.* Then what must Jesus be? *Man.* Why? *Because he wept.* Man because he ... *wept,* and ... What else was he besides man? *God.* God, because he ... *could take all Jerusalem under his wings.* Then what must Jesus Christ be ... *both God and man.*

N.B.—We may repeat that the prayer, whether preceding or following the lesson, ought to be conducted by the trainer, so as to embody the great outlines of it. And, when practicable, the hymn or psalm ought also to correspond.

## STAGE II.

### AN EMBLEM PICTURED OUT.

“As the shadow of a great rock in a weary land.”—  
Isaiah xxxii. 2.

\* You remember, children, we had one or two lessons from this verse sometime ago, and we shall now have one from the ... *last clause.* Read it very slowly after me.—“As the shadow of a great rock in a weary land.”

You told me before that the “man” who is as a hiding-place from the wind is the...*man Christ Jesus.* That when the wind blew violently, he was as a ... *hiding place*—a place of ... *shelter,* and when the tempest came ... *on.* What do you mean

---

\* After the usual preliminaries, including physical movements and arrangements, and reading the whole verse with the children. Master—A man shall be a hiding place from the wind. &c. &c.

by a tempest? *A very severe storm*—a storm so severe that... *every thing is carried before it.* Well, when a traveller is overtaken with a tempest, he that is the ... *traveller*, requires not merely a hiding place, but a ... What is it said God would be from the tempest? *A covert.* That... *God* would be not merely a ... *hiding place*, but ... *a covert*, something completely to ... *cover the traveller in from ... the tempest.* And that in those dry hot countries, what would Christ be like? *As rivers of water.* As rivers of water in ... *a dry place.* Who will rise up and explain the substance of our last lessons on this passage? (Several hands were up.) Jane, you explained last lesson. We shall take Thomas this time. Thomas, what do you say about the hiding place. *You told us, sir, that in the land of Palestine the people were frequently overtaken with dreadful winds, more severe than in this country, and that the sand and dust rose so much that the travellers required a hiding place; and there being no trees or shelter, particularly in the desert, that ... the storm arose, they were like to be destroyed, unless they had a hiding place, something to ... shelter them from the storm.*

Now, Agnes, what do you say about “a covert from the tempest?” A hiding place might do to...keep us from a strong wind, but...*a tempest being more terrible still, requires a covert.* Because the...*dust flies much higher, and in...larger quantities, and might bury the person in it.* Very right, Agnes. Now, Robert, you also held out your hand, what do you say about “Rivers of water in a dry place?” All the gallery will answer first. (Shoulders back, heels...*close*, hands...*on knees*.) Christ is said to be to his people when they are ... *distressed* by the storm...*of affliction*, as ... *a hiding place*, and when those are most severe, what is he said to be? *As a covert from the tempest.* A tempest is like to ... *carry every thing before it*, trees, and ... *houses, and every thing*, so that it ... *is impossible to stand against it.* What condition would you expect a person to be in who had suffered a severe storm or tempest, with clouds of dust flying about him? *Very thirsty, very choky.* Now Robert, what do you say about “the rivers of water?” What



would the traveller do, were he to meet with a river? *He would take a bath.* And what else? *A capital good drink.* Whether would he bathe or drink, first, think you! *Drink.* *He would do both.* You think he would both...*bathe and drink at the same time.* Why? *He would be so burning and thirsty.*

When God's people, in this world, are so troubled and distressed, what is Christ Jesus said to be...First? "*As a hiding place from the wind,*" and "*a covert from the tempest,*" "*as rivers of water in a dry place* ; but there is something else in a barren, dry, hot desert land, which refreshes a traveller when the sun is very hot. What do you think that may be? Look at your books, and read after me.

"As the shadow of a great rock in a weary land."

You see the sun shines through this window. Is there any shadow there? Show me a shadow. *That is a shadow behind the chair, sir.* Is there any other? *Behind the book-stand.* My hand placed so, behind the ... *chair* or the ... *book-stand*, does not receive ... *the rays of the sun.* My hand kept in this ... *shadow*, will not be ... *so hot* as now, when the ... *sun shines on't*, as when the sun shines...*upon it.*

Now, children, we shall suppose a man travelling in a weary land. What do you mean by a weary land? *A land where one is weary.* True; but why is it called weary? What makes the traveller weary? *The heat and thirstiness.* You mean that he will be very...*thirsty* and...*heated* in such a land as we are ... *speaking about.* How is the sun? *Very hot*, and therefore that it will be to him a ... *weary land.* People sometimes say, O, what a weary world. When do they say this? *When they are in trouble* ; when they are afflicted very ... *much.*

Tell me, children, what country is Isaiah the prophet speaking about? Is it a cold or hot country? *A hot country.* Why is it a hot country? What is the name of the country? you will remember I told you formerly ... *Palestine.* Palestine is a hot

country. Why? Look at the map, children, and tell me why? *It is near the equator, sir.* And I told you that those countries near ... *the equator* were ... *hot countries*, because ... Why are they hot, children? Because the sun is ... *perpendicular*, or ... *nearly perpendicular*. When? *At mid-day*. Were you walking along the street, in a very hot summer day, and the sun shining very brightly, which side would you walk on? *The shady side*, the side which is shaded ... *by the houses*. Or, were you walking in the country, you would like to be ... Where would you like to be? *Under trees*. You would like to be under a tree or . . . *shade*. Why? *To keep our heads from the heat of the sun*.

Now, children, it is said that Christ will be to his ... people, that is, those that ... *follow him*, because they ... *love him*, Christ will be to his people as a shadow of a ... *great rock*. Why a great rock, and not a small rock? What is a rock? *A large stone*. No doubt, a rock is a large stone. Would you call a large stone the size of this table, a large rock? *No, sir, much larger*. How large, think you? *Like a house*. Would a wall the height of this room not shelter you from the sun? Were you ever shaded by a wall on one side of the road? *Yes, sir, but the sun is straight up*. Where? *In Palestine*, and, therefore, you think, while a wall the height of this ... *ceiling* might shade you from the rays of ... *the sun* in this country, that it would not ... *do so in Palestine*. Why? *Because the sun is perpendicular above our heads, nearly ... perpendicular at ... mid-day*. You think that a small rock would not ... *do*, but a ... *great rock would do it*.

Look at this black board. You see what I have drawn. We shall suppose this a small rock, and that ... *a large rock*. If the sun were perpendicular, that is straight above our heads, would you be shaded were you standing or sitting at the bottom of either the one or the other of these rocks? *Yes, sir*. Observe, children, if the sun were shining down from here (the top), where would it shine upon a man standing here? (the bottom). *His head*. Supposing, then, the rocks to be quite perpendicular, or ... *square* from top to bottom, what difference would the large

rock make to the small one? (Silent.) Does the sun, even at mid-day, appear to be immediately above the heads of the people of Palestine? Are its rays perpendicular? Look at the map. *No, sir, not perpendicular.* The rays of the sun are ... *nearly perpendicular*, as you told me before, but ... *not quite perpendicular*. Well, if not quite perpendicular, the sun will be ... *here* (a little to the one side) and if I draw a straight line this ... *way*, for you know light or the rays of the ... *sun* we are now speaking about, go ... *quite straight*,\* and if I bring a straight line this way from the sun to the top of the rock, and from the top of ... *the rock* to where the man is supposed to be, what will happen? *He will be in a shadow*, just as my hand now is in the shadow of this chair, or this ... *book-stand*. Under which of the rocks would the man have the greater shadow? *Under the large one*, just as you see on ... *black board*. All rocks, children, are not square, like those I have ... *drawn* on the board, nor are they all ... *perpendicular*. But whether they are quite perpendicular or ... *not*, you see that a large rock will give the best ... *shadow* or ... *shade*—the greater the shadow, the more will the weary traveller be — *refreshed*. Let me tell you, children, that in these weary lands the traveller may walk many miles under the ... *burning sun*, without finding a house or a tree, or even a small ... *bush* to be a ... *shade* to him.

Now, children, Christ is said to be a great number of things to his people. Mention a few of these. What lessons were we revising just now? "*A hiding place from ... the wind.*" "*A covert from the tempest.*" As rivers of ... *water in a dry place*. Mention a few things which Christ is said to be to his people. *A rock* to ... *stand upon*. *A star* to ... *guide us*. *A refuge* to ... *the oppressed*. And what is he said to be in our lesson to-day? "*As the shadow of a great rock in a weary land.*" When his people are afflicted and distressed, like ... *the traveller in the weary land*, what will Christ be to him? *As the shadow of a*

---

\* This is not the time, of course, to teach the refracting influence of the atmosphere on the rays of the sun. A straight line is sufficiently explicit.

*great rock*, not merely as a small rock, which would not shade him ... *sufficiently*, but ... *as a great rock*. In another lesson it is said, "We shall sit under the shadow of his wings with great delight." So the traveller would sit under the shadow of the ... *rock with ... great delight*. Christ's people, you say, children, are those who follow ... *God*. Those who put themselves under God's ... *care*. Christ is compared in our lesson to ... *a great rock*, the shadow of ... *a great rock*. Suppose the man travelling in the weary desert did not go under the shadow, what would happen? *He would not get cooled*. He would not enjoy the ... *shadow*. Well, suppose, when we are in distress or trouble, that we do not go to Christ, what will happen? *We would not be supported*, we would not be ... *refreshed*. In all the trials and afflictions of this life, when the soul is faint and wearied, what is Christ to his people? *As a shadow*, comforting and ... *refreshing*, as a ... *shadow from the ... heat of the sun in a desert land*. And you said, many people when distressed in this world, feel it to be a ... *weary land*. When you are in trouble and distress, children (for we must all expect to have our troubles), when you are troubled, to whom ought you to go for relief? *To God*. To God, through ... *Christ*, who will be to you as ... *the shadow of a great rock in a weary land*.

The prayer may embody the principal outlines of the emblem pictured out. In other words, the lesson should be turned into a prayer. The psalm or hymn, when practicable, ought also to be in harmony with the lesson, such as Psalm xlv.

## STAGE III.

“AS THE HART PANTETH,” &c.

In this stage of training, the children are supposed to have acquired a considerable amount of Scriptural knowledge.

“As the hart panteth after the water-brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God.”—Psalm xlii. 1.

## POINTS TO BE PICTURED OUT.

1. Natural history of the hart.—2. Water-brooks.—3. Sometimes dried up, why so.—4. Nature of the climate.—5. Dust.—6. Heat.—7. Panting.—8. Longing for, and seeking after springs previously drank of.—9. Character of the Psalmist.—10. Circumstances then placed in—deprived of public ordinances formerly enjoyed.—11. So panteth my soul, &c.—12. After whom?

Children,—The Bible is full of imagery and emblems drawn from nature and the arts of life. The verse you have now read is ... *of that description*, and is full of ... *natural imagery*.

I must tell you, children, before we commence our lesson, that it is supposed this psalm was written by David, who was obliged to flee from his enemies, to the land of Jordan, and that, when there, he probably took up his abode in the mountains, away from the public worship of God's ... *house*, and seeing the harts running ... *about the hills*, and panting for thirst, most likely induced him to use the ... What metaphor or emblem did he use? Look at your books. David says, “As the hart panteth

after the ... *water-brooks*" (read on, children), "so panteth my soul after thee, O God."

The first thing we must speak about in this picture is the ... *hart*. Can you tell me any other names given to the hart?

*Stag—deer—gazelle*—(are the several answers.)

These are names given to ... *this animal* or ... *species*.

Very right. Well, in this verse the name of this animal or ... *species* is called ... *the hart*. I presume you have seen what is called a stag, or, if not, you have seen the ... *picture of one*, and therefore I need not describe it to you. Is it a slow or quick moving animal? *Swift*. It ... *runs very swiftly*.

What countries do harts chiefly live in? *Mountainous countries*. Why do you think so?

*The Bible says, "Like a young roe upon the mountains."*

And a young roe is ... *a young hart*. Well, that is one proof that they live in the mountains; but can they live in plains? *Yes; they live in plains in gentlemen's parks*, which are sometimes ... *plain*, or nearly ... *level*.

Very well, but when allowed to roam freely and ... *naturally*, they ... *prefer the mountains*. Where is the hart spoken of in this psalm supposed to live? Is it in a warm or cold country, think you? *A warm country*.

Why? ... Bring down the map, children, and show the country or countries you suppose to be meant. (The map of Palestine is presented.) Point out those parts you think harts live in. You think the psalmist means ... *the desert mountainous parts of Palestine* where ... *the hart is to be found*.\*

And Palestine is ... What sort of a country? *Mountainous country*, and ... *very hot*. Now, we must get smartly on. The hart lives in a ... *hot country*, and in a mountainous part of ... *a hot country*, where the sun shines ... How? *Nearly perpendicularly over the head*; and, therefore, during a great part of the year, the ground must be ... *very hot and dry*. In what state

---

\* As the children advance in knowledge, they are enabled to fill in longer ellipses, so that one or two words of a sentence being given, the child or adult will readily apprehend the idea to be filled in or answered in any part of the sentence.



will the soil be? *Parched and dusty.* And in mountainous countries, where the sun is very hot, what follows? The rivers or ... *streams.* Give me another word. Look at the verse The ... *brooks dry up.* It is then a dry and ... *thirsty land, where no water is.* If you turn up your Bible to Job, chap. vi, verse 15, it is said, "And as the streams of brooks they pass away," showing that brooks in that hot climate are ... *very apt to pass away, or ... dry up.*

Tell me, children, what you mean by panting? Show me what panting is? This boy thinks it is simply opening the mouth.\* Have you ever seen a dog walking in a very hot, dusty day, after having run a long way? *Yes, sir, it opens its mouth.* Does it simply open its mouth as this boy did? *It pants this way. It feels uneasy.* Why uneasy? *Because it is weary and thirsty.* Weary and thirsty from ... *the heat,* and a thirsty dog that is weary and very ... *hot,* would, like the hart ... What would it wish? *To have a drink,* or perhaps, to plunge ... *in the brook.* Of what had the hart drank before? *The brooks.* Well—the hart having both drank of ... *the brook,* and ... *plunged in the brook before,* longed and ... *panted to do so again.* In this sad condition, therefore, heated, ... *thirsty, ... panting,* and ... *running about, seeking for the water brooks,* how would the hart feel? Would he be satisfied to lie down? *No, sir. Very anxious.* And what more? *Longing and panting for water,* not at rest because it ... *felt the want of something* it could not get at ... *that time,* and that was, ... *the water brooks.*

Now, let us look at the verse, and see in what state or ... *condition* the hart is supposed to be. Repeat it, if you please, each word separately, slowly, and distinctly. "*As the hart panteth after the water brooks.*" What is a brook? *A small, clear, running stream,* not a muddy, stagnant ... *pool.* Do you think the hart had drank of a brook before? *Yes, else it would not*

---

\* The trainer ought to take nothing for granted, should it form a fundamental point of the lesson. The child may have been inattentive when similar points had formerly been brought out; or he may be a new scholar. Whichever way, the revisal, even to nine-tenths of the gallery who do know it, is an important refreshing of the memory.

*have panted for it. What makes the hart so very thirsty? Because it runs about the dry hills, where there is no water. And as the hart opens its ... mouth, and ... pants for water, and runs about, it raises the ... What do you think it raises? The dust into its mouth, which ... increases its thirst, and causes the hart to long more than ... ever for ... the brooks of which it had formerly drank, but which are now ... dried up, or perhaps at... a great distance. What would you expect the hart to do were it to reach a brook? Drink plentifully, and also ... plunge into the water. Why? To cool itself.*

Now, children, what does the Psalmist say at the end of this verse? "*So panteth my soul after thee, O God.*" The hart panteth after something, so did ... David. The one panted ... for water brooks, the other ... panted for God. The hart formerly had drank ... of the water brooks, and, being very thirsty, it...panted for them again. David had tasted of the...water of life, through the public ordinances of the ... temple. Think, children. Who built the temple? Solomon. And Solomon was David's ... son. Oh, it was the tabernacle, sir. The ... tabernacle. And being deprived of what he had formerly...enjoyed. What had he formerly enjoyed? *The worship of God in the ... tabernacle*, and, therefore, he longed ... for it again. He loved God, and, therefore, he thirsted, as it were, ... for him; just as the hart loved ... the water brooks, and ... panted for them.\*

Now, children, I wish to know your ideas of what David means, when he says that he panted after God, as ardently as the hart did after the water brooks? How did he drink of spiritual streams? *Thinking about good things.* Any thing else?

By reading the Scriptures?

Very well, tell me in what other way David could converse with God, besides reading the Scriptures? *By prayer.* Holding communion ... with God in ...secret, and in ... public.

---

\* The blessings of the gospel are so frequently expressed under the emblem of water, wells of water, living waters, rivers, streams, fountains, springs, brooks by the way, &c., that the trainer, during this, and subsequent lessons, might greatly enlarge in strict analogy with the text. Our limits forbid almost any extension of this lesson.

You mean public and private ... *worship*.

Had David tasted of these things before, think you? *Yes*.

Was he now deprived of them? (Silent.)

Do you think that if David, the man after God's own heart, had actually been in possession of those blessings at the time he wrote this psalm, he would have panted for them?

*No, sir, he desired to have them*; he desired to have what he had ... *not got*, but what formerly he ... *had experienced*; just as the hart panted for those ... *streams* of which it had formerly ... *drank*.

Was David deprived of every means of intercourse with God?

*No, sir, he could pray*. Although he was hunted like ... *a hart*, and away from ... *public ordinances*.

What had he always at hand? *Prayer*, which every one of you, children, may have ... How often? *Morning* and *evening*, and at ... *all times*.\*

David had the means of approaching ... *God in prayer*, in the secret of his ... *own heart*, even though he might be surrounded with ... *enemies*, and far away from the ... *temple*. Far away from the temple, think for a moment, children ... far away from the ... *congregation in the tabernacle*,—still he could speak to ... *God*, and draw from God. What could he draw? *Blessings*. Yes, which, like the water brooks to ... *the hart*, would refresh David's ... *soul*; would refresh and strengthen his spirit when he was ... *weary and thirsty*, and ... *longing for God*.

Very well. Now, you think, that reading the Scriptures and prayer enable the ... *good man*... Give me another word for good man? *Believer*. Reading the Scriptures and prayer enable the believer to drink of—what kind of streams? *Living streams*. Refreshing ... *streams*, that refresh ... *the soul*, just as water refreshes ... *the body*; and, therefore, water, especially in a hot, dry ... *country*, is a fit and proper emblem of God's blessing to ... *the soul*.

Very well, children, I wish you now to give me a few passages which compare water to those kind of blessings; but, before you repeat them, allow me to ask a question.

---

\* Incidental lesson.

King David, the psalmist, you told me, longed and panted to join in ... *the public worship of God*. Now, I have seen some children in church half-sleeping sometimes, while the ... *minister was preaching*, telling all the people about God, and what Christ hath ... *done for sinners*; what Christ hath done for their ... *souls*. What kind of feelings have these children? Do you think these children are panting after God? *No, sir, sleeping*. No, indeed, panting is not a state of slumbering and ... *sleeping*. Such conduct is more like the conduct of ... Who are said to have slumbered and slept? *The foolish virgins*. Panting is a state of watchful ... *anxiety* and ... *keenness after God*. Do you think it possible that some of you may be guilty of this? Do you think young persons ever sleep in church, and show themselves quite careless about what is going on? *Yes, sir, sometimes.\**

Young children, ... *too*, both in church and at ... *prayer*. How frequently does the mind wander when at ... *prayer*; often-times repeating ... *words* when the heart is ... *not engaged*! Can you give me a Scripture proof for this?

*"This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with their lips; but their heart is far from me."*—Matt. xv. 8.

Now, then, children, I wish a few Scripture proofs from you, in which spiritual blessings are compared to the emblem, water. Let each division in the gallery give me one or two. Go on, if you please.

*The blessings which flow from God are compared to "rivers of pleasure."*

Yes, children, not merely brooks but ... *rivers*; rivers of pleasure, ever flowing and ever ... *full*.

Do rivers ever dry up? *Yes*.

When dried up, what would they be?—*No longer rivers*.

The dry channel or ... *bed of the river* would not be a ... *river*. The rivers of pleasure spoken of here are ever flowing and ever ... *full*.

---

\* Incidental lesson.

Repeat another. Psal. cxxvi. 4, "Like streams in the south."  
What is meant by streams in the south?

*Warm refreshing showers from the south.*

Think now, does it say *from* or *in* the south? *In.*

Showers from the south are no doubt warm and ... *refreshing*, more so than from the ... *east* or from the ... *north*; but it means *in* the south, not ... *from it*.

In the hot climates of the...*south*, in dry and parched deserts, a stream of water must be ... *very refreshing*; that is the meaning of the passage.

*Sir, the shadow of a great rock is also refreshing.*

This child is very right; the refreshment and comfort Christ gives to...*his people*, is compared in Isaiah xxxii. 2. ... What is it compared to? *The shadow of a great rock in a weary land.* But we are now speaking about...*water* and ... *streams of water* as emblems, not...*shadows*.

Give me another passage. Next division, if you please?  
*Living fountains of water.*

Yes, living...*fountains*, not merely a stream but...*a fountain*. All is life that comes from ... *God*. Jesus Christ invites every one to come to him, and says, ... What does God say? "*Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price.*"

Who are invited to come? *All that thirst.*

Those who feel...*thirsty*. Like whom? *David*, who thirsted ... *after God*, like ... *the hart after the water brooks*.

Each division will take their turn regularly in giving the proofs, but the whole school will answer ... *simultaneously*. Go on.

"*With joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.*"—Isaiah xii. 3.

Very well, do you remember any thing that took place at Jacob's well?

*Yes, Jesus met a woman of Samaria there.*

And what followed?

*They sat down together on the well, on the wall or...seat erected ... round.*

For what purpose?

*For those who waited their turn.*



What did Jesus ask ? *A drink.*

We have no time to go through the story just now, for it is not the particular ... *lesson* for ... *this day* ; but do you remember what answer Jesus gave the woman ?

*"If thou hadst asked me, I would have given thee living water, which would have been in thee a well of...water springing up into everlasting life."*

So you see Jesus Christ has the power of giving ... *living water* ; he himself is that ... *living water*. Was it merely a drink Jesus promised the woman ? *No, sir, a spring.*

Observe, children, not merely a spring but...*a well*, springing ... *springing up into everlasting life*. What a beautiful promise ! which all of us, you and I, may have as well as ... *the woman of Samaria*. We could never feel the want of water if we had in...*our souls a...well of water*. A well too that would spring not merely to the surface of this...*earth*, but continue with us through...*everlasting life*.

Christ says, I will be in ... *thee a well of water*. Christ himself, therefore, is the ... *well* that could refresh the soul of David and the ... *woman of Samaria*, and ... *all*. All who ... *thirst*.

Have you any other passages ? Go on. There are others you may notice. You will remember Christ elsewhere is said to be a ... What is the head of a stream said to be ? *A fountain.*

Christ is said to be a...*fountain* or ... *head of a stream*. Do you remember what is said in Zechariah xiii. 1 ? If not, read it ; but repeat it if you can. *"In that day there shall be a fountain opened to the house of David and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, for sin and for all uncleanness."*

For all ... *uncleanness* ; for every thing that is ... *sinful* ; opened in the house of ... *David* (for Jesus, according to the... *flesh*, was of the family or ... *household of David*). That fountain opened to the house of David, is ever ... *full*, and ever ... *sufficient* to wash away ... *our sins*, and the sins of a ... *whole world*. Opened for me, and for us, and for ... *all*. In that verse you have quoted, it is said that the fountain was opened for the inhabitants of Jerusalem. Now, can you tell me what became of the inhabitants of Jerusalem ?



*They were destroyed by the Romans.*

Why? *For rejecting Christ.*

But the fountain, the fountain of Christ's ... *blood*, was opened for ... *them*. How, then, were they destroyed?

*Because they would not believe in Christ*—that he was the ... *Messiah*, the Son ... *of God*. They had no desire to bathe in ... *the fountain*, or to drink of the streams of ... What kind of water? *Living water*. They were not ... *athirst*; they, therefore, did ... *not come*; they would not receive ... *Christ*; they would not go ... *to Christ*; they ... What did the Jews do when Pilate asked if he might release Jesus? *They said, Away with him, away with him*. They would not receive Christ as their ... *Saviour*; they ... *rejected him*, and they ... *crucified him*; and, therefore, God sent ... *the Romans and destroyed them*. The inhabitants of Jerusalem were not like ... *David*. What did he do? In the lesson of to-day it is said ... *he panted after God*. But the Jews and the inhabitants of ... *Jerusalem* rejected ... *Christ*, the ... *Son of God*. They despised God's own ... *dear Son*. Then, children, what do we learn from this beautiful passage? ... That we should ... *pray* to be enabled to copy ... *the conduct of David*, who ... *longed and panted after God*, as *the hart pants after the water brooks*, who thirsted for ... *God*, and desired to hold ... *intercourse with Him*, as anxiously as ... *the hart for the water brooks*.

We shall now sing the first two verses of the 42d Psalm.

N.B.—Two or three questions, and a very few ellipses, will be found quite sufficient to analyze and bring out the meaning of two verses, before being sung, at each Bible training lesson, and which ought not to occupy more time than from three to five minutes. For the first few months, however, the trainer generally requires a little longer.

We had intended presenting the student with sketches of the outlines of a few Bible training lessons. Our limits, however, forbid their insertion. We must, therefore, refer to the smaller publication, "Bible Training," 6th edition.

## A SINGLE TERM PICTURED OUT.

## WISDOM.

The distinction between teaching and training, and the inefficacy of mere verbal answers to communicate ideas, without picturing out, will appear from the following statement :

There is no word more important, or less understood, than the term, WISDOM. We have put the question, What do you mean by wisdom? to children individually, and to large schools collectively, and the uniform answer has been, *Knowledge*. Knowledge, they say, is wisdom ; wisdom and knowledge are understood to be perfectly synonymous terms.

There are very many passages in Scripture in which "wisdom," "wise," &c. are mentioned, and these words form the key-stone of the whole lesson to be drawn. We have counted 311 of such passages, embracing the most important of all practical lessons. For example, the parable of the wise and foolish virgins ; the emblem, "be wise as serpents, and harmless as doves." "Wisdom's ways are ways of pleasantness." "So teach us to number our days, that we may apply our hearts unto wisdom." "Walk not as fools, but as wise." "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom," &c. &c.

We had occasion lately to visit three large schools, embracing together about 550 children, well instructed, but whose education had been conducted only a very short time, on the training or picturing out system. Each of the Bible lessons upon which we were invited to examine the children, included the terms, *wisdom* or *wise*, and in each case we put the question in some such way as follows : What is wisdom, children ? What do you mean by wisdom ? (Answer.) *Knowledge*. Any thing else ? *To know, Understanding*. Any thing more than knowledge and understanding ? *Instruction*. Wisdom, you say, children, is know-

ledge, and ... *instruction*, and ... *understanding*. Think, if wisdom be any thing besides knowledge. (Of course, these three points, knowledge, instruction, and understanding, were brought out by training, a slower process than *direct questioning*.) You think that to be wise is to...*have knowledge*. Now, children, I shall tell you that wisdom, or being wise, is something more than knowledge, instruction, or understanding.\*

Let me suppose that your father or mother were to come into this room just now, (I presume you would believe what your father or your mother said?)

Well, suppose that your father or mother, or any one, whose word you would believe, were to come into this room at this moment, and to say, Children, the house is burning above your heads. If you do not instantly run out by the door, you will be buried in the ruins, for the roof is just about to fall in. How would you feel? *Frightened*. Quite right, you would ... *be frightened* at knowing that the...*house was burning* above your ...*head*. Were I or any other person to tell you this. What would you have received? *A fright,—knowledge*. Some ... *information*. You would know that ... *the house was burning*. You would have received some ... *knowledge*. And you would also ... What would it be to you if stated plainly? You would ... *understand it*. You would both know and ... *understand* that the house was ... *burning*. And if you both knew and understood what the person said, what would that be to you? *Instruction*. Suppose, then, that you had been instructed and understood, and...*knew* that the house was burning at this moment, and the roof ready to fall about your ears, and that you sat still upon your seats. What then? (The whole children in each of the schools, partially perceiving their error, smiled or burst into laughter.)† Again, children, I ask you, What is wisdom? What is it to be wise? (No

---

\* This mere verbal explanation will be found not to convey the idea.

† The idea of knowledge being wisdom, or that to know is to be wise, is perfectly akin to the existing practical error in education, that moral instruction and moral training are the same thing.

answer.) Is it knowledge—understanding? Is it instruction? (Children are silent.) Is to know, and to understand, and to be instructed in a thing, wisdom? or is it something more? *Something more.* What, then, besides is wisdom? *Running out.* That is to say, were you to sit still when the roof was about to fall,...*in* upon your...*heads*, you would be ...*folly*. You would be...*fools*, or...*foolish*, but if you ran out, you would be...*wise*. To sit still would be ...*foolishness*, or...*folly*, and to run out would be...*wisdom*. Still I wish to know the meaning of the word wisdom. What do you mean by wisdom? *Doing.* Very right, children, wisdom is ...*doing*; but would you be doing any thing were you, instead of running out of the door, to run up stairs into the midst of the fire? Would that be doing? *Yes, sir, but that would be doing wrong.* You, would be...*burned*. You would be doing something, but you would be acting ...*foolishly*. You would not be...*wise*. You would not be acting wisely did you not ...*run out of the house*. You would say he is wise to...*run out*. Now, I ask, children, Is wisdom merely knowledge, understanding, and instruction? *No, sir, doing.* Doing what is...*right*. To do what is wrong is...*folly*. To do what is right is ...*wisdom*, or being...*wise*. We ought to be instructed in what ...*is right*, and we ought to know what...*is right*. and understand what...*is right*. Knowing and ...*understanding* a thing is not ...*wisdom*, until...until we...*do it*. To run out at the door were the house burning, would be ...*wisdom* or ...*wise*, it would be acting...*wisely*. What would be sitting still when you knew and understood that the house was burning? *Foolishness.*

Now, then, children, since you are satisfied that wisdom, or being wise, is not merely knowledge or...*understanding*, or...*instruction*, I shall give you a short answer to the question. What is wisdom? WISDOM IS THE RIGHT APPLICATION OF KNOWLEDGE. That is, to apply our knowledge properly is ...*wisdom*. Wisdom is the ...*right application of knowledge*. In the case we supposed of the house burning above ...*our heads*. To sit still would be ...*foolishness*. To run out would be...*wisdom*, or acting...*wisely*. To run up stairs into the midst ...*of the fire* would be...*wrong*. It would not be the...*right application of*

*knowledge.* The right use of the knowledge you had received was,...*to run out.* The wrong application of your knowledge would have been ... *to sit still*, or to run up...*stairs into the fire.* These boys or those girls who do what they know to be right, are ... *wise children.* A wise man is one who rightly uses ... *his knowledge.* Now, answer me, children, What is wisdom? *The right application of knowledge*, or the right...*use of knowledge.* A man may be said to be wise when he rightly...*uses his knowledge.\**

Other illustrations were made use of to fix the idea in the mind of the children ; such as, If a boy knew that by thrusting his finger into the fire, it would be burned, and did so, what would he be ? *A fool.* Knowing this and abstaining or refraining from doing so would be...*wisdom.* If a boy knew that by taking any particular food or drink, that he would be injured by it, and did so, he would be a...*fool.* Not taking such would be ...*wisdom*, or acting ...*wisely*, &c. &c.

This is what we term picturing out by familiar illustrations, and giving the idea before the technical phrase which expresses the idea ; devoid, however, as we have already stated, of the powerful effect of the eye, and action, and tones of voice of the trainer and scholars, which can be exhibited only in actual practice.

*Such a school training would render visible to the mind's eye innumerable points of Scripture, which in reading or hearing, are at present dark and unmeaning.*

Suppose the Bible lesson were, "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom ;" wisdom being clearly apprehended by every child present, the fear of a slave to a hard master, and the fear of a loving child to his parents, would next require to be pictured out, which, being done, the children by an easy process

---

\* Many may say, this picturing out system is too slow a process for us. We would save time by telling at once. Telling *at once*, however, had not accomplished the object. Our answer is this, The illustration, as now given, does not exhibit one half of the words that must be used by the trainer, and the tediousness of picturing out ought not be objected to, when it accomplished, at least in three several cases, that, which every variety of instruction had failed of doing.



would apprehend what is meant by "the fear of the Lord," and that this fear is the *beginning* or commencement of wisdom, or *practical* knowledge ; and so on through every passage in which such terms are used, and in which wisdom, wise, wisely, fools, foolishness, folly, appear.

SCRIPTURE CHARACTERS.—As a part of history, these may be rendered exceedingly interesting to the youth under your charge, by picturing out, or drawing out in conjunction with them (according to the system). First, the general outline of the character of the individual or party under consideration, and this as general as possible, provided you secure that the outlines of the history are before the mind's eye of the pupils. Then seize upon some *one point* from which a practical lesson may be drawn. Do not ramble over a number of points, far less the whole life of the person or party presented in the passage. One lesson well digested is worth twenty stuffed in a confused heap.

For example, having read the history of Josiah the king, (or if any passage happen to be too long to be read at one time, after having told the children the general outline), you may seize upon *his youthful piety as a king*, and draw the comparison between the temptations to which he was exposed in his exalted rank to what your pupils are exposed to in their humble circumstances, and yet Josiah was, &c.

In the history of David, *The spirit he manifested on his going forth against Goliath* may be sufficient for one lesson. *His holy and magnanimous conduct in sparing the life of Saul in the cave*, another. *His desire to build a temple to the Lord*, a third. *His punishment for saving the heathen enemies of God*, when he was commanded to destroy them, a fourth. *His sorrow at the death of Absalom*, a fifth ; and so on.

Absalom's vanity and rebellion, one lesson ; his death and the manner of it, another.

Daniel's perseverance in prayer, one point. His faithfulness as a ruler in Babylon, another. In the lion's den, a third.

Balaam prophesying, one lesson. His covetous spirit, another.

John's loving spirit. Peter's boldness. Thomas's unbelief. Timothy's early piety. The repentant thief on the cross, prov-



ing his entire change of heart. Our Saviour's whole life, point by point, from talking with the doctors, and asking them questions in a teachable spirit, till he expired on the cross, leaving us an example that we should follow his steps. Be content with the practical lesson (and [there is no lesson worth having which is not practical) that *any one point* may present day after day, availing yourselves, as formerly stated, of all the knowledge your pupils may have formerly acquired, and which, upon the principles of the system, you may readily develope, by asking a few questions interrogatively and elliptically.

#### GLORY, HONOUR, ETC.

We have seen that the term WISDOM is of frequent occurrence in Scripture. There are other terms also equally important to be pictured out. Our limits do not permit our giving any of these at length, or in the mode of training. For the sake of our students, however, we shall simply notice one or two. For example, SALVATION, OR SAVED, OR SAVIOUR. In these terms, there is a general, and there is a particular meaning. It is highly important that you picture out the general sense, in the first instance, as on such picturing out hinges much of the value of the particular or accepted sense. When I know that the person who saves me from drowning or from any danger or difficulty whatever, is to me *a* saviour; but that that person, benevolent and kind as he may be, cannot save me from sickness, or from the punishment of sin here or hereafter, I am better prepared for terming Jesus Christ *the* Saviour. The magnitude and value of the benefits to ourselves also are more easily apprehended and called up to the mind's eye, by the use of the terms, the SAVED or the SAVIOUR. Take the natural picture, therefore, before you draw the lesson of the text, and that during the very first passage in which such terms appear. Otherwise, or on the ordinary mode of teaching, the children must, in a great measure, take

upon trust what you state, instead of mentally seeing it for themselves.

Again, GLORY.—This is a term of frequent occurrence in sacred Scripture, and is frequently used in common life without any very definite meaning being attached. When a man is seen tipsy and unable to walk, we hear it said, he is in his glory. We hear of the glory of a warrior. Young persons are found to have a very confused idea of what is meant by the term being attached to those opposite characters. They have a slight notion, indeed, in regard to the latter, that it consists in his skill or bravery in war. Of the application to the former, they have no notion whatever. Again, that glory could be attached to a clock-maker for the high perfection of his time-pieces; or that a shoemaker may glory in making a superior shoe—a mechanic a piece of machinery; or that a florist may be said to be in his glory when his flowers are highly applauded,—the children do not comprehend; and yet nothing is more easy when you picture out the fact. What is that which each of the parties highly values? The drunkard, “his cups;” the warrior, his success in battle; the clockmaker, when he brings forth a superior time-piece; the shoemaker, a first-rate and most fitting article; the mechanic, his splendid and complex, yet simple construction of a moving apparatus; and the florist, in the bright display of his own culture. The children are even shocked when to any or all of these you apply the term glory—HIS GLORY.

You have only to bring out each man’s success in that which he most highly values, and the children will tell you that that is *his* glory. Now, the fact of the term being familiarly illustrated in the general sense is an excellent and almost necessary preparative for the particular sense. The Scriptural allusions to the *glory* of heaven—the glory of God being seen in the face of his Son Jesus—“Seek for glory honour, and immortal life,” these are the highest aims of the Christian, and, therefore, the children will readily tell you, when obtained, ... *are his glory*, “The heavens declare the glory of God.” Why? Can any created being on earth or in heaven create such a piece of mechanism? If not, then the glory must properly ... *belong to God*. The heavens show forth ... *the glory of God*. They

cannot be the work of any other ... *but God*. They show forth ... *his glory*. The same in regard to a blade of grass or the smallest insect.

Again, "Let not the rich man glory in his riches ; nor the strong man glory in his strength." An excellent lesson to commence with may be, "There is one glory of the sun, another glory of the moon," &c. The comparative light, one native, and the other borrowed, show the children at once their comparative *glories*. Doing "all things to the glory of God," or simply reflecting back upon himself his perfect work, which man since the fall is not inclined to do. Also, "Beholding as in a glass the glory of God, we are changed into the same image," the children will readily tell you when slowly and clearly pictured out (not told), that it is simply reflecting or sending back God's glory or work, as the face would send back the light from a burnished mirror, on which the person looks, or reflects the light as the moon does the brightness of the sun. All this, if patiently, and simply, and progressively pursued, is perfectly and easily accomplished with the children of an ordinary school.

HONOUR.—We would apply the same natural picturing out principle to this important term, and innumerable others that occur in sacred Scripture ; such as the honour of the world merely, and "the honour that cometh from God," &c.

All this intellectual process unquestionably will not change the heart, but these are the means or instruments through which the Divine Spirit may, and actually does work. What may be termed *dry* doctrines are not interesting to the young mind, we must give them a relish for that spiritual medicine which all are naturally disinclined to take. A sick child will not take the *dry pill* prescribed by the physician without a little jelly in the spoon. The natural emblem is the *jelly* which all children like—the lesson, the *pill* which they absolutely hate. Some modern educationalists would give nothing but *jelly*—the narrative—the narrative—but no lesson to be deduced. The children will of course take the jelly and leave the pill. Others, again, would give nothing but pills, no natural emblems, no picturing out, no *jelly*. In the Bible system of training, we propose always to give the pill (or draw the lesson) but beforehand to prepare a good spoonful of

jelly, into which the pill may be thrust, so that both may be swallowed. The pill to the bodily-sick child, and the doctrine to the soul-sick child, alike require the blessing of God to render them effectual for its recovery. Let us do our part,—God will do his. We are but instruments—He the omnipotent and gracious worker.

## CHAP. XVIII.

### SELECTIONS FROM SCRIPTURE.

*To be read from the Bible.*

#### STAGE I.

##### *Narrative, &c.\**

1. God formed man of the dust of the ground, in a holy and happy state; Gen. i. 26, 27.

##### *Precept, &c.*

1. All are of the dust and all turn to dust again; Eccl. iii. 28.

---

\* A great proportion of the narratives during the FIRST STAGE must be stated to the pupils simply and familiarly, as a mother would, who never distracts her children with more, at first, than the great outlines. These outlines, however, must be clearly given, and those points, in particular, on which the lesson hinges, must be fully pictured out, so as to enable the infant (in knowledge) of whatever age, to deduce the lesson *without being told*.

We have already stated that the substance of former lessons is made available to the one in hand, thus progressively and almost imperceptibly erecting a stable fabric in the mind of the child, on which to form habits of memory and reflection. All children possess, in an eminent degree, the power of observing actions and objects. It lies with the parent, or trainer, to direct the exercise of this power.

After this mode, then, at the end even of the sixth lesson, the child has been made acquainted with the creation of man as a holy and happy being, talking with God his Creator as a man would do to his friend; that he is of the dust, and that he must return to the dust again. Why? Because he fell from the holy and happy state in which he was created, by disobeying God—by taking his own way—fear entered his breast, and he hid himself among the trees of the garden, imagining that God did not see him there, or at least, forgetting that God is everywhere present. Jonah, participating in the same sinful nature of our first parents, and alike forgetting God, tried to flee from his presence when he was commanded to go and preach to the Ninevites. Next, the promise of a Saviour, who was to be born of a woman—that he actually was born as promised—Abraham's faith in that promise before it was fulfilled, which made him "glad;" in other words, it was gospel or glad news to him, and is so to all who, like him, believe in that promise. Subsequently, the effects of sin in Cain killing his brother Abel—the whole world becoming wicked, and destroyed by a flood, &c. &c.

*Narrative, &c.*

2. The fall of man—Adam and Eve hiding themselves; Gen. iii. 8.

3. The seed of the woman shall bruise the head of the serpent; Gen. iii. 15.

4. Cain killeth his brother Abel; Gen. iv. 8-12.

5. The sons of God married wives—daughters of wicked men; Gen. vi. 2.

6. God threatens to destroy the world by a flood in consequence of its great wickedness; Gen. vi. 3-8.

7. Noah built an ark for the saving of his house, and the preservation of every living creature; Gen. vi. 14-22.

8. God destroyed all flesh that dwelt upon the earth by a flood; Gen. vii.

9. One language in the world—building of Babel, and confusion of tongues; Gen. xi. 1-10.

10. Abraham called to leave his country and his kindred; Gen. xii. 1-9.

11. Abraham and Lot part; Gen. xiii. 1-13.

12. Abraham sought to save Sodom from destruction; Gen. xviii. 23-33.

13. Lot's wife turned into a pillar of salt; Gen. xix. 15-26.

*Precept, &c.*

2. The eyes of the Lord are in every place, beholding the evil and the good; Prov. xv. 3.

3. The Saviour is born of the Virgin Mary; Luke ii. 1-11. Jesus said, Abraham saw my day afar off, and was glad; John viii. 5, 6.

4. He that hateth his brother is a murderer; John iii. 15.

5. Evil communications corrupt good manners; 1 Cor. xvi. 33.

6. There is none righteous, no not one; Rom. iii. 10, 11.

7. The Lord is a refuge and present help in time of trouble; Psalm xli. 1-5.

8. The earth, and the works that are therein, shall be burned up; 2 Peter iii. 7-11.

9. There is no wisdom, nor understanding, nor counsel against the Lord; Prov. xxi. 30.

10. Now they seek a better country, that is, an heavenly; Heb. xi. 13-16.

11. The beginning of strife is as when one letteth out water; therefore leave off contention before it be meddled with; Prov. xvii. 14. In honour preferring one another; Rom. xii. 10.

12. The Lord heareth the prayer of the righteous; Prov. xv. 29. Ye are the salt of the earth; Matt. v. 13.

13. He that putteth his hand to the plough and looketh back, &c.; Luke ix. 62.



*Narrative, &c.*

14. Abraham offereth up his son Isaac; Gen. xxii. 1-19.

15. Isaac's industry and piety; Gen. xxvi. 17-25.

16. God's promise to Jacob in the vision of the ladder; Gen. xxviii. 10-22.

17. Joseph's dreams; Gen. xxxvii. 1-14.

18. Joseph cast into a pit by his brethren, and sold to the Ishmaelites for twenty pieces of silver; Gen. xxxvii. 17-30.

19. Joseph's brethren dip his coat in the blood of a kid, to deceive his father; Gen. xxxvii. 19-36.

20. Joseph advanced in Egypt by king Pharaoh; Gen. xli. 14-5.

21. Joseph's brethren treated as spies; Gen. xlii. 1-20.

22. Joseph's brethren said one to another, We are verily guilty concerning our brother, &c.; Gen. xlii. 21-29.

23. Joseph's brethren bring him presents, and bow themselves to the earth before him; Gen. xliii. 26-34.

24. Joseph maketh himself known to his brethren; Gen. lv. 1-19.

25. The children of Egypt oppressed in Egypt; Exod. v. 1-20.

26. Moses laid by the river's

*Precept, &c.*

14. God spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all; Rom. viii. 32.

15. Be diligent in business and fervent in spirit, serving the Lord; Rom. xii. 11.

16. In all thy ways acknowledge God, and he will direct thy paths; Prov. iii. 6.

17. The Lord usually revealed himself to his prophets in visions and dreams; Num. xii. 6-8.

18. Judas betrayed Jesus for thirty pieces of silver; Matth. xxvii. 3-5.

19. Beware of hypocrisy, for there is nothing covered that shall not be revealed; neither hid, &c.; Luke xii. 1-5.

20. All things work together for good to them that love God; Rom. viii. 28.

21. Be sure your sin will find you out; Num. xxxii. 23.

22. Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, &c.; James v. 16.

23. God putteth down one and setteth up another; Psal. lxxv. 7.

24. Render not evil for evil; 1 Thes. v. 15. If thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink; Romans xii. 20.

25. Envy not the oppressor, and choose none of his ways; Prov. iii. 31.

26. When my father and

*Narrative, &c.*

brink in an ark of bulrushes;  
Exod. ii. 3.

27. The passover; Exod. xii.  
1-13.

28. Pharaoh and his army  
drowned in the Red sea; Exod.  
xiv. 5-31.

29. Israelites protected by a  
pillar of cloud by day, and a  
pillar of fire by night; Exod.  
xiv. 19-21.

30. Moses' hand was held up  
in prayer, while Israel fought  
with Amalek; Exod. xvii. 8-  
16.

31. Moses receiveth the Ten  
Commandments, written on two  
tables of stone, from God on  
Mount Sinai; Exod. xx.

32. Aaron maketh a golden  
calf; Exod. xxxii. 1-9.

33. The report of the spies—  
The murmuring of the Israel-  
ites—The Lord declareth that  
all of twenty years, and up-  
wards, shall die in the wilder-  
ness; Num. xiv.

34. A man, contrary to the  
law, found gathering sticks on  
the Sabbath day; Num. xv.  
32-36.

35. Korah, Dathan, and  
Abiram swallowed up in conse-  
quence of their rebellion; Numb.  
xvi. 26-33.

36. Aaron and the priests  
first make a sacrifice for them-  
selves, and then for the people;  
Lev. xvi. 1-11.

37. Moses raised a brazen  
serpent on a pole, that all who

*Precept, &c.*

mother forsake me, then the  
Lord will take me up; Psal.  
xxvii. 10.

27. Christ, our passover, was  
sacrificed for us; 1 Cor. v. 7.

28. Though hand join in  
hand, the wicked shall not go  
unpunished; Prov. xi. 21.

29. The Lord is thy helper,  
the Lord is thy shade, &c.;  
Psal. cxxi. 5.

30. Pray without ceasing;  
1 Thess. v. 17. Be instant in  
prayer; Rom. xii. 12.

31. Jesus said, I am not come  
to destroy the law, but to fulfil;  
Matth. v. 17.

32. Children, keep yourselves  
from idols; 1 John v. 21.

33. Let us therefore fear,  
lest, a promise being left us of  
entering into his rest, any of  
you should seem to come short  
of it; Heb. iv. 1.

34. Remember the Sabbath  
day to keep it holy; Deut. v.  
12-15.

35. The wicked shall be  
turned into hell, and all the  
nations that forget God; Psal.  
ix. 17.

36. Christ needed not to  
sacrifice like the priest, first for  
his own sin. He offered him-  
self once for all; Heb. ix. 24-  
26.

37. As Moses lifted up the  
serpent in the wilderness, so

*Narrative, &c.*

looked at it might be cured of the sting of the fiery serpents; Num. xxi. 3-9.

38. Balaam rideth upon an ass with the princes of Moab, and considereth the bribe; Num. xxii. 21-24.

39. Moses views the promised land from the top of Mount Pisgah, and then dies; Deut. xxxiv. 1-8.

40. Joshua leadeth the children of Israel across the river Jordan; Josh. iv. 14-24.

41. The walls of Jericho fall by the blowing of the ram's horns, and Rahab the harlot\* saved from destruction, with her father's house; Josh. vi. 12-20.

42. Achan hideth the garment, shekels of silver, and wedge of gold in his tent; Josh. vii. 13-26.

43. Gideon overthroweth the army of Midian; Judg. vi. 15-24.

44. Ruth (afterwards grandmother to king David) cleaveth to Naomi, her mother-in-law; Ruth i. 14-19.

45. David anointed king by the prophet Samuel; 1 Sam. xvi. 1-13.

46. David cometh forth to meet Goliath; 1 Sam. xvii. 38-51.

*Precept, &c.*

shall the Son of man be lifted up, &c.; John iii. 4.

38. The love of money is the root of all evil; 1 Tim. vi. 10.

39. While we look not at the things which are seen, but, &c.; 2 Cor. iv. 18. There remaineth a rest to the people of God; Heb. iv. 9.

40. Though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil, for thou art with me, &c.; Psal. xxiii. 4.

41. By faith the walls of Jericho fell, &c.; Heb. xi. 30, 31.

42. There is nothing hid that shall not be known; Matth. x. 26.

43. The race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong; Eccl. ix. 11.

44. Bear ye one another's burdens, &c.; Gal. vi. 2.

45. The holy child Jesus was anointed King; Acts iv. 24-27.

46. Blessed is the man that maketh the Lord his trust, and respecteth not the proud; Psal. xl. 4.

---

\* The Hebrew word, here rendered harlot, also signifies an inn-keeper.

*Narrative, &c.*

47. David findeth his enemy, Saul, asleep in a cave; 1 Sam. xxiv.

48. David, the servant of Saul, the king; 1 Sam. xxix. 3.

49. Absalom conspireth against David, his father; 2 Sam. xv. 5-14.

50. Absalom caught by the hair in an oak, and slain by Joab; 2 Sam. xviii. 6-17.

51. David mourneth for his son Absalom; 2 Sam. xviii. 31-33; xix. 1-4.

52. Solomon, the king, built the temple of large stones, &c., and in which, while building, the sound of the hammer was not heard; 1 Kings v. 13-18, and vi. 7.

53. Solomon finished the temple at Jerusalem for the worship of God; 1 Kings vi. 14.

54. The greatness of Solomon; 1 Kings iv. 20-26.

55. Rehoboam's foolish conduct, and revolt of ten tribes; 1 Kings xii. 6-20.

56. Elijah fed by ravens; 1 Kings xvii. 2-7.

57. Elijah multiplieth the widow's handful of meal, and cruse of oil; 1 Kings xvii. 8-16.

58. Elijah raiseth the widow's son; 1 Kings xvii. 17-24.

59. Elijah carried up into

*Precept, &c.*

47. Avenge not yourselves, but rather, &c.; Rom. xii. 19.

48. Servants, be obedient to them that are your masters; Eph. vi. 5, 6.

49. Honour thy father and thy mother; Deut. v. 16.

50. It had been good for that man if he had not been born; Matth. xxvi. 24.

51. I will sing of mercy and of judgment; Psal. ci. 1.

52. In whom all the building, fitly framed together, groweth unto a holy temple, &c.; Eph. ii. 19-22.

53. The hour is come, when not merely at Jerusalem, but everywhere, the true worshippers may worship the Father in spirit and in truth; John iv. 20-24.

54. A greater than Solomon is here; Matt. xii. 42.

55. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom, but fools despise wisdom and instruction; Prov. i. 7.

56. Thy bread and thy water shall be sure; Isa. xxxiii. 15-17.

57. There is that scattereth, and yet increaseth, &c.; Prov. xi. 42.

58. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much; James v. 16.

59. Lazarus carried by the

*Narrative, &c.*

heaven by a whirlwind; 2 Kings ii. 9-15.

60. Forty-two children torn by two she-bears out of the wood, for their insolence to the aged prophet Elisha; 2 Kings ii. 19-25.

61. Naaman, the Syrian, at the command of Elisha, washeth himself seven times in the Jordan, and is cured of his leprosy; 2 Kings v. 13-15.

62. Gehazi, Elisha's servant, taketh an undue reward; 2 Kings v. 20.

63. Josiah, the youthful and good king; 2 Kings xxii. 1, 2.

64. Haman and Mordecai; Esth. v. 13, 14.

65. Job's patience and resignation under severe bereavements and bodily affliction; Job i. 20-22, and ii. 7-10.

66. Job curseth the day of his birth; Job iii. 1-6.

67. Job said, I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand on the latter day upon the earth, &c.; Job xix. 25.

68. David blesseth God for teaching his hands to war, and his fingers to fight; Psal. cxliv. 1-4.

69. Godliness, with contentment, is great gain; 1 Tim. vi. 6.

*Precept, &c.*

angels into Abraham's bosom; Luke xvi. 22-24.

60. Render to all their due—honour to whom honour; Rom. xiii. 7. Thou shalt rise up before the hoary head, and honour the face of the old man, and fear thy God, &c.; Lev. xix. 32.

61. Wash you, make you clean, &c.; Isa. i. 16-18.

62. Thou shalt not covet; Exod. xx. 17.

63. Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth, &c.; Eccl. xii. 1.

64. They have digged a pit, into which they themselves have fallen; Psal. vii. 11-15.

65. We know that tribulation worketh patience; Rom. v. 3, 4.

66. Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous; Heb. xii. 11.

67. Every eye shall see him, &c.; Rev. i. 7, 8.

68. If possible, live peaceably with all men; Rom. xii. 18.

69. Agar's prayer, Give me neither poverty nor riches, &c.; Prov. xxx. 1-9.

*Narrative, &c.*

70. Isaiah saw the glory of the Lord; Isa. vi. 1-5.

71. Isaiah prophesieth concerning Christ, in the form of a narrative, 719 years before he appeared; Isa. liii. 1-9.

72. Isaiah says, Come without money, and without price; Isa. lv. 1-3.

73. Jeremiah, the prophet, is cast into the dungeon of the court of the prison; Jer. xxxviii. 3-6.

74. The four Jewish children choose plain food to eat, and water to drink, at the court of Babylon; Dan. i. 5-20.

75. Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego cast into the fiery furnace; Dan. iii. 23-25.

76. Belshazzar's impious feast; the kingdom taken; Dan. v. 30, 31.

77. Daniel prayed three times a day, with his face turned towards Jerusalem; Dan. vi. 10, 11.

78. Daniel was cast into the den of lions, and remained unhurt; Dan. vi. 16-24.

79. Jonah fled from the presence of the Lord, and the Lord sent a great tempest in the sea; Jon. i. 3.

80. God prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah for his disobedience; Jon. i. 17.

*Precept, &c.*

70. The Christian, beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, is changed into the same image from glory to glory; 2 Cor. iii. 13-18.

71. Christ did no sin, and when he was reviled, he reviled not again, &c.; 1 Pet. ii. 22-25.

72. Jesus says, He that cometh to me, I will in no wise cast out; John vi. 37.

73. O Jerusalem, that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often, &c. Matt. xxiii. 37.

74. Every man who striveth for the mastery, is temperate in all things; 1 Cor. ix. 24, 25.

75. When thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burned; Isa. xliii. 2.

76. Thou fool, this night thy soul shall be required of thee; Luke xii. 20.

77. When thou prayest, enter into thy closet, &c.; Matt. vi. 6.

78. Through faith subdued kingdoms, &c., stopped the mouths of lions; Heb. xi. 33.

79. Whither shall I go from thy spirit, &c.; Ps. cxxxix. 7-12.

80. As Jonah was three days and three nights in the whale's belly, so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth; Matt. xii. 38-41.



## FROM THE NEW TESTAMENT.

*Narrative, &c.*

81. Jesus was born in a stable and laid in a manger ; Luke ii. 1-7.

82. The star in the east and the shepherds come to Bethlehem to worship the child Jesus ; Matt. ii. 1-6.

83. Joseph fleeth into Egypt with Jesus and Mary his mother ; Matt. ii. 11-23.

84. John the Baptist preacheth repentance, saying, The kingdom of heaven is at hand ; Matt. iii. 1-4.

85. Jesus, at twelve years of age, in the temple with the doctors ; Luke ii. 40-50.

86. Jesus, after twelve years of age, continued subject to his parents ; Luke ii. 51, 52.

87. Jesus tempted by Satan in the wilderness forty days and forty nights ; Matt. iv. 1-11.

88. Nathaniel believeth Jesus to be the Son of God, by his having been seen of him when not present ; John i. 43-51.

89. Jesus asketh a drink from the woman of Samaria at Jacob's well, and afterwards said, The water that I will give, shall be in thee a well of water springing up unto everlasting life ; John iv. 7-15.

90. Jesus blesseth little children, and saith, " Of such is the kingdom of God ;" Mark x. 12-16.

91. Christ chose twelve disciples, whom he ordained apostles ; Mark iii. 13-21.

*Precept, &c.*

81. Jesus had no permanent dwelling on earth—foxes have holes, &c. ; Luke ix. 57, 58.

82. Take heed to the word of prophecy, until the day dawn, and the day star arise, &c. ; 2 Pet. i. 16-21.

83. If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you ; John xv. 18-21.

84. Jesus said, My kingdom is not of this world ; John xviii. 36, 37.

85. My meat and my drink is to do the will of him that sent me ; John iv. 31-34.

86. Children, obey your parents in all things ; Col. iii. 7.

87. Resist the devil and he will flee from you ; James iv. 20.

88. Jesus knew all men ; John ii. 23-25.

89. Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, &c. ; Isa. lv. 1-3.

90. Those that seek me early shall find me ; Prov. ix. 17.

91. It is ordained that they who preach the gospel, have a right to live of the gospel ; 1 Cor. ix. 9-14.

*Narrative, &c.*

92. Jesus loved the amiable young man, but the young man loved his wealth more than he loved the authority of Christ; Mark x. 17-22.

93. Jesus cureth two blind men; Matt. ix. 27-31.

94. Jesus cureth a man's withered hand; Mark iii. 1-6.

95. Jesus raiseth from the dead the son of the widow at Nain; Luke viii. 11-18.

96. Jesus cured many of their infirmities, plagues, evil spirits, &c.; Luke vii. 20-22.

97. Jesus frequently retired to pray, and having many to pray for, he prayed long; Luke vi. 12.

98. Jesus was transfigured before Peter, James, and John, on a mountain, presumed to be Mount Tabor, and at night; Matt. xvii. 1-9.

99. Jesus wept at the grave of Lazarus; John xi. 35.

100. The old and new characters of Zaccheus; Luke xix. 1-10.

101. Jesus wept when he beheld the city of Jerusalem doomed to destruction for the wickedness of its people; Luke xix. 34-44.

102. Christ commanded the wind and the waves to cease, and instantly there was a calm; Mark iv. 35-41.

*Precept, &c.*

92. It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a man who trusts in riches to enter the kingdom of God; Mark x. 24, 25.

93. The Lord openeth the eyes of the blind; Psal. cxlvi. 5-10.

94. If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither would they be persuaded though one rose from the dead; Luke xvi. 29-31.

95. Jesus saith, I am the resurrection and the life; John xi. 20-27.

96. He is the same yesterday, and to-day, and for ever? Heb. xiii. 3.

97. Jesus taught his disciples to pray; Matt. vi. 9-13.

98. Paul, while journeying to Damascus, beheld a light from heaven, above the brightness of the sun, and a voice spake to him, saying, I am Jesus, &c.; Acts ix. 1-9, and xxvi. 12.

99. Rejoice with them that do rejoice, and weep with them that weep; Rom. xii. 15.

100. Owe no man any thing but love; Rom. xiii. 8.

101. In all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, &c.; Heb. ii. 16-18.

102. All power is given unto Jesus, in heaven and in earth; Matt. xxviii. 18.

*Narrative, &c.*

103. Jesus rideth into Jerusalem amidst the hosannahs of the multitude; Mark xi. 1-11.

104. Jesus desired to finish the work of him that sent him; John iv. 31-38.

105. The body of Christ laid in the tomb by Joseph of Arimathea; Luke xxiii. 50-56.

106. Christ riseth from the dead on the third day, being the first day of the week; Matt. xxviii. 1-15.

107. Jesus desireth Peter to feed his lambs and his sheep; John xxi. 14-17.

108. Jesus said, What if ye shall see the Son of man ascend up where he was before; John vi. 62.

109. The day of Pentecost; Acts ii. 1-15.

110. Peter and John cure a lame man; Acts iii. 1-12.

111. Awful death of Ananias and Sapphira; Acts v. 1-11.

112. Stephen, the first martyr, stoned to death; Acts vii. 54-60.

113. Saul's journey to Damascus, to persecute the Christians, and his conversion; Acts ix. 1-22.

114. Peter restoreth Dorcas to life; Acts ix. 36-43.

115. Herod putteth James

*Precept, &c.*

103. A murderer is preferred to our Saviour, and the multitude cry out, Crucify him; Mark xv. 12-20.

104. Jesus, having received the vinegar, said, It is finished, and bowed his head, and gave up the ghost; John xix. 28-30.

105. Thou shalt not suffer thy Holy One to see corruption; Acts xiii. 35.

106. At the last trump, we shall all be changed in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye; 1 Cor. xv. 49-55.

107. He shall gather the lambs with his arms, &c.; Isa. xl. 11.

108. Jesus ascendeth up into heaven; Luke xxiv. 50-53.

109. Another Comforter, who abideth for ever; John xiv. 16.

110. No man can do these miracles except God be with him; John iii. 2.

111. All liars shall have their part in the lake that burns with fire and brimstone, &c.; Rev. xxi. 8.

112. Cast thy burden on the Lord, he shall sustain thee; Psal. lv. 22.

113. Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter the kingdom of heaven; Matt. xviii. 3.

114. He that giveth to the poor, lendeth to the Lord; Prov. xix. 17.

115. Blessed are they that

*Narrative, &c.*

to death, and imprisons Peter, whom the Lord delivers; Acts xii. 1-17.

116. Herod dies, being eaten up of worms; Acts xii. 20-23.

117. Barnabas and Paul set apart, and sent to the Gentiles, Acts xiii. 1-3.

118. Paul and Silas in prison, and the jailor's conversion; Acts xvi. 19-34.

119. The Ephesians cry out, Great is Diana of the Ephesians; Acts xix. 23-35.

120. Felix trembled, and said, "Go thy way for this time," &c.; Acts xxiv. 24-27.

121. Paul appealeth to Cæsar; Acts xxvi. 24-32.

122. Paul is shipwrecked on his way to Rome; Acts xxvii. (The whole).

123. Paul, in the island of Melita, unhurt by a viper which came upon his hand; Acts xxviii. 1-6.

124. The noble Bereans searched the Scriptures daily; Acts xvii. 11.

125. The unfeigned faith of Timothy's grandmother Lois, and his mother, Eunice; 2 Tim. i. 5.

126. The apostle John was banished to the isle of Patmos, for the sake of the gospel, and was in the Spirit on the Lord's day; Rev. i.

*Precept, &c.*

are persecuted for righteousness' sake; Matt. v. 10.

116. Pride goeth before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall; Prov. xvi. 18.

117. Go and teach all nations; Matt. xxviii. 19.

118. There is no other name under heaven whereby we can be saved; Acts iv. 12.

119. Their idols are silver and gold; mouths have they, but they speak not, &c.; Psal. cxv. 3-8.

120. Now is the accepted time, now is the day of salvation; 2 Cor. vi. 2.

121. Ye shall be brought before governors and kings for my sake; Matt. x. 18.

122. Unless these abide in the ship, ye cannot be saved; Acts xxvii. 31. Work out your own salvation with fear and trembling, for, &c.; Phil. ii. 12, 13.

123. I give you power to tread upon serpents and scorpions; Luke x. 19.

124. Search the Scriptures, they testify of me; John v. 39.

125. Timothy from a child knew the Scriptures; 2 Tim. iii. 15.

126. I will never leave thee nor forsake thee; Heb. xiii. 5, 6.

## CHAP. XIX.

### SELECTIONS OF SCRIPTURE.

#### STAGE II.

#### FIRST WEEK, OR MONDAY.

##### OLD TESTAMENT BIOGRAPHY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Creation of Man ; Gen. i. 6-31.                             | Joseph's brethren bring him presents ; Gen. xliii.                             |
| Making of Woman ; Gen. ii. 3-28.                            | Joseph maketh himself known to his brethren ; Gen. xlv.                        |
| Fall of Man ; Gen. iii. 1-15.                               | Joseph presenteth his father and brethren before Pharaoh ; Gen. xlvii.         |
| Murder of Abel ; Gen. iv. 3-15.                             | Joseph's interview with his brethren after his father's death ; Gen. l. 15-21. |
| Translation of Enoch ; Gen. 21-24.                          | Joseph's death ; Gen. l. 24-26.  |
| Noah and the Flood ; Gen. ii. 1-24.                         | The finding of Moses ; Exod. ii. 3-10.   |
| Abram called ; Gen. xii. 1-9.                               | Korah, Dathan, and Abiram's rebellion ; Num. xvi.                              |
| Abraham and Lot part ; Gen. iii. 5-18.                      | Moses lifting up the brazen serpent ; Num. xxi. 1-9.                           |
| Lot's Wife punished ; Gen. ix. 12-29.                       | Balaam and the Angel ; Num. xxii.  |
| Abraham offereth up Isaac ; Gen. xxii. 1-19.                | Moses' death ; Deut. xxxiv.  |
| Esau sells his birthright ; Gen. xxv. 27-34.                | Joshua commands the sun to stand still ; Joshua x. 4-14.                       |
| Jacob obtains his father's blessing ; Gen. xxvii. 18-29.    | Samuel and Eli ; 1 Sam. iii.   |
| Jacob's name changed ; Gen. xxxii. 21-32.                   | Death of Eli, and his two sons ; 1 Sam. iv. 10-18.                             |
| Joseph cast into a pit by his brethren ; Gen. xxxvii. 1-24. | David and Goliath ; 1 Sam. xvii.   |
| Joseph sold to the Ishmaelites ; Gen. xxxvii. 25-36.        | Jonathan's love for David ; 1 Sam. xviii. 1-4, 20.                             |
| Joseph advanced in Egypt by Pharaoh ; Gen. xli. 14-46.      |  |

Saul's hatred of David ; 1 Sam. xviii. 5-16.	David's experience ; Psal. cxliv. 1-4.
Elijah and the Widow ; 1 Kings xvii.	Solomon's sermon ; Eccl. xii.
Elijah fed by ravens ; 1 Kings xvii.	Hezekiah's sickness ; Isa. xxxviii.
Elijah is taken up into heaven ; 2 Kings ii. 1-15.	Isaiah's vision ; Isa. vi. 1-4.
Naaman and Gehazi ; 2 Kings v.	Daniel and the three children ; Dan. i.
Manasseh's wicked reign ; 2 Kings xxi. 1-18.	Daniel in the lion's den ; Dan. vi.
Josiah, the good king ; 2 Kings xxii. 1-3.	Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, cast into the furnace ; Dan. iii.
Solomon's temple ; 2 Chron. i. ii. iii. iv. v. vi.	Belshazzar's impious feast ; Dan. v.
Esther made queen ; Esth. ii. 5, 8, 15, 20.	Jonah swallowed up by a fish ; Jonah i.
Haman and Mordecai ; Esth. following chapters.	Jonah's prayer and deliverance ; Jonah ii.
Job's trial of patience ; Job i. 2.	Jonah preacheth to the Ninevites ; Jonah iii.
	Jonah and the gourd ; Jonah iv.

## SECOND WEEK, OR TUESDAY.

### EMBLEMS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

Be ye not as the horse or the mule, which have no understanding ; Psal. xxxii. 9, 10.

As iron sharpeneth iron, so, &c. ; Prov. xxvii. 17.

Like grass which groweth up in the morning, and in the evening is cut down and withered ; Psal. xc. 4-6.

Now we see through a glass darkly ; 1 Cor. xiii. 11, 12.

I will refine thee as silver is refined ; Zech. xiii. 9.

All like sheep have gone astray ; 1 Peter ii. 25.

Feed my lambs—feed my sheep ; John xxi. 15-17.

I am the rose of Sharon, and the lily of the valley ; Song ii. 1.

Be wise as serpents, and harmless as doves ; Matt. x. 16.

Even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings Matt. xxiii. 37.

They shall mount up with wings as eagles ; Isa. xl. 28-31.



Joseph a fruitful bow by a well, &c. ; Gen. xlix. 22.

As a sow that is washed to her wallowing in the mire ; 2 Peter ii. 22.

As the hart panteth after the water brooks ; Psal. xlii. 1, 2.

Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots ? Jer. xiii. 23.

Like trees planted by a river ; Jer. xvii. 7, 8.

He shall be a hiding place from the wind, and a covert from the tempest ; Isa. xxxii. 2.

Like the shadow of a great rock in a weary land ; Isa. xxxii. 2.

Whole armour of God—loins girt about with truth—breastplate of righteousness—feet shod, &c. ; Eph. vi. 13-15.

Shield of faith—helmet of salvation—sword of the Spirit—prayer, &c. ; Eph. vi. 16-18.

Ye are the salt of the earth ; Matt. v. 13.

His right hand is full of righteousness ; Psal. xlviii. 10.

Being compassed about with a great a cloud of witnesses, let us run the race, &c. ; Heb. ii. 1, 2.

Ye are the light of the world ; Mat. v. 14.

Like rain upon the mown grass ; Psal. lxxii. 5, 6.

Christ is the door of entrance ; John x. 7-9.

The Lord is my stay ; Psal. xviii. 17, 18.

Like the heath in the desert—parched place in the wilderness—salt land not inhabited ; Jer. xvii. 5, 6.

Like a tree planted by the waters—leaf green—not ceasing from fruit ; Jer. xvii. 7-9.

As the partridge, &c. so he that getteth riches not by right shall have them in the midst of his days ; Jer. xvii. 9-11.

The wicked are like the troubled sea, which cannot rest, &c. ; Isa. lvii. 20, 21.

The stork knoweth her appointed time ; Jer. viii. 7.

Brotherly love—as the dew of Hermon ; Psal. cxxxiii. 1-3.

Like the fish pools in Heshbon ;\* Song vii. 4.

The Lord is thy shade upon thy right hand ; Psal. cxxi. 5.

Thy goodness as the morning cloud, and the early dew ; Hos. xiii. 1, 7.

\* The fish pools of Heshbon are thus described by a traveller :—"Two large pools, rising one above the other about five or six feet, and each occupying the space of one to two acres of ground ; built of white marble, bottom and sides ; water perfectly clear, and three or four feet deep. The water enters the highest pool, and an equal quantity flows into the lower pool ; and no more flows out from the lower pool than enters into the higher one.

"They are full of fish. Myriads of insects fly above the surface of the waters ; the leaping of the fish every instant at innumerable spots ; the flow of the transparent water from the tails of the fish in the act of leaping for their prey ; when the bright sun shines through these transparencies, gives to both the pools the aspect of two immense diamonds."

Is not my word like a fire,  
and a hammer that breaketh  
the rock in pieces ; Jer. xxiii.  
29.

As vinegar to the teeth, and  
as smoke to the eyes, so is the  
 sluggard to them that send  
him ; Prov. x. 26.

Go to the ant, thou sluggard ;  
Prov. vi. 6-11.

Keep me as the apple of  
thine eye ; Psal. xvii. 8 ;  
Deut. xxxii. 10.

Building fitly framed toge-  
ther ; Eph. ii. 19-22.

Compass me about like bees ;  
Psal. cxviii. 8-14.

Though yoursins be as scarlet,  
&c. ; Isa. i. 16-18.

In thee a well of water  
springing up, &c. ; John iv.  
13-15.

It is easier for a camel to go  
through a needle's eye, than for  
them that trust in riches, &c. ;  
Mark x. 23-25.

My horn shalt thou exalt ;  
Psal. xcii. 9, 10.

As the eagle stirreth up her  
nest, &c. ; Deut. xxxiii. 10-12.

The wilderness and the soli-  
tary place shall be glad, &c. ;  
Isa. xxxv. 1, 2.

The parched ground shall be  
as a pool, and the thirsty land  
springs of water ; Isa. xxxv.  
5-9.

I wait more than they that  
watch for the morning ; Psal.  
cxxx. 5-7.

I am become like a bottle in  
the smoke ; Psal. cxix. 83.

The bruised reed and the  
smoking flax thou shalt not,  
&c. ; Isa. xlii. 3 ; Matt. xii.  
17-21.

In the shadow of thy wings  
will I rejoice ; Psal. lxiii. 6-8.

The righteous shall flourish  
like the palm tree, and like the  
cedar of Lebanon ; Psal. xcii. 12.

Bray a fool in a mortar, &c. ;  
Prov. xxvii. 22.

Like grass upon the house-  
tops ; Psal. cxxxix. 6.

God is my fortress, high  
tower, &c. ; Psal. cxliv. 2.

God is my refuge, &c. ;  
Psal. xli. 1-3.

A sun and a shield, &c.  
Psal. lxxxiv. 9-12.

The sun like a bridegroom  
coming out of his chamber  
Psal. xix. 4-6.

Out of the pit and the miry  
clay, and set my feet on a rock  
&c. ; Psal. xl. 2.

Who is this that cometh out  
of Edom with dyed garments  
&c. ; Isa. lxiii. 1-5.

Fountain of living waters  
Jer. ii. 13.

Although the fig tree shall  
not blossom, &c. ; Hab. iii. 17

---

How splendid and just is every emblem used by the Spirit of God in representing Christ and his Church ! Before we were informed of these facts, we felt no very pleasing association while reading the emblem, 'Like the fish pools of Heshbon.' So important is it that the Bible trainee should furnish himself with a thorough knowledge of the manners, customs, and history of eastern nations, ancient and modern.

As stubble before the wind,  
and as chaff, &c.; Job xxi.  
17, 18.

His face shone as the sun;  
Matt. xvii. 1-8.

The ox knoweth his owner,  
and the ass, &c.; Isa. i. 3.

He that is slow to anger is  
better than he that taketh a  
city; Prov. xvi. 32.

Lead me to the rock which  
is higher than I; Psal. lxii. 2-4.

The hypocrite's trust a spi-  
der's web; Job viii. 13.

As cold waters to a thirsty  
soul, so, &c.; Prov. xxv.  
25.

Cast thy bread upon the  
waters, &c.; Eccl. i. 4.

Our days are as a shadow;  
1 Chron. xxix. 15.

Rivers of thy pleasures;  
Psal. xxxvi. 8.

### THIRD WEEK, OR WEDNESDAY.

#### NEW TESTAMENT BIOGRAPHY, AND PARABLES OF OUR LORD.

The nativity of Christ; Lu. ii.  
The shepherds of Bethlehem;  
Luke ii. 1-20.

Wise men of the east; Matt.  
ii. 1-10.

Joseph fleeth into Egypt;  
Matt. ii. 11-23.

John preaching in the wil-  
derness; Matt. iii.

Simeon and Anna's prophecy  
regarding Christ; Luke ii.  
25-38.

Christ with the doctors;  
Luke ii. 40-52.

Jesus tempted in the wilder-  
ness; Matt. iv. 1-11.

Jesus blesseth little children;  
Mark x. 13-16.

Christ at Jacob's well; John  
iv. 1-40.

Peter's denial of Christ;  
Matt. xxvi. 57-75.

Christ's entry into Jerusa-  
lem; Mark xi. 1-11.

Christ's transfiguration; Mat.  
xvii. 1-13.

Christ institutes the Holy  
Supper; Matt. xxvi. 1-35.

Christ's agony in the gar-  
den; Matt. xxvi. 36-46.

Judas betraying Christ;  
Matt. xxvi. 46-56.

Jesus crowned with thorns;  
Matt. xxvii.

Christ crucified; John xix.

Christ's resurrection; Matt.  
xxviii.

Christ's ascension; Acts i.  
1-14.

Zaccheus the publican; Luke  
xix.

The good shepherd; John x.  
Ananias and Sapphira; Acts  
v. 1-11.

Stephen's history of the children of Israel ; Acts vii.

Stephen stoned to death ; Acts vii. 54-60.

Saul on the way to Damascus ; Acts ix.

Philip and the Eunuch ; Acts viii. 26-40.

Peter delivered from prison ; Acts xii.

Paul at Damascus ; Acts ix.

Paul's sufferings ; 2 Cor. xi. 23-28.

Paul and Silas in prison ; Acts xvi. 25-34.

Eutychus restored to life ; Acts xx.

Herod's pride and death ; Acts xii. 20-25.

Dorcas raised to life ; Acts ix. 36-43.

Timothy's character ; 2 Tim. i. 14 ; ii. 17.

#### THE PARABLES OF OUR LORD ARRANGED ALPHABETICALLY.

Debtors, the two, or gratitude for pardoning mercy ; Luke vii. 40-48.

Fig tree, "or unprofitableness under the means of grace ; Luke xiii. 6-9.

House on the rock, and on the sand, or the consistent and the false profession of the Gospel ; Matt. vii. 24-27.

Husbandmen killing the son of the householder, or the wickedness of the Jews ; Matt. xxi. 33-41.

Leaven, or the spread of the Gospel ; Matt. xiii. 33.

Mustard seed, or the spread of the Gospel ; Matt. xiii. 31-32.

Marriage feast, or the offer of salvation, and its treatment by infidelity and hypocrisy ; Matt. xxii. 1-13.

Net cast into the sea, or the design of the Gospel dispensation ; Matt. xiii. 47-50.

Pearl of great price, or the value of the Gospel ; Matt. xiii. 45, 46.

Piece of silver lost and found, or the mercy of Christ to sinners ; Luke xv. 8-10.

Prodigal son, or welcome to penitent sinners ; Luke xv. 11-32.

Publican and pharisee, or acceptable and rejected worshipper ; Luke xviii. 9-14.

Pounds given to trade with, or diligence rewarded, and sloth punished ; Luke xix. 12-26.

Rich fool, or the misery of worldliness ; Luke xii. 16-21.

Rich man and Lazarus, or the end of sensuality ; Luke xvi. 20-31.

Sheep, the lost, or the restoration of the sinner the design of Christ's coming ; Matt. xviii. 11-14.

Servant, the cruel, or the sin of not forgiving others ; Matt. xviii. 21-35.

Sower, or the hearers of the word ; Matt. xiii. 3-9.

Steward, the unjust, or preparation for the future ; Luke xvi. 1-10.

Samaritan, the good, or compassion to our brethren ; Luke x. 30-37.

Shepherd the good, or the character of Christ ; John x. 11-16.

Treasure hid, or the value of the Gospel ; Matt. xiii. 44.

Tares among the wheat, or bad among the good in this world ; Matt. xiii. 24-30.

Talents given to tradé with,

or diligence rewarded and sloth punished ; Matt. xxv. 14-30.

Vineyard, labourers in the, or the Gentiles admitted to equal privileges with the Jews ; Matt. xx. 1-16.

Virgins, the ten, or true and false profession of the Gospel ; Matt. xxv. 1-13.

Widow, the importunate, or prevailing prayer ; Luke xviii. 1-8.

#### PARABLES IN THE OLD TESTAMENT.

The trees making a king ; Judges ix. 7.

The poor man's ewe lamb ; 2 Sam. xii. 1.

Two brothers striving together ; 2 Sam. xiv. 6.

The prisoner that made his escape ; 1 Kings xx. 39.

The thistle and the cedar ; 2 Kings xiv. 9.

The church represented as a vine and a vineyard ; Psal. lxxx. 8-16.

The vineyard yielding wild grapes ; Isa. v. 1.

### FOURTH WEEK, OR THURSDAY.

#### MORAL DUTIES, ETC., FROM BIBLE EXAMPLES AND PRECEPTS, PROMISES, ETC.

Christ's early piety ; Luke i. 46, 47.

Christ's obedience to his earthly parents ; Luke ii. 51.

Christ's humility and lowliness of mind ; Matt. xi. 29.

Christ's self-denial ; Phil. ii. 7, 8.

Christ's contentment in a mean condition ; Luke ix. 58.

Christ's submitting to be a carpenter ; Mark vi. 3.

Christ's readiness to forgive injuries ; Luke xxiii. 34.

Christ's zeal for the public worship of God ; Luke iv. 16.

Christ's love and practice of the divine commands ; John iv. 34.

Christ's subjection to government ; Matt. xvii. 27.

Search the Scriptures; John v. 39; Acts xvii. 11.

Forgiving spirit; Luke xxiii. 34; Acts vii. 54-60.

Stealing; Ex. xx. 15; Josh. vii.

Sabbath breaking; Exod. xx. 8; Num. xv. 30-37.

Obedience to parents, and the reverse; Col. iii. 20; 2 Sam. xviii.

Lying; Zech. viii. 16; Eph. iv. 25; Acts v. 1-11.

Envy; 1 Pet. ii. 1; Gen. xxxvii. 5.

Prayer; 1 Thes. v. 17; Dan. ix.

Praising God; Psal. cxiii. 1; Acts xvi. 25.

Love one another; John xv. 12; 1 Sam. xviii. 1-4, 20.

Mocking; Prov. xxx. 17; 2 Kings ii. 23-25.

Alms-giving; Luke xi. 41; Acts x. 2.

Speaking guile; Psal. xxxiv. 13; John i. 47.

Murder; Exod. xx. 13; Matt. xiv. 6-11.

Covetousness; Exod. xx. 17; 2 Kings v. 20-27.

Hospitality; Rom. xii. 13; Gen. xviii. 1-8.

Pride; Jer. xiii. 17; Acts xii. 23; Prov. xvi. 18.

Drunkenness; Eph. v. 18; Isa. v. 11-22.

Swearing; Exod. xx. 7; 2 Sam. xvi. 1-14.

Early Piety; Eccl. xii. 1; 2 Tim. iii. 15.

Humility; 1 Pet. v. 5; Luke xviii. 9-14.

The Golden Rule; Matt. vii. 12; 1 Sam. xx. 35-42.

Walking with God; Deut. v. 33; Gen. v. 22-24.

Obedience to God's law; John xiv. 15; John iv. 34.

Diligence in doing good; 2 Thess. iii. 13; Acts x. 38.

Submission to superiors; Heb. xiii. 17; Matt. xvii. 27.

Duty of servants; Titus ii. 9. Ingratitude; Gen. xl.

Worldly-mindedness; 2 Tim. iv.

Delaying repentance; Acts xxiv.

Choosing the good part; Luke x.

Patience, Job; Job i.

Obedience to parents—Rechabites; Jer. xxxv.

Be not overcome of evil; Rom. xii. 24.

If sinners entice thee, &c.; Prov. i. 10.

Be not wise in your own eyes; Prov. ii. 7.

Enter not into the path of the wicked; Prov. iv. 14-19.

A soft answer turneth away wrath; Prov. xv. 1, 2.

He that hath pity on the poor, &c.; Prov. xix. 17.

Even a child is known by his doings; Prov. xx. 11-13.

Feed my lambs; John xxi. 15.

Whoso curseth his father or his mother; Prov. xx. 20.

When rebuked of God, faint not; Heb. xii. 3-5.

Set your affections on things above; Col. iii. 2.

Resist the devil, and he will flee from you; James iv. 7.

Be not weary in well doing, for, &c.; Gal. vi. 9.

If possible, live peaceably with all men; Rom. xii. 18.



## FIFTH WEEK, OR FRIDAY.

## MIRACLES FROM THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENT.

The plagues of Egypt; Exod. vii. viii. ix. and x.

Slaying the first born; Exod. xii. 29.

Moses divideth the Red Sea; Exod. xvi. 21.

The Egyptians drowned; Exod. xiv. 23.

Quails and manna sent; Exod. xvi. 11.

Water brought out of the rock; Exod. xvii. 1.

Miraculous healing of the Israelites; Num. xxi. 7.

Korah, Dathan, and Abiram swallowed up by an earthquake; Num. xvi. 31.

Jordan divided; Josh. iii. 14.

The walls of Jericho fall down; Josh. vi. 20.

The sun standing still; Josh. x. 12.

The sun darkened; Luke xxiii. 44.

Elijah fed by ravens; 1 Kings xvii. 1.

Elijah multiplieth the widow's oil and meal; 1 Kings xvii. 8.

Elijah raiseth the widow's son; 1 Kings xvii. 17.

Elisha multiplieth the widow's oil; 2 Kings iv. 1.

Elisha raiseth the Shunammite's son; 2 Kings iv. 18.

Naaman's leprosy cured; 2 Kings v. 1.

Elisha causeth iron to swim; 2 Kings vi. 1.

## MIRACULOUS EXERCISE OF CHRIST'S POWER.

In giving sight to the blind.

Two at Capernaum; Matt. ix. 27-29.

Several at the sea of Galilee; Matt. xv. 30.

Two on leaving Jericho; Matt. xx. 29-34.

One on going to Jericho; Luke xvii. 35-43.

One in the Temple; John ix. 1.

In curing the lame.

Several at the sea of Galilee; Matt. xv. 30.

In curing the dumb.

One at Capernaum; Matt. xii. 22-25.

Several at the sea of Galilee; Matt. xv. 30.

Another there; Mark vii. 31-36.

In curing fever.

On Peter's mother-in-law; Matt. viii. 14, 15.

On the nobleman's son; John iv. 46-54.

In curing dropsy.

On a man in the Pharisee's house; Luke xiv. 1-4.

In curing leprosy.	The daughter of Jairus ;
On a man at Capernaum ;	Luke viii. 54, 55.
Matt. viii. 2, 3.	Lazarus of Bethany ; John
Ten in the region of Galilee ;	xi. 1-44.
Luke xvii. 12-19.	In changing water into wine.
In curing a withered hand.	At Cana of Galilee ; John ii.
On a man in Galilee ; Mark	1-11.
iii. 1-5.	In walking on the sea.
In curing long-continued ma-	The sea of Galilee ; Matt.
ladies,	xiv. 25-29.
Of twelve years' standing ;	In stilling the tempest.
Matt. ix. 20.	Sea of Galilee ; Matt. viii.
In curing the palsy.	26.
On the Centurion's servant ;	In increasing the loaves and
Matt. viii. 6.	fishes.
In curing Satanic possession.	In the desert ; Matt. xv. 34-
Two men of the Gergesenes ;	39.
Matt. viii. 28.	And again ; John vi. 9-14.
The Canaanite's daughter ;	In procuring the large draught
Matt. xv. 22.	of fishes.
The man at the Mount of	At the sea of Galilee ; Luke
Transfiguration ; Matt. xvii. 18.	v. 6-9.
The woman with the spirit	In sending the fish with the
of infirmity ; Luke xiii. 11.	money.
In restoring an ear cut off.	At the sea of Galilee ; Matt.
The High Priest's servant ;	xvii. 27.
Luke xxii. 50, 51.	In paralysing and restoring the
In raising the dead.	soldiers.
The widow of Nain's son ;	In the garden of Gethse-
Luke vii. 12-15.	mane ; John xviii. 6-8.

## SIXTH WEEK, OR SATURDAY.

### SACRED GEOGRAPHY—PROPHECIES RESPECTING CHRIST, ETC.

Ethiopia, Gen. ii.	Gaza, Gen. x.
Assyria, Gen. ii.	Sodom and Gomorrah, Gen. x.
Euphrates, Gen. ii.	Babel, Gen. xi.
Nod, Gen. iv.	Ur of the Chaldees, Gen. xi.
Mountains of Ararat, Gen. viii.	Canaan, Gen. xi.
Nineveh, Gen. x.	Bethel, Gen. xii.
Sidon, Gen. x.	Plain of Jordan, Gen. xiii.

Zoar, Gen. xiv.  
 Salem, Gen. xiv.  
 Damascus, Gen. xv.  
 Plains of Mamre, Gen. xviii.  
 Beer-sheba, Gen. xxii.  
 Hebron, Gen. xxiii.  
 Mesopotamia, Gen. xxiv.  
 Haran, Gen. xxiii.  
 Mount Gilead, Gen. xxxii.  
 Bethlehem, Gen. xxxv.  
 Edom, Gen. xxxvi.  
 Egypt, Gen. xli.  
 Goshen, Gen. xlvii.  
 Red Sea, Exod. xiv.  
 Moab, Exod. xv.  
 Wilderness of Sin, Exod. xvi.  
 Mount Sinai, Exod. xix.  
 Journey of the Israelites, Num.  
 xxxiii.  
 Babylon, Jer. xxviii. 4.  
 Judea, Luke xxi. 21.  
 Land of Israel, 2 Kings v. 2.  
 Samaria, John iv. 9.  
 Galilee, Mark xiv. 28.  
 Cesarea, Matt. xvi. 13.  
 Nazareth, Luke ii. 51.

Dalmanutha, Mark viii. 10.  
 Sarepta, Luke iv. 26.  
 Nain, Luke vii. 11.  
 Bethany, Luke xxiv. 50.  
 Bethsaida, Matt. xi. 21.  
 Tyre, Isa. xxiii. 1.  
 Capernaum, John iv. 46.  
 Cana, John ii. 1.  
 Magdala, Matt. xv. 39.  
 Sea of Tiberias, John vi. 1.  
 Lake of Gennesaret, Luke v. 1.  
 Jordan, Matt. iii. 13.  
 Rome, Acts xxiii. 11.  
 Spain, Rom. xv. 24.  
 Patmos, Rev. i. 9.  
 Jerusalem, Luke xiii. 34.  
 Athens, Acts xvii. 22.  
 Damascus, and Paul's Travels,  
 Acts.  
 Zion, Isa. lxiv. 10.  
 Syria, Matt. iv. 24.  
 Persia, Dan. x. xiii.  
 Lebanon, Psal. xcii. 12.  
 Arabia, Gal. i. 1.  
 Joppa, Acts x. 5.

## MOUNTAINS.

Calvary—Jesus Christ was crucified; Luke xxiii. 33.

Olivet—Jesus ascended up to heaven; Acts i. 12.

Ararat—Noah's Ark rested; Gen. viii. 4.

Gilead—Laban overtook Jacob; Gen. xxxi. 21.

Sinai—God gave the ten commandments; Exod. xix. 18.

Horeb—the Lord appeared to Moses in a bush of fire; Exod. iii. 1.

Pisgah—Balak took Balaam

to curse God's people; Numb. xxiii. 14.

Carmel—the Lord answered Elijah by fire; 1 Kings xviii. 20.

Gilboa—Saul and his sons were killed; 1 Chron. x. 8.

Moriah—Solomon built the temple; 2 Chron. iii. 1.

Lebanon—Moses prayed to see it before he died; Deut. iii. 23.

Tabor—The armies of Barak and Sisera met; Judges iv. 12.

## BIBLE GEOGRAPHY.

*Journey of the Israelites from Egypt to the Promised Land.—*

This may commence from Pharaoh's giving Jacob's family the land of Goshen to dwell in ; see Genesis, chapter xlvii., and carried forward through Exodus, &c. The judicious trainer, whether he reads a passage from the Bible to the children, as in infant schools, or allows the children to read to him, and in the hearing of all the scholars, as in the Juvenile School, will, of course, select for each successive day such passages as their minds can be exercised upon with propriety, and as bear in some measure upon the progress of the journey—causing the children to point out, on the map, the various positions of the Israelites, as the history proceeds—giving also familiar illustrations, to elucidate the different points and particulars of the narrative.

## CHAP. XX.

### ELEMENTS OF SCIENCE.—SECULAR TRAINING LESSONS.

ALL education must be incomplete, which does not prepare man for the duties of this life, and the enjoyments of another. In this view of education, it requires little argument to prove that science, or a knowledge of secular things, forms an essential ingredient (for this life at least), and which, as a distinct branch, we consider has been too long neglected in elementary schools.

It is evident, that although some points of science, from observation, reading, and conversation, do force themselves upon the young mind, and may be made available when a person attends a course of public lectures in after life; yet, the fact of his knowledge having been gathered up at random, without arrangement or system, leaves him in the dark as to the basis on which all, or any science, rests.

In the preceding chapters, we have endeavoured to prove the importance of this principle in religious matters, and now we must shortly apply it to secular education.

That science ought to form a distinct branch of education and training, even for the children of the poor and working classes, will appear, when we consider the importance of servants, workmen, and mechanics, having a correct idea of things and scientific terms. In regard to the first of this class, for example, in ventilating a room

or a church, how many colds in the head and stiff necks might be prevented, and how much dust and coals saved in *poking* a fire ! The workman would know better the meaning of relative terms, even in the drudgery of manual labour, and he might be left to execute much by a simple order scientifically expressed, which he cannot now do without the closest superintendence ; and although the mechanic must have acquired a practical knowledge, at least, of the terms and science of his particular profession, yet, early school training in science and scientific terms, would have expanded and exercised the mind of many a mechanic, humble in rank, but of powerful intellect, so as to have produced many more James Watts than we now have, whose genius and discoveries might enrich mankind, and add to the domestic and social comfort of all. How difficult it is to get a workman out of a beaten track, or if he be a genius to fix him in any track at all !

#### THE MODE.

The mode of conducting a scientific training lesson is precisely the same as in Bible training, and it is unnecessary to repeat particularly what has been already stated. The principle is this, that facts must be told the pupils, of which they show themselves ignorant, but not the lesson to be drawn. The master trains the children from facts they already know, or which he may communicate at the time, till they arrive at the conclusion to which he wishes to lead them, and which the children will draw for themselves, if the premises be properly laid, and expressed in language within their comprehension. Picturing out, therefore, is necessary in secular as well as



in Bible training. Science, valuable in itself, greatly assists Bible training;—for example, in secular training, it may be the child knows nothing of the difference in power between the right hand and the left, or the gravitation of matter in the scales of a balance. These must be told and pictured out to the child as new facts, and applied in Bible training, when in describing the greatness and power of God, it is said, “His right hand doth valiantly,” and “He weigheth the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance.” Again, a knowledge of the qualities of salt in preserving animal substances from putrefaction, enables us to perceive the meaning and force of the emblem, “Ye are the salt of the earth.” And again, the mode of refining silver ore, by subjecting it to fire in a crucible, and the fact that it is only *fully* refined when the silversmith can see his face reflected on its surface, assist us to understand the force of the expression, “I will refine thee as silver is refined.” The lessons to be drawn refer more particularly to our relation to God, and our prospects for eternity, while abstract science refers exclusively to this life. But the right exercise of all our powers, intellectual as well as moral, is a duty we owe to Him who created us, and we are not at liberty to leave dormant, powers by which, the more they are exercised agreeably to His will, in regard to the works of nature, the more we discover proofs of his wisdom and goodness in the adaptation of every flower of the field, and animal and mineral substance, to the circumstances in which they are placed, and the purposes for which they were designed. The more we explore nature, the more does God appear in it, and the more clearly does his revealed will appear to be the gift of the same all-wise and benignant Being.

There are few secular lessons properly pictured out, especially in natural history or science, from which a distinct moral lesson may not be drawn.

The black board, and pictures, and objects, must, of course, be more frequently used and referred to, than in Bible training. The object and the diagram require to be more frequently present to the eye, consequently written examples of the system pursued must be more imperfectly exhibited in secular than in Bible training, imperfect as both must necessarily be in the absence of the *eye, hand, and living voice*.

Questions and ellipses, and analogy, and (*familiar*) illustrations are alike requisite in conducting the lessons of each of these departments of the daily lessons, and both ought equally to be an intellectual exercise, independently of the practical, or moral, or spiritual lessons, to be deduced.

## EXAMPLE I.

### STAGE I.

#### THE CAMEL.

Now, children,\* you see this picture (presenting the picture of a camel, if you have one, but if not, you must describe its

---

\* No lesson is proceeded with until the children are physically and intellectually drilled into order. See Notes, stage I. "Man with the withered hand." At the end of every point of the lesson, also, some slight physical movements are requisite, such as stretching out arms simultaneously twice or thrice, rising up and sitting down, clapping of hands, &c. varied according to the age and condition of the feelings of the children. Some of these are absolutely requisite before, and during the progress of every lesson, but the most powerful means of securing the attention are the trainer's action and varying his *tones* of voice.

omparative size with some animal they are acquainted with, noticing also the peculiar hunches upon its back.) What is the name of this animal? *It is called the camel.* Camel is the name of this...*animal.* The camel, children, lives in hot countries, such as Arabia. Arabia is a very...*hot country* in Asia, where there are hot sandy deserts, in which there are neither trees nor... *grass.* The camel, children, has feet, and legs, and ... (pointing to the parts) *a head*, and ... *a back*, as every animal has. *What a lump on its back, master!!* This is a ...*lump.* Do you remember the name I gave to that lump? I called it a hunch. A great ... *hunch*, and that is a ...*lump*, or ... *hunch.* How many hunches has it got? *Two.* It has got ...*two hunches on its back.* This one is on ... Where is this one near? Supposing this boy went on all fours, that is, suppose this boy walked on his hands and ... *feet*, and a hunch were above this place. What do you call this place? *Shoulders.* The camel, then, has a hunch upon ...*its shoulders*, or close behind...*its shoulders*, and another upon ... What is this? *Tail.* Is this the tail? *Back, sir.* It is upon its...*back*, near...*the tail*, but not...*upon the tail.*

Now, then, children, I shall tell you something more\* about this wonderful animal. *It has got crooked hind legs, sir.* Very right, my little girl, the camel has got very broad strong... *hind legs*, which look as if they were...*crooked*, and in the next lesson we have upon the camel, we shall say something about the use of what appears a crook in its...*legs*, its hind...*legs*, and you will be better able to understand the reason then, than you would just now.† Well, let me tell you, that the camel has got in its body, very fine hair of a light brown colour, called... What would you call the hair that grows upon the camel? (No answer.) What would you call the hair that grows upon a cow? *Cow hair.* Now, answer me. What would you call the hair that grows upon a camel? *Camel hair.* This hair, children,

---

\* Some slight physical exercises.

† We give the outlines first. See *passim*. At the same time acknowledge the answers and observations of the children.

is made into cloth, and makes very pretty...*jackets*. I have no doubt that cloth made, from camel's ... *hair*, would make a jacket as this boy says, but it is made chiefly into cloaks or... *mantles*. The climate\* is too hot for jackets, that is to say, the sun is too hot in the country where the camels ... *live*, for the people to wear... *jackets*. People in hot countries generally prefer loose, wide clothes, not clothes that fit tight like...*a jacket*. Why? *Because they are cooler*. The body is kept cooler when the clothes are loose, than when...*they are tight*. What part of the world are we speaking about? You will remember I told you at the beginning of the lesson. What [was the name? *Arabia*. This girl is right, don't forget the name of the country where camels chiefly live. *Arabia*. Very well, the camel's hair is made into...*cloaks* and...*mantles*. Do you remember, in one of our Bible lessons who was said to have worn a garment made of camel's hair? *John*. John...*the Baptist*.† Very well, children, you have said that the camel lives in...*Arabia*, that it has two...*hunches on its back*, one as large as you see, and the other, ...*small*, or...*smaller*, that its hair is of a...*light brown colour*, and very ... *fine*. And what do the people make of its hair? *Cloth*. Cloth for...*mantles*.‡

Look what a nice place that would be for a ride, children. That place is something like a ... What is put as a seat on a horse's back? *A saddle*. What do you think that place is like between the two hunches? *A saddle, that would keep us from falling, sir*. Very right, boy, the hunch behind would keep you from...*falling back*, and this one near...*the shoulder*, would keep you from ...*falling on its neck*. But perhaps you might fall by its sides. *The stirrups would keep me up*. Oh, then you are for stirrups, my boy. You would ride very safely

---

\* A word they can scarcely as yet understand, but being expressed, the trainer must break it down.

† Of course the trainer remembers that this fact occurred in a Bible lesson, otherwise the question would not be put at this time.

‡ The children, of course, make many mistakes which must be corrected by training, not *telling*; but to exhibit which on paper would render the perusal intolerably tedious.

on the camel's back, if you had ... *stirrups* between these two large...*lumps*. Lumps!! *Hunches, sir*.

Now, I must tell you something more about this wonderful animal, and then you will tell me what you think of it. The camel is a very tall animal, as high as six feet, that is from the floor to a little above my...*head*. (The master pointing first to the floor and then to the top of his head.\*) Supposing I wished to take a ride on such a high animal, how would I get on its back? *You might take a stool*. But suppose I could not get a stool, and were in the deserts of Arabia? *I could jump*. Could you jump as high as yourself, think you? *Yes, sir*. Try it? *No, sir, no*. Now, I'll tell you how it is done. The keepers of the camels *train* them when they are young to kneel...*down* upon ...*their knees*. By training, I mean they make the camels ...*kneel down*, that is to say, when the keepers train the young camels to kneel, they make them...*do it*. When the camels are trained to...*kneel* on the...*ground*, they...*do it*.† The keepers whistle or make some particular...*sound*, and the moment the camels hear the...*whistle*, they ... What do they do? *They kneel*. And when they kneel, any man can...*jump on its back*, and after a person is on its back they can ... *take a ride*.

Now then, the camel rides with a man, or any burden, on... *its back*, just like ... What animal do we use for riding in this country? *A horse*, but it is much stronger...*than a horse*. It can carry a greater weight, where? *On its back*, than...*a horse*. How long do you think a horse could go without water to drink? *Don't know, sir*. Do you think a horse could want water a whole day? *My father's cart horse drinks every morning and every night*. Not oftener than morning and evening? *Yes, sir, at meal hours*. Your father's horse takes water, you say, several

---

\* Action suited to the words, is important in training, as it is in all public speaking. The attention of the old as well as the young is arrested by it, and partly pictures out the subject.

† DOING is the principle of the training system intellectually, as well as physically and morally.



... *times a-day*. Well, let me tell you, that the camel can travel through... What sort of places did we say it travelled through in Arabia? *Hot sands*. Dry, burning... *sands*, burning with the ... *heat of the sun*, for a whole week together, without taking ... *a drink*. *Does it get no water, sir?* I'll tell you about that just now, children. There are no wells, or rivers, or ... *ponds*, or water of any kind in these deserts, and God has made the stomach of this... *animal*, or rather God has given it two stomachs. You know, the stomach is where you put your ... *meat in*. And what else? Where do you put your drink in *Our mouth*. And where does the water go after that? *Th stomach*. Well, as the camel requires to carry heavy... *men and women*, and what have men and women with them sometimes? *Goods*. The camel has goods and other... *things* to carry besides men and women which are a great burden through the wide... *sandy deserts* sometimes for a whole week together, without coming to a place where they could get... *water*, so God has, out of his goodness, provided them with a large ... Where does an animal put the water it drinks? *Its stomach*. God has provided it with two ... *stomachs*, or rather a double ... *stomach*, so large that it can take in as much water in one of its... *stomachs* before it starts on the journey, as serves it the ... *whole time*. This boy's father's horse\* requires water every ... *day*. How often? *Several times a-day*, and there is plenty of water in this ... *town*. What would a horse do in the sandy deserts of Arabia, think you? *Die*. Die for... *want of water*. It would

---

\* While you acknowledge the answers of all, from time to time, and thus stimulate all, the master, as a moral trainer, must take care not to be partial, and that while he acknowledges the answers of the forward and warm-tempered children (*who are always ready and willing to make a show off in school*), he as often notices and comments upon those offered by the more gentle and timid, whose answers are generally not less correct, but who require encouragement to express them; and the particular notice of whose answers, *in turn*, also acts as a check on the too great forwardness of the other parties. The practical exercise of this principle stimulates all alike, protecting and encouraging the timid, whether male or female, and regulating and moulding, by degrees, the spirit of the forward.



be so thirsty from want of water, that ... *it would die*. You say the horse would die there. Would the camel die? *No, sir. Why? It has a great quantity of water. Where? In its inside, that is, ... in its stomach, which serves it perhaps for seven or eight days, when it is crossing, that is, when it is walking through...the deserts, dry burning ... sands of Arabia.* The horse, such as we were speaking about, you say would not do for...*Arabia*, but the camel will do to ride across the ... *sandy deserts of Arabia*.

We have a number of things to speak about this wonderful animal, which I must tell you at next lesson, but I wish to speak about another thing at present. It is about its feet. The camel has very wonderful ... *feet*. They are broad, large feet, and very soft and spongy, like a piece of ... Mention any thing you know to be soft? *Mutton, bread, butter, beef, my cap, flesh, my hand, twopenny loaves, sir.\** Enough, children. One boy says† that the feet of the camel is as soft as his hand. Tell me why you think God has made the feet of the camel soft? (No answer.) Tell me, how has God made the horse's feet? Attend, children. What kind of ground does the horse walk upon? *Soft ground*. Where does it walk when carrying a burden, or when a man rides it? *On the road*. And when in towns? *On the streets.‡* What would take place were the horses feet as soft as the camels? *They would be hurt*. Our roads are covered over with ... *hard stones*, and a soft foot like the camel's

---

\* Too wide a question; the trainer consequently receives too many answers, and must concentrate their ideas upon one point. He seizes upon one of the answers as the nearest, and trains the children to the correct one he wishes to reach.

† The moment the master fixes upon any one answer, all are silent, to hear what is to be said upon it. This does not depend on its being right or wrong. They are satisfied that some answer is attended to.

‡ During the next lesson, or in Stage II. the rein-deer might be brought in as a comparison, but the horse, an animal with which they are familiar, is enough at present. In future lessons the comparison of the rein-deer in the snows of Lapland, the horse at home, and the camel in the deserts of Arabia, and the adaptation of each to its peculiar circumstances, may then be pictured out, and from which moral lessons may be drawn.

would ... *be hurt*. The horse's feet are ... *hard*, and the farrier—that is the man who shoes horses—the farrier makes something hard for them. What does he make? [*Shoes*. What sort of shoes? *Iron shoes*. You and I wear ... *leather shoes*. The horse wears ... *iron ones*. In walking upon sand, how do you find it under your feet? *Soft*. Were the horse to ride with a heavy burden on its back on the sands of Arabia, what would happen? *It would sink*. Its hoofs or feet would ... *sink in the sand*, and then it would not ... *get on its journey*, when walking on the ... *soft sand*. And what would happen to its feet? Do you know what its hoofs are made of? *Hard*. True, they are hard, but many things are hard. This table is ... *hard*. *Bony, sir*. Not bones, but almost as hard as ... *a bone*.\* If the hoofs or feet of the horse are hard and dry like a bone, what would happen them in the hot sandy deserts? *They would be birseled*. What do you mean by birseled? *Burnt*. Not quite burnt, but ... *half burnt*. Then, you think the horse would not do for the hot ... *sands of ... Arabia*, but it does very well for ... *this country*. What kind of feet did you say the camel has? *Soft*. Very spongy and ... *soft*, like a ... *lady's hand*, not dry like the ... *horse's feet*, but soft and full of moisture, like the palm of my ... *hand*.† What has the camel to walk upon, little girl? *Sand*, and therefore God has made its feet ... *soft*. Soft, to walk over the fine ... *sand*, and full of sap like oil, that never dries up any more than my foot or ... *hand*. Now, tell me, why are they full of sap? That they may be ... *able to walk in the deserts* a ... *long time* without their ... What would happen to their feet if they were as dry as the horse's feet? *Dry up*. The camel's feet, then, do not ... *dry up*, although they should be

---

\* It would not do at this early stage, when nearly every fact is new to the *children*, to divert their attention from the direct course, by giving the analogy between the construction of the hoof of the horse, with other substances, such as horns, whalebone, &c. This should come under its own particular head or secular lesson on horns, whalebone, &c.

† The trainer, showing and pointing to the palm of his hand. The child in this way adds, *incidentally*, another word to his vocabulary, viz. *palm*, the idea and the word representing the object being combined.

walking through hot...*sand* for many...*weeks*. Did I say weeks, children? *Days, sir*. Although the camel's feet are walking over ... *burning sands* for many ... *days*. Its feet are large. Why are they large? *Don't know, sir*. If you wish to walk through deep snow, whether would you use stilts, like boys sometimes when crossing a stream, or would you put on snow shoes, like the Laplanders? You will remember we were speaking about the snows of the north the other day. Whether do you think the stilts or the snow shoes would sink the faster? *The stilts*. The stilts would ... *sink very deep*—the snow boots do not ... *sink*, they do not sink very ... *much*, because they are ... What size are they? *Large*. The snow shoes are ... *large* and ... *broad*. How broad? Broader and longer than a man's ... *boot*. Tell me why the feet of the camel are large? *That they might not sink* in the ... *deserts*. Horses have hard hoofs or...*feet*, which suit them to travel in...*this country*, or any ... *country* where its feet would not...*sink*, but...*not in the deserts of Arabia*. I must tell you that there are plenty of horses in Arabia, beautiful horses, for there is hard ground in Arabia as well ... *as sandy ground*, but then Arabian horses won't do for the ... What were we speaking of? *Sandy deserts*, where their feet would...*sink*, and where there is no ... *water to drink*.

But the camel's feet do not ... *sink in the sand*, being ... *soft and big*. And what does it do for water? *It carries it in its stomach*. In one ... *of its stomachs*. And what does it do with the other? *It digests its food*. God, then, who made all things very ... *good*, has made the camel to suit the ... *sandy deserts*. Very well, children.

Now, I fear you are getting tired,—Let us have a little ... *exercise*. Heads up—shoulders ... *back*\* ... chin in—heels ... *close*—toes out at an ... *acute angle*—hands on ... *knees*. Now, perfect ... *silence*.† We shall have done immediately.

---

\* When the children fill up the ellipses they naturally perform the action. Were the master simply to *tell* them what to do, he could not so readily secure the attention of all.

† Rising up, and sitting down, simultaneously, not by a stamp of the

Let me see if you remember what we have said? The camel is an animal ... How high? *As high as you, sir.* How many feet? *Six feet.* I am not quite six feet high, therefore it must be ... *higher than you, sir.* I forgot to tell you that the camel is about ten feet long, that is, as long as that ... *desk.* Six feet ... *high,* and about ... *ten feet long.* It has two large ... *lumps.* Remember the name I gave you ... *Hunches.* Where? *On its back,* which makes *a ... nice saddle to ride on.* How many stomachs has it? *Two, sir.* One of them is ... *large.* For what purpose? *To keep water in it.* A curiously formed stomach, that contains as much ... *water as serves it ... on its journey ...* Where? *Across the sandy deserts of Arabia,* for, unless it had a quantity of water ... *in its stomach, it would die for ... want of water or ... thirst.* Why? *On account of the heat and dryness of ... the sandy deserts.* You also told me that the camel's hair was ... *fine,* and what colour? *Brown.* A light ... *brown colour,* and that the people make it into ... *cloth for ... mantles and cloaks.* And what did we say about its feet? What sort of feet are they? *Soft and spongy;* and what else? *Large.* Soft to tread the sand, and not ... *dry up.* And why are they broad? *That they may not sink in the sand when the camel has ... a large burden on its back.* The camels go in great numbers, through the deserts, with men, women, and ... *children,* on their ... *backs,* and also a quantity of ... *goods;* but we must speak about these things again. It is time now to get out to ... *the play-ground for a little.*

I am thinking, children, of the camel's soft feet. The camel walks so gently with its feet, that were one to come into this room, you would scarcely hear it ... *walking.* It would scarcely disturb little Henry, here, who is beginning to ... *sleep.* Henry is not ... *sleeping,* just a ... *little sleepy,* he must, therefore, get out soon into the play-ground, else he will get ... *fast*

---

foot, which is clumsy, but by following the motion of the master's hand, from the horizontal, slowly or quickly, to the perpendicular, and again to the horizontal, and repeated as often as he pleases. The eye being necessarily fixed on the trainer, secures the attention, and this, and every similar exercise, establishes the habit of obedience.

*asleep.\** So you think the soft, gentle walk of the immense camel, passing the gallery, would not disturb a half ... *sleeping child*.

Now, children, prepare to march to the play-ground. We shall sing the "Camel." March prettily—make little noise—do not scrape or beat the floor with your feet. Go on.

To many persons who are unacquainted with the Training System, this example must appear absurdly tedious. Slow, however, as the process is, which we have exhibited, many points, even of the few that have been pictured out, are too abrupt. The whole, no doubt, might have been told the children by *explanation*, and embraced in half a dozen sentences; or by the question and answer system, in a couple of pages; but neither the explanatory system, nor the mere questioning, secures, in regard to children, an equal amount of understanding as does the principle of picturing out.

## EXAMPLE II.

### STAGE I.

#### A SHORT LESSON ON POTTERY.

The principles of making pottery, porcelain, china, &c., even when the great outlines only are given, would require at least five or six separate lessons. The common practice with all our students, during the early part of

\* Long before this speech is ended little Henry, of course, is quite lively. A pull, a push, a scold, or a touch with a rod, whatever effect such may have at the moment, is not so lasting as a gentle appeal to the understanding and feelings.



the course, when required to conduct a lesson on pottery, is to commence at the third and fourth stage. The simplest principle, viz., the making of a flower-pot or jar, they scarcely condescend to. They consider or imagine it too simple to engross their own thoughts for a moment; and, therefore, take it for granted, *without inquiry*, that the scholars know what they never have seen, or what has never been pictured out to them.

The candidate trainer jumps up at once to the third or fourth step of the ladder, keeping the child at the base, who is not capable of such a stride, attempting to picture out, perhaps only to *explain*, a point the child has not reached, and cannot *see*; consequently, at the close of the lesson, the children are little benefited by it, and little is left on their minds, save the burning or baking in the kiln, glazing and painting, with a few terms not understood by any in the gallery, because not pictured out *before they have been used*; such as, fusible, infusible, semi-vitrified, translucent, opaque, &c. &c. Why not commence as the Scriptures do? “As clay in the hands of the potter!” Why use a word the children do not understand? Why not picture out every word to be used, in order that they may understand it? and here we feel the absolute weakness of examples on paper, without the assistance of the wheel and the band; the lever power of the foot-board, and the circular motion of the table on which the clay revolves, or at least, without the powerful assistance of the visible foot, the hand, and a circular motion, to the mere words of a book.

Our short example, therefore, will be the first stage on

#### POTTERY.

Children, we are to have a lesson to-day on pottery. Do you



know what the potter makes? *Pots*. What do you use at breakfast and dinner to take your meat out of? *Cups and saucers*. You use a cup and saucer at ...*breakfast*; and what do you use at dinner? *Plates*. Mention a few other articles you use at different times, of the same kind? *Bowls, mugs, decanters*. Of what are decanters made? *Glass*. What is the lesson to-day? *Pottery*. Is a decanter made by the same person who makes bowls and plates? *No, sir, decanters are not made in a pottery*. They are made by a ... *glass-blower*, and a man who cuts ... *glass*, not ...*by a potter*.\* A potter is one who ... *makes pots*, and every other thing that is made out of clay, like ... *pots, plates, bowls*, and ... *jugs*, and ... *cups and saucers*. And what sort of pottery does the gardener use to plant geraniums and other flowers in? *Flower-pots*. Very well, the potter makes all ... *these things*. Would you wish to know how the potter makes some of these things? *Yes, sir*. Well, if you will be very quiet and attentive, we shall see how the potter does.† What is the first thing that the potter does before he makes a flower-pot or a common basin? What does the potter use to make these articles of? *Clay*. And where does he get the clay? *In the ground*. Does he get the clay everywhere? *Only in clay places*. Only in that kind of ground which is full...*of clay*. Some soils or ground are so full of sand and other things, that it would not ... *make pottery things*.

I shall show you the simplest way of making a flower pot or a common basin, and afterwards we shall see how the potter makes jugs and plates, and ... *tea cups*, and how he paints them, and gilds them, that is, how he puts gold ... *on them*, and also... What do you see on the tea cups sometimes at home? *Flowers*. The potter prepares, that is, he makes a machine,

---

\* Never say, You are wrong, train them to what is right.

† You must have a little physical exercise, occasionally, or, as we term it, you must "*dress your troops*." You have, by preliminary observations, awakened their curiosity, but you must also, by a proper physical, as well as intellectual arrangement, secure that their attention be sustained so as to have that curiosity gratified.

or gets a machine maker to ... *make a machine for ... him*, like what I have drawn ... *on the board*. You see this large wheel, and this thing like a ... *belt*. That belt goes round the ... *wheel*, and when it is drawn over this small wheel, along this way, what will it do? *It will turn it*. The large wheel will ... *wheel round*. And if I put my foot on this...*board*, and press it up and down, this...*way*. This they call a crank. This ... *crank* makes both wheels go ... *round*. How so? The *belt turns them*. Have you seen a spinning wheel? *Yes, sir, my grandmother spins*. Well, the large wheel of the potter may be turned in the same way, by the foot, as this boy's ... *grandmother's wheel*. Were the wheel very large, so that a man could not turn it with his foot, what would he do? *Get a steam-engine*, and the steam-engine would not only turn one potter's... *wheel*, but a great many ... *at one time*.

Well, children, when this large wheel turns round once, it makes this little wheel turn round a great ... *many times*, just like a spinning wheel, or a grinding machine for grinding ... *corn*.\* Perhaps some of you may not have seen either a spinning wheel or a machine for grinding corn, or a steam-engine, but I shall show you some of these machines, or models, I mean small machines, like the ... *large ones*, by and by, that is at ... *another time*.

The potter has a small board or table at this ... *place*, which turns round ... *quickly*. Now then, the potter gets clay from the ... *clay holes*, from the place where clay is ... *found*, and he beats it with a stick many times this way and ... *that way*, and he washes it with water, also, a long ... *time*, and you know what is found sometimes in clay? *Stones*. Well, the potter takes out the little ... *stones from it*, and does a great many things to the ... *clay* to make it ... *nice*, to make it ... *clean* and ... *smooth*, which I shall also tell you of at ... *another time*; and he takes a

---

\* This ellipsis, although answered as the trainer wished, ought not to have been so formed, being a mere guess. *Corn* had not been alluded to, and need not necessarily have occurred to the mind of the children. It ought to have been put in the form of one or two distinct questions:—How is corn bruised or made into flour? By a,—&c. &c.

bit of the clay that has been cleaned. But will the potter, think you, use the clay soft or hard, when he wishes to put it into a shape? Will it do better wet or dry? *Wet*. Why? *It will squeeze best*. Do you say best? *Better*.\*

The clay can be squeezed or pressed out into any shape, better when it is ... *wet* than ... *when dry*. I know some filthy boys on the streets, who build small houses, and make clay ... *pies* with ... *clay*. What kind of clay do they use? *Wet clay* and dirty their hands and ... *their clothes*, so that they cannot appear ... *at school*.

Why do these boys prefer wet clay? *It is easier squeezed*. Now, the potter takes this piece of ... *wet clay*, and places it on the small table I spoke to you about, and when he presses his ... *foot* up and ... *down*, or when the steam-engine turns the wheel ... How? *By the band*, it then makes the ... *table spin round* with the piece of clay upon it, like ... *a peery*. Give me another name for peery? *Top*.

The soft wet clay would spin round like ... *a top*. What would happen to a top were it spinning so quickly, and made of soft clay? *It would break*. Let me tell you that it would swell out ... *this way*. Why? *Because it goes quickly round*, and being soft, the potter places his finger or a piece of some hard wood, or iron, into the middle of the clay ... *that way*, (the master imitating the motion and effects of the centrifugal force), and as he presses, we shall suppose his finger *this way*, out from the centre of the ... *clay*, he holds his other ... *hand* on the ... *outside* of the clay ... *that way*, and as the clay is kept constantly whirling round on ... *the table*, by pressing it a little out this ... *way* in the ... *middle*, or at the ... *top*, he makes the clay into the shape of a flower ... *pot*, or a ... *bowl*, or any other shape that ... *he likes*. *How does he get the clay off, master?* You mean off the board, I suppose, children. I shall tell you. The potter, that is, the man who has been working the

---

\* It is presumed, even in the Initiatory department, that the children have been trained to understand the terms of comparison, good, better best.

clay, we shall suppose, into the form of a flower-pot, takes a bit of small cord, or twine, and holds it ... *this way*, pressing it close to the board on which the clay ... *lies*, and as the table continually moves round very ... *quickly* ... What will the string do? *Cut it*. It would cut the ... *flower-pot*, and separate the clay that has been made into the shape of ... *a flower-pot* free from ... *sticking to the table*.

Do you think the pot would do for flowers in this state? that is, when the clay is soft? *No, sir, a flower-pot is hard*, and a basin is ... *hard*. How is the clay hardened, children? *It is dried*. In which way? (No answer.) Tell me which way bricks are hardened? *Burned*. What are bricks made of? *Clay*. How do you think they will dry flower-pots, and cups, and saucers, and other articles made of clay? *Burn them*. Well, they are burned, but not exactly in the same way as ... *bricks*.

Bricks are burned in the midst of the furnace, after being dried a little time; but cups, and other pottery ware, are first dried, and then, in case the shape of them has been injured, for you know soft clay is easily ... *squeezed*, they are put ... *right again*, and all the rough places are made ... *smooth*, and after being dried and heated, they dip the basins and jugs in a coloured liquid substance—a liquid means a watery ... *substance*—and this watery substance has a kind of glue in it. What will glue make it do? *Stick*. The glue in the water makes it ... *stick*. Stick or adhere to the sides of ... *the cups*, or other articles the potter ... *has made*, and then they are put all together into the inside of an earthen ware box, shaped like this—look, children—and then they are put into the furnace and ... *burned*.

They put them into an earthen box to keep them from cracking. What would the potter do with his ware—ware means the plates and ... *cups*, and ... *basins that he makes\**—were they cracked, or put out of shape by the fire, what would he do with them?

*He could not sell them*. No person would ... *buy them*. Why?

---

\* Now, or during future secular lessons, the term "ware" will be pictured out as applying to goods generally as well as stone-ware.

*They would run out.* The cracks, or rents, in the sides or bottoms of the different kinds of ... *ware*, would let out the ... *water*, or the ... *milk*, and therefore they ... *would not do*. They would ... *be of no use*.

Let me see if you remember what we have said? The potter takes some clay from ... *the ground*, from the ... *clay holes*, or ... *pit*. And what does he do with it first? *He beats it with a stick*, jnst as boys do sometimes when they squeeze the clay and beat it on the ... *pavement*, to make ... *clay pies*. What does the potter do next? He steeps it in ... *water*. Why? *To wash it*. To wash out everything that is not ... *good*. And what do you call good? What does the potter wish to (retain\*) keep, in order to make the earthen ware? *The clay*, the clean washed ... *clay*. Well, after the clay has been washed, and all the ... *stones are taken out of it* ... Where does he place the clay? *On the table*, on the table of the ... *machine*, and whirls it ... *round* with his ... *foot*, or by the power of ... What other power may he use, did you tell me, a little ago? *A steam-engine*, and he has a small tin thing (vessel will not do, unless it has been previously pictured out, otherwise the children may imagine you mean a ship) a *thing* like this I am drawing on the black board. *Like an oil cruizie, master*. Very like an oil cruise, children, with a small ... *spout*, which keeps dropping a little water the whole time the potter is making the clay into a ... *shape of a bowl*, or any other ... *thing*, to prevent the clay being ... *too dry*. And how does he get the shape off? *He cuts it with a string* while the table is ... *whirling round*, and he ... *dries it*, and ... *burns it*. Does he burn it or glaze it, first? *Burn it*. You will remember that I said the potter glazes it before he burns or bakes it. Whether do you think the glue would sink easier into soft clay, or when the clay is hard? Whether do you think watery glue would run through a handkerchief easier when it is wet, or when it is dry? *Wet*. Well then, the glue is put on first, and afterwards it is burned in the ... *kiln*. Among the coals? *No, sir*, in a box to keep it from the coals. What kind of box? *An earthen box*—a box made of

---

\* Too big a word at this stage, it must be reserved till the second or third stage.



clay, that will not ... *burn*, as wood would ... *do*. Now, children, who made the clay that the potter forms into so many pots, and cups, and plates, and other earthen ware? *God*. God created ... *the clay*, and man makes them into ... *different things*, such as we now have been ... *speaking of*. God is ... *good* in giving us ... *the clay*. And how should we feel towards God for this and every thing which he gives us? *Thankfulness* or ... *gratitude*. God therefore is ... *kind and good*.

Little as the children may have now acquired, it is evident that they have got a *something* on which a second lesson may be added with more interest and intelligence than if they had not passed through this stage.

---

### EXAMPLE III.

#### STAGE II.

##### THE MOLE.

Tell me, children, where the mole lives? *In the earth*. Yes, under ... *the ground*. How many feet has it? *Four*. And it is therefore called ... *a quadruped*. Where do most quadrupeds live? *Above the ground*. Right. How, since animals live in such different situations, what would you expect them to be? (No answer.) Do you remember the lesson on birds? *Yes, sir*. Well, what was said about land and water birds? *The water ones had webbed feet*. And why? *That they might swim*. But besides the swimming ones, there are some that go to the water and ... *wade*. And what had they? *Long legs*. And besides they had very ... *long necks*, and ... *short tails*. What would a pheasant's or a peacock's tail be to them? *It would trouble them*. It would be ... *cumbersome*. Yes, without such a tail they are much more ... *comfortable*. When you look at a land bird and a water one, and compare them, what do you notice?



*A great difference in the way in which they are made.* What was the word that was formerly given, instead of the way in which they are made? Try to remember. *Structure.* Quite right, and they are made differently, or have a different...*structure*, because they differ in their ... *ways of living*, or their ... Who remembers the word that means ways of living? *Habits.* Now, all sit upright and attend. When you find an animal of a particular structure, what will you be led to think about it? *That it has particular habits.* And if you are told that an animal lives in an uncommon place, or has particular habits, such as the mole, what will you expect it to be? *Of a particular structure.* All will now answer me. The form or structure of the animal is always well ... *fitted to its way of living.* All again. The habits and structure of the animal always ... *agree—suit one another* very well. Well now, hear this boy in the lowest seat repeat it.....Quite correct, many of you, I dare say, have seen what the mole makes in the fields? *Yes, mole-hills.* If you take away the earth, what will you find below? *A round hole.* What size? *Like the hole in our water-pipe.* And out of this hole it has ... *thrown all the earth.* In what direction does the mole go? *downwards.* Yes, for a little, and then it goes far... *along.* I perceive most of you have seen mole-hills. Now, hands up all who have seen a mole. Only two or three have seen the animal itself. Let us try to find out then, what kind of body would be best ... *fitted for its ... place of living—way of living.* What does it feed upon, do you think? *Worms and insects*, and what must it do to get them? *It must dig through the earth.* Yes, just like a...*miner—collier.* But then the miner, when he makes his way under ground, has ... *picks and shovels.* What will the mole use? *Its feet.—Its nose.* When this boy speaks of its nose, what other animal is he very likely thinking of? *A pig.* Well, I should think it was, and if it uses its nose, what should it be? *Sharp and strong.* Just like ... *the pig's*, which uses its nose for the same...*purpose—the purpose of ... digging.* It digs for...*roots.* But as the mole has more digging than a pig, besides its nose, what will it also use? *Its feet, its legs.* Which? *Its fore feet.* It will chiefly use its...*two fore feet*, for the purpose of ...*digging.* What do you observe on the toes of animals?

*Nails, claws.* Since the fore feet have so much more work than the hinder ones, you would expect them to be...*stronger*. Yes, they are very ... *strong*, and you would say, such strength is very...*necessary*. What kind of legs do you think will be most convenient under ground? *Long, short*. Whether will a tall or a short man get along the coal mine more easily. *A little man*. But the mole if it had long legs might make its hole ... *larger*, says a girl. That is quite true, and in a large hole or gallery, a long legged mole would go along as...*easily* as a...*short legged one*, in a ... *small one*. But if the mole were to make a large hole, it would have more...*work*, and if more work, it must take a ...*longer time*. Now, if moles are like children, they will be anxious to save their...*time* and...*labour*, which legs then, will best fit the mole to save labour and time? *Short ones*. Short ones will be more...*convenient*? With short legs their work ... *will be less*.

When a dog scrapes away the earth, where does it put it? *It throws it under his body*. Yes, between its body and the ground there is plenty of ... *room*, because its legs are ... *long*. But, with legs very short, the lower part of the mole's body almost ... *touches the ground*. And if it touches the ground, how will it be better to throw the earth? *Away by the sides*. All will repeat. The earth will be ... *thrown back*, not under its ... *body*, but ... *by the sides*. And why? *Because of its short legs*. As it throws the earth back with its feet, what will they answer for? *A shovel*. Right; and a shovel is — *broad*. When it digs, it will use its *feet* like a ... What do labourers use to break up hard ground? *A pick*. Therefore its feet must be ... *sharp and ...* What else? *Strong*, and when the earth is loosed, it uses them for a ... *shovel*, therefore they should be ... *broad*.

Now, you told me before that the nose was ... *sharp*, and round the shoulders it will be ... *thick*. How will the body be towards the hinder parts? *Smaller—Thicker*. Some say thicker, and one says smaller. Let us see. If this were the hole (drawing it on the black board), and the body of the mole were large behind in this way—if it were to throw the soil back what would happen? *It would not get past*. What would not get past? *The earth would not get past the ... hinder part of the*

mole. Surely; and then the mole cannot ... *get forward*. All will now tell me the shape the mole should be? You have heard that its nose should be ... *sharp and strong*, its shoulders ... *thick*, and its body growing rather ... *smaller behind*. Its body then is something like this ... What is it? *A ship*. Yes, the hull of a ship, which goes with greater ease than if it were in this form ... What do you think the body is covered with? *Fur*. And whether should it be soft or stiff? Suppose an enemy of the mole to meet it in front, what would the mole do? *Run away*. But before it could run, what must it do? *Turn in the hole*. But you remember the hole is just about the width of its body—what must it do? *Go backwards*. Yes, it will run backwards till it come to some ... *opening* or ... *hole*, then it will run ... *forwards*. Now, when it runs backwards, the hair would ... *rub against the sides of the hole*, and the hair would be ... *raised* or ... *ruffled*. And if it was stiff it would be just like a ... *brush*. What, then, would be done if it were to be brushing all the way backwards. *The earth would tumble in*. Right; and it would get into ... *a heap*, and the poor mole would be ... *stopt* and ... What would happen to the mole? *It would be caught*. Now, what kind of hair would be best? *Soft fur*. Yes; and if very soft when you draw your hand along the back to the head, it will be nearly as smooth as when you ... *draw it the other way*. Besides, if it were stiff, when the earth is moist, the animal would become ... *dirty*, the soil would stick on the ... *stiff hairs*; but if it were soft, the soil or earth would ... *fall off again*, and it would still be ... *clean*. When earth or dust is falling all around us, as it will be when the mole is digging, what should we be afraid of? *Our eyes*. Quite right; our eyes are very ... *easily hurt*. There are some animals, like the hare, that have very large eyes, but besides being large, they are very ... *they stand out*. Well, let any one give the word that means standing out? *Prominent*. The hare's eyes are large and ... *prominent*. And if the mole had such eyes, what would you say? *They would be hurt—they would be in the way*. What must we have besides eyes that we may see? *Light*. And where does the mole live chiefly? *Under ground*. And, under ground, it will be ... *very*

*dark.* When a collier goes down the pit, he takes ... *a lamp*; but as the mole has no lamp, eyes in the dark ... *will be useless.* Will it have any need of eyes at all? *No, sir.* This boy, perhaps, remembers hearing people say, As blind as ... *a mole.* I must tell you that sometimes the mole comes above the ground, then eyes will be ... *useful.* But as it is oftenest under ground among falling earth, you say they need not be ... *large,* and especially they should not be ... *standing out* or ... *prominent.* All will now tell me the eyes should be ... *small and low,* that is, sunk in ... *a hollow place.*

We will now go over the chief points once more, all answering. You think it should have its nose ... *sharp* and ... *strong,* its legs ... *short,* feet ... *broad,* to make its way ... *through the earth.* Its body thick at ... *shoulders,* towards the tail rather ... *smaller,* that earth may get ... *easily past.* Its fur ... *very soft,* and its eyes prominent, or how? *Small and sunk.*

Now, look at this stuffed mole, and compare it with what you have told me. Every thing that you could think of, and a great ... *deal more,* has been given by ... *God* to make the mole ... *happy* and ... *comfortable.* At once, you see here the Creator's ... *wisdom,* and ... *power,* and ... What else? *Goodness.* Very right; wisdom in contriving, power in making, and goodness in making what is, so that his creatures, even the ... *meanest,* may be happy.

## EXAMPLE IV.

### STAGE II.

#### AIR A CONDUCTOR OF SOUND.

Children, we are to have a training lesson to-day upon sound. What do you mean by sound, children? *Noise.* What is a noise? You hear my voice just now; do you call it noise? *Speaking.* True, I am speaking, and you hear me...*speaking*

*just now* ; but would it be possible for me to speak without your hearing me ? *No, sir.* Think for a moment. Am I speaking just now ? *Yes, sir, you are speaking to yourself.* I am speaking, you think, but you ...*do not hear.* Now, why is it you do not hear ? When you hear me or any one speaking, you hear a...*sound* ; or if I strike my hand on this...*desk*, you hear ... *a sound.* You know what I am saying when you hear the sound of my...*voice*, and you know what I am doing by the sound of my ... *hand.*

Well, I wish to know why it is that I can move my lips without your hearing me speak, or lay my hand on this desk without hearing a sound ? Tell me what sound is. I suppose I must tell you.\* You all know what air is ? *Wind.* Wind is certainly air—air in...*motion*, but if not in motion it still would be...*air.* Air you know (from former lessons) is a...*substance*; and however light air may be when compared with the...*desk*, it is ... *a substance.* We say, “light as air ;” air, however, has...*weight.* Do you remember how heavy atmospheric air is ? *It presses on all sides with a weight equal to about 14 lbs. on the square inch.*† It presses this way, and ... *that way*, and...*every way*, equal to about...*14 lbs. to the square inch.* There is something substantial which may be beaten, or squeezed, or ... *pressed.* If I turn this slate on its broad-side slowly, do you hear any thing ? *No, sir.* Now, I shall move it smartly, what do you hear ? *A sugh.* What is a sugh ? *A sound.* Is sugh the proper word, children ? *No, sir, sound.*‡

Now, children, tell me how it is that you hear me speaking ? *By the air.* When I strike my hand on the desk, what happens ? *There is a sound.* True, there is a sound ; but how is the sound produced ? We shall see how it is. When I strike my hand upon the top of this ... *desk*, it makes the desk... What does it make

---

\* The trainer has developed or brought out the amount of the children's knowledge. They know the facts, but not the reason.

† The children are understood to have had lessons on air before, but none on sound.

‡ In many quarters of the United Kingdom provincialisms will be given by children in the course of training ; and this mode may be adopted to correct them.



the desk do? *Sound.* Observe; I shall strike my hand upon this ... *wall*, and then upon the desk, and you will tell me which gives the greater sound? Which? *The desk.* Why so? It *shakes more and vibrates*.<sup>\*</sup> You think the stroke made the top of the table vibrate more than...*the wall*. Very well, then, why was there a greater sound from the table than from the wall? You told me that you heard me speaking by ... *the air*. How do you think you can hear the sound of my striking the desk? *By the air.* And the sound from the wall? *The air.* Then why should there be any difference between the loudness of the sound from the table and the wall? You don't know, I see.

You told me that the atmospheric ... *air*, the air that is in this...*room*, is ... *a substance*. You saw me strike the air which you say is ...*a substance*, very smartly with the...*slate*, and you heard...*a sound*. Now you also told me that the table vibrated, that is, ...*trembled*. By vibrating what do you mean? *Trembling* or *quivering*; that is to say, if the top of the table trembled or...*quivered*, it was set ... *a moving*, or ... *in motion*. The top of the table was not at rest, but ... *in motion*, moving very...*quickly*. What did the top of the table strike against, for you know if the top of the table moved† it must move against something? When the top of the table vibrated like the top of a drum, what did it strike against? *The air.* The air being a substance, and filling every part of ...*this room*, was struck quickly by the vibratory movements of ... *the top of the table*. And ... What did the trembling or vibratory motion produce? *A sound.* The air was moved up and down quickly from its place. Where? *On the table*; and this rapid ... *motion* of ... *the air*, which is a ... *substance*, and has ... *weight*, you also told me was not so heavy as ... *the table*, and it produced? *A sound.* Whether will there be a greater sound when I strike my hand smartly or softly upon the table? *Smartly.* Why?

---

\* This term, of course, had been pictured out during some former lesson on motion.

† Although the whole body of the table may vibrate, it is preferable to confine the attention of the children to one point, so long as your statements involve nothing erroneous or contradictory.



*Because it will vibrate the more.* The top of the table will rise up and...*down more*, and, therefore, it will... What will it do? *Sound the more.* You will hear a greater...*sound*, because the air is disturbed more by the greater vibration, than ... *the little one*,—than by the less...*vibration*.

Tell me now, children, whether the air will sound when it is in motion or at rest? *When in motion.* Wind, you know, is ... *air in motion*. You say you hear the wind when...*it blows*, that is, when the air is in quick...*motion*; and when it cannot easily pass a house or a ... *man*, or a ... *tree* it makes a ... *noise*, or a ...*sound*, and you say, O what a noise the ... *wind is making*; but when the air is not in motion, or moving only very...*slowly*, you say, there ... *is no wind*.

Now, children, tell me what air in motion is? *Wind*. You tell me, wind or ... *air in motion*, striking against a house or a man makes...*a noise*, and a noise is...*a sound*. Well, if I strike my hand or the slate this way, against the air, what will it produce? *A sound*. And what does it do to the air? *Sets it in motion*. My hand, or this...*slate*, or any thing I strike the air with, moves it out...*of its place*. "And where does the air go to that has been moved out of its place? *To another place*. And where does that air go to? *To another place*, and so on, still to ...*another place*; and thus the whole air in the room will be ... What will it be? *Set in motion*.

We must now have some physical exercises, as I dare say you are a little tired this wet day.\* We cannot get through all that may be said on our lesson to-day; but I should like you to tell me in which way sound is carried through the air, or in which way air conducts...*sound*, whether the air be in this ...*room*, or ...*out by*, or in the ...*play-ground*; but I must first ask you one or two questions. Were I to speak loudly in next room, would you hear me? *Yes, sir*. Would you hear my voice equally well as if I were at the same distance from you, and we were all in the open air? *No, sir, the wall stops the sound*. Does the wall stop the sound? *Yes, sir*. Then how could you hear my voice were I in the other room? *It breaks it*. Yes, it breaks or ...

---

\* Rising up and sitting down simultaneously, twice or thrice, &c. &c.

*lessens the sound.* But you hear through the wall, although not...*so well* as...*in the open air*, where no...*wall comes between.* The air behind the wall and before the wall...*shakes* or...*vibrates.* Now, tell me, what must the wall that is between you and the person do, before you hear a sound? *It must vibrate.* The rapid motion or ... *vibration* of the air makes ... *a sound.* The person speaking agitates first the ... *air*, and the air striking... What does it strike against? *The wall*, and then the vibration of the wall again ... What does it do before it reaches your ear? *Against the air again.* Very well, children. How does sound travel, that is, how does sound move? (No answer.) Does it move in a straight line, or how? When I speak, or were I to sound a trumpet, do you think the sound would move straight from my mouth, to you, like an arrow, or how? Do you know how the rays of light move? You don't know, I perceive. I shall tell you. Sound moves from the place whence it comes in a circular way, like waves; and scientific men or...*philosophers*, well, we shall call them philosophers, think sound travels in a circular or roundish form, and they explain their meaning in this way: You have all seen a pond or pool of water? *Yes, sir.* When you throw a stone into the water, suppose in the middle or near the middle of the water, what happens? *There is a plunge.* And after the plunge what do you see? *Waves.* Are the waves up and down this way, like waves of the sea, or how? *Round.* Wherever the stone strikes the ... *water*, it knocks it out of its ... *place*, and the water where the stone entered, being pushed out of ... *its place*, pushes the next piece of water ... *out of its place*; and so on, making ... What does this pushing of the water do? *Makes waves.* Of what shape are these waves? I mean the small waves caused by the stone being thrown into the pond? *Round*, or ... *circular.* If a man stands in the middle of a pond, up to his breast in the water, and a person throws a stone a little behind his back, would he feel the water moving or agitated at his breast? *Yes, sir.* Whether will the waves reach the man's back or his breast first? *His back, sir.* But if, instead of moving in circles, it moved like an arrow, would he feel the waves at his breast? *No, sir.* You see it is because the waves, coming from the place where the stone

was thrown in, are...*round*, and they spread wider and wider, and get smaller and smaller,\* till they reach the sides ...*of the pond*, so that a person feels the waves at his...*breast* as well as ...*at his back* ; but he would not feel them at his breast so much ... *as at his back*.

What is the reason? You know the reason? *His back would stop them*. Entirely? *No, sir, partly*. They would come round to his breast in...*smaller waves*. He would feel the water moving at his breast, but not so much so as...*at his back* ; and they would never stop till they... When would these circular waves stop? *When they reached the side*. Like the waves of a steam vessel, they never stop till they reach the ... *shore*. I observe some children who may not have seen a stone thrown into a pond. I shall, therefore, show them an experiment. Jane, go up stairs to my house, and tell the maid to bring down a hand basin and a jug of water ; the maid will come down with you immediately ; quick, child. We shall in the meantime sing one of your pretty airs, &c. &c. &c.

Now, children, look while I drop this stone into the water. Observe attentively what has happened. *The basin is filled with little waves*, in the same manner as the water ... *in the sea*. In ... *a pond*. Observe whether the circular waves are larger where the stone enters the water, or at the sides of the basin? *Where the stone enters*. And what follows? *They become smaller and smaller* ; till when? *Till they get to the sides*. Large at...*first*, and gradually smaller till they... *get to the sides*. Now, children, it is supposed that sound travels through the air, that is, it ... *moves* in the same way as the waves which you call... What kind of waves? *Circular waves*. Do you remember what we called water, and milk, and air, and oil, the other day? *Fluids*. Air, then, is ...*a fluid*, and sound travels in it like the waves in this...*basin*. What is the ear the organ of? *Hearing*. The waves formed in the air, although they should come from twenty or more places, reach... *the ear*. What does

---

\* The gradual diminution of sound, as it travels from the place from whence it has been produced, may be taken up more particularly at next lesson.

the ear hear? *Sounds.* The air, therefore, conducts ... *sound* to ... *the ear*, or when the air moves quickly, you ... *hear a sound*, or when you strike the air smartly as I did with the slate, you hear a sound, the air is driven out of its place. In what form? In what shape? *Round*, or ... *circular*. As the stone when thrown into the basin threw the water out ... *of its place*, or as when a stone is thrown into a pond, or ... *the sea*. I wish you to tell me why it is thought that sound through the air is circular. Observe, I shall drop the stone again into the basin of water; now little boy, hold this piece of wood steadily there, not in the middle of the basin, but a little from the side, I mean a little distance from the place where I ... *plump it in*. You mean? *The stone*. Now, observe, what happens to the waves which come one after another, to the piece of wood? *They are broken, sir*. The waves are broken when they ... *reach the stick*. They first strike the sides of the piece of wood, which is nearest to where the stone fell in. What happened to the circular waves? *They turned round* in little waves to ... *the side*, to the other ... *side of the stick*. And of what shape were these little waves? *Round*. The large waves were ... *round*, and the small waves broken by the stick being placed there, were ... *also round*, so that any waves, whether large or ... *small*, when they were broken by ... *the stick*, went round to the opposite side, wider and wider, and still were ... *round*. So it is supposed to be with the air, children. We said a little ago, that the rays of light move in ... *straight lines*, like an arrow, or nearly so, and now I tell you, that air, when agitated, that is, when it ... *vibrates* like the top of this desk when I ... *strike it*, that the air, when agitated like the water, when it ... *is agitated*, moves in ... *circular waves*. Were a gun fired at a distance from you, suppose a quarter of a mile, whether would you see the flash or hear the (report)\* sound sooner? *The flash of fire*. The flash emits or sends out a light, and as light moves in ... *straight lines*, you see it, before you ... *hear the sound*, and this sound moves, which way? *In waves*, or ... *circular lines*, and therefore takes longer to ... *come to our ears* than the ... *flash*, or light from ... *the gun*.

---

\* Not yet pictured out.

Suppose you stood with your back to the gun, would you see the light? *No, sir.* Why? *The light goes straight*, and, therefore, would ...*pass by*. Would you hear the sound? *Yes, sir.* Why? (You don't know.) You forget the experiment I made with the stick or piece of wood I made in the basin. Did the waves pass by the stick completely as the rays of light would pass you? *They came round it*, smaller, but still they came ...*round it*. In what shape? *Circular*. Had the waves moved in straight lines like ...*light*, would they have moved round to the other side of the stick? *No, sir.* There may be reasons, children, why light moves quicker than ...*sound*, but this certainly is ...*one reason*.\* So therefore, it is supposed, for we cannot see air as we ... *see water*, it is supposed that the sound moves through the...*air*, or air when it is agitated, which produces...*sound*, moves in all sides in... What form, think you? *A circular form*, and, therefore, like the waves in a pond or ... *basin*, you hear the sound or report of the gun, even when you stand with your ...*back to it*. The waves come to your ...*ears*, and to...*our face*. In straight or curved lines, which think you? *Curved*. If the sound moved in straight lines, like the rays of light, what would happen? *It would go past us*, but as they do not go past us, what form must the waves of sound then be, when passing through the air to our ears? *Curved* or ...*circular*, like the waves in the pond or...*basin*, or the ... *sea*.

Now, children, you perceive that air is a conductor of ... *sound*, and that sound moves in the air in...*circular waves*. In another lesson, I shall tell you of other things that conduct sound, besides air. Let us have a marching tune, and we shall go for a little time...*into the play-ground*. Sing that pretty air we had the other day, "The Violet," down in the shady grove, &c. The sweet and modest ... *violet*, an emblem of...*humility*.

The trainer ought to direct the attention of his pupils to the goodness of God in furnishing us with the means of hearing, both as a source of pleasure and usefulness.

---

\* This is sufficiently particular and correct, for the trainer's present purpose.



## CHAP. XXI.

### SELECTIONS OF SECULAR TRAINING LESSONS.

IN Stage I. the difficulty has been not to present a sufficient number of lessons, but such points or outlines for the infant in knowledge, whether of three, five, ten, or fifteen years of age, as will make him acquainted with the largest amount of facts, and relative causes of things, within twelve months, and as may enable him, in Stage II., and subsequent Stages, to advance in a consecutive and progressive manner.

All children, therefore, ought to commence with the *first stage*, and if it be gone over a second time before commencing with the *second stage*, the trainer will be able to communicate double or triple the amount of information that he could have done during the first course of the same lessons. For the same reason, Stage II. gone over progressively a second time, will be equally and proportionally productive, and this arrangement would furnish a FOUR YEARS' course, and an excellent foundation alike for the workman, the mechanic, and the man of leisure and research, being broad in its base, and extensively practical. The SECOND COURSE of each of the Stages also furnishes a full opportunity of picturing out, by *familiar* illustrations, scientific terms, a correct knowledge of which is so necessary to the acquisition of science.

In the present contracted and crippled state of education, from want of funds, a four years' course is longer even than can usually be embraced. The whole, how-



ever, would be preparatory to the course of instruction at present enjoyed almost exclusively under public lecturers.

We refer the trainer to the notes appended to the practical illustrations.

## FIRST WEEK OR MONDAY.

### STAGE I.

#### ARTICLES OF FOOD AND DRINK.

Wheaten bread.	Poultry.	Chocolate.
Oaten bread.	Eggs.	Brown Sugar.
Rye bread.	Honey.	Loaf Sugar.
Rice.	Lamb, mutton, veal,	Raisins, currants,
Maize or Indian	beef.	and figs.
corn.	Venison.	Dates.
Pease and beans.	Bacon.	Apples and pears.
Carrots and turnips.	Herrings.	Cherries and plums.
Potatoes.	Salmon.	Strawberries and
Sago.	Salt.	gooseberries.
Tapioca and arrow	Pepper and mus-	Water.
root.	tard.	Wine.
Milk and cream.	Tea.	Cyder and perry.
Butter and cheese.	Coffee.	

## SECOND WEEK OR TUESDAY.

### STAGE I.

#### ARTICLES OF CLOTHING, FURNITURE, &c.

Cotton wool.	Brick house.	Brush.
Cotton cloth.	Stone house.	Knives, forks, &c.
Lint or flax.	Stool, chair, and	Tallow candle
Linen cloth.	sofa.	Wax.
Silk.	Table.	Oil.
Silken cloth.	Barrels, tubs, &c.	Gas.
Sheep's wool.	Baskets.	Shoes.
Woollen cloth.	Carpets.	Cap or hat.
Cotton, Linen, and	Hair cloth.	Gloves.
thread silk.	Whalebone.	Stockings.
Furs.	Comb. (Bone, Tor-	Buttons.
Wooden house.	toise, Ivory.)	

## THIRD WEEK OR WEDNESDAY.

## STAGE I.

## NATURAL HISTORY OF ANIMALS.

Dog.	Rhinoceros.	Pelican.
Cat.	Kangaroo.	Magpie, Rook, and
Sheep.	Monkey.	Raven.
Cow.	Rat and Mouse.	Oyster and shell fish.
Goat.	Bat.	Trout.
Horse.	Mole.	Whale.
Ass.	Swallow.	Shark.
Lion.	Eagle.	Sword fish.
Tiger.	Robin.	Seal.
Leopard.	Linnet.	Crocodile and Alligator.
Brown Bear.	Nightingale.	Ant.
Polar Bear.	Owl.	Bee.
Camelopard.	Parrot.	House-fly.
Wolf.	Hen.	Butterfly.
Fox.	Duck and Goose.	Worm.
Beaver.	Swan.	Viper.
Camel.	Humming Bird.	Rattle Snake and
Reindeer.	Ostrich.	Boa Constrictor.
Elephant.	Vulture and Condor.	

## FOURTH WEEK OR THURSDAY.

## STAGE I.

## ARTS OF LIFE.—TRADES, &amp;c.

Baker.	Millwright.	Brewer.
Tailor.	Soap boiler.	Distiller.
Shoemaker.	Rope and twine	Gardener.
Hatter.	maker.	Farmer.
Tanner.	Bleacher.	Miller.
Spinner.	Candlemaker.	Printer.
Weaver.	Silver and gold-	Bookbinder.
Dyer.	smith.	Type founder.
Paper maker.	Watch and clock-	Painter.
Blacksmith.	maker.	Pinmaker.
Joiner.	Quill dresser and	Wool comber.
Cabinet maker.	steel pen manu-	Silkthrower.
Mason.	facturer.	Sempstress.
Gold beater and	Gunsmith.	Cutler.
gilder.	Pavier.	Brick and tile
Plumber.	Iron smelter.	maker.
Tinsmith.	Iron founder or	Bricklayer.
Slater.	moulder.	Shipbuilder.
Plasterer.		

## FIFTH WEEK OR FRIDAY.

## STAGE I.

## FIRST LINES OF SCIENCE.

Air we breathe.	Vegetable defined.	Teeth.
Light.	Roots.	Sense of sight.
Heat.	Stem.	Sense of hearing.
Ice, water, steam.	Leaves.	Sense of smelling.
Lightning.	Fruits and seeds.	Sense of taste.
Loadstone.	Fir tree.	Sense of touch.
Winds.	Oak.	Mineral defined.
The sea.	Beech.	Limestone.
Ebbing and flowing of the tides.	Mahogany.	Sandstone.
Clouds.	Plum and box trees.	Slate.
Rain, hail, snow.	Animal defined.	Coal.
Dew.	Coverings of ani- mals.	Flint.
Balloon.	Bones.	Platinum.
Diving bell.	Brain and nerves.	Gold.
Horizon, Cardinal points.	Muscles and sinews.	Silver.
Knowledge of home, or topography of the city in which we live.	Arteries and veins.	Iron.
	Skin.	Copper.
	Nails, claws, and hoofs.	Tin.
		Lead.
		Quicksilver.

## CHAP. XXII.

### FIRST WEEK OR MONDAY.

#### STAGE II.

##### THE HUMAN FRAME.—NATURAL HISTORY OF ANIMALS.

<i>The Human Body.</i>	Stomach and digestive organs.	Marsupials or pouched animals (opossum, kangaroo).
Bones, their nature and uses.	Skin.	Gnawing animals (rat, hare, beaver).
Bones of the head.	Hair and nails.	Edentata (wanting teeth), ant-eater, sloth, armadillo.
Backbone or spine.	The eye.	Pachydermata (thick skinned animals), horse, elephant, hog.
Brain and nerves.	The ear.	Cetaceous animals (whale, dolphin).
Chest.	The nostrils.	
Joints.	<i>The Human Mind.</i>	<i>Birds.</i>
Muscles and sinews.	Connection between the mind and the body.	Birds of prey (eagle, vulture, owl).
Arms and hand.	Sensation.	Birds of the sparrow kind (sparrow, thrush, swallow).
Limbs and feet.	Perception — Conception.	Climbing birds (parrot, cuckoo, woodpecker).
The blood.	Memory.	Henlike birds (pheasant, peacock, pigeon).
Heart, arteries, and veins.	Judgment.	Wading birds (stork,
Circulation of the blood.	Conscience.	
Lungs and respiration.	Reason and instinct.	
The mouth, tongue, and palate.	<i>Mammalia or suck-giving Animals.</i>	
Teeth, their mode of growth, and adaptation in structure and form.	Man.	
The jaws, different kinds of motion they can perform.	Monkey tribe.	
Mechanism of swallowing.	Carnivorous* animals (hedgehog, badger, cat).	
	Ruminants (ox, deer, sheep, camel).	

\* Although the terms ruminant, granivorous, migratory, &c. are presented in these lessons, yet they are not used by the master with his pupils until they are fully pictured out, otherwise he would be using terms expressive of character, &c. not understood by his scholars.

snipe, heron, crane).	Serpents (viper, boa, &c.)	Migration of fishes, &c.
Webfooted (duck, goose, swan).	Froglike (newt, frog, salamander).	<i>Insects.</i>
Migration of birds.	<i>Fishes.</i>	Insect transforma- tion.
<i>Reptiles.</i>	Their general struc- ture, organs of respiration, fins, scales, &c.	Insect architecture.
Tortoises (tortoise, turtle).		Beetles.
Lizards (crocodile, lizard).		Butterflies.
		Bees.

## SECOND WEEK OR TUESDAY.

## STAGE II.

## ELEMENTS OF SCIENCE.

<i>Mechanics.</i>	Force required	<i>The Solar System.</i>
Matter, atoms.	equally to impart	The sun as the centre
Essential properties	motion and to	of that system.
of matter, impe-	take it away.	Size and position of
netrability, exten-	Motion rapid, slow,	the earth.
sion, figure.	uniform, acceler-	Relative sizes, dis-
Divisibility, inertia,	ated, retarded.	tances, orbits, and
attraction.	Motion proportion-	periods of revolu-
Accidental proper-	ed to the force	tion of the other
ties, density, hard-	and in the direc-	planets.
ness, elasticity,	tion of the force,	Form of the earth.
brittleness, poros-	velocity, momen-	Diurnal and annual
ity.	tum.	motions of the
Ductility, tenacity,	Direction of a body	earth.
malleability.	when acted on by	Causes of the sea-
Attraction of cohe-	two or more for-	sons.
sion, chemical and	ces, centrifugal	Difference in the
capillary attrac-	and centripetal	length of day and
tion.	forces.	night.
Attraction of gravi-	Lever, three kinds	The moon — her
tation.	of.	varying appear-
Solid defined, centre	Wheel and axle.	ances.
of gravity.	Pulley.	Eclipses.
Direction and laws	Inclined plane.	Harvest moon.
of falling bodies.	Wedge.	

Ebbing and flowing of the tides.	Rainbow.	tion, diffusion, and radiation.
Modes of determining latitude.	Formation of the eye revised—manner of vision.	Different powers in bodies of conducting heat.
Modes of determining longitude.	Accommodation of the eye to different distances, and to different degrees of light.	Effects of heat.
<i>Light.</i>	Defects of vision—long-sightedness—short-sightedness.	Expansion, vaporization.
Its sources and rate of progression.	Spectacles, different kinds and uses of.	Thermometer.
Light falling on smooth and polished surfaces is reflected—laws of reflection.	Microscope.	Latent heat.
Light passing from a rarer to a denser medium, or the converse, is refracted—laws of refraction.	Telescopes.	Dew.
Different kinds of lenses.	Camera obscura—magic lantern.	Clouds—rain—hail.
Prisms.	<i>Heat.</i>	Snow—sleet—hoarfrost—uses of snow.
Prismatic colours.	Its sources.	Formation of ice.
	Modes of transmission by conduc-	Liquefaction of gases.
		Cold produced by evaporation.
		See first week's lessons.*

## THIRD WEEK OR WEDNESDAY.

## STAGE II.

ARTS OF LIFE.—MANUFACTURES, WITH OUTLINES OF THEIR VARIOUS USES.

Architecture.	Gold and silver refining.	Bleaching.
Manufacture of gas.	Coining.	Pottery.
Mining.	Silk manufactures.	Tanning.
Davy's safety lamp.	Cotton manufactures.	Roads.
Iron smelting.	Soap making.	Canals.
Iron founding.		Railways.
Steel making.		Navigation.

\* It is evident that the great outlines of the subjects under this head can only be gone over at this stage. Let there, however, be a broad and sure base on which to rest, and from which the scholar may ascend.



Ship-building.	Paper making.	tory of its inven-
Lithography.	Glass manufacture.	tion.
Stereotype printing.	Materials formerly	Description of
Engraving and etch-	used for writing	Watt's engine.
ing.	on.	Principal applica-
Printing.	Steam-engine—his-	tions of steam.*

## FOURTH WEEK OR THURSDAY.

## STAGE II.

## CLASSIFICATION AND USES OF MINERALS, BOTANY, ETC.

<i>Characters of Minerals, viz. :—</i>	red iron ore.	Flowers.
Solidity or hardness.	Clay iron stone.	Fruits.
Frangibility.	Copper pyrites and malachite.	Principles of Lin-
Structure.	Galena or sulphuret of lead.	naean classifica-
Fracture.	Cinnabar or red sulphuret of mer-	tion.
External form.	cury.	Train to distinguish
Lustre, colour, touch.		first six classes
		and orders.
<i>Earthy Minerals.</i>	<i>Combustible Minerals.</i>	Speedwell, <i>veronica</i> .
Quartz.	Sulphur.	Currants and goose-
Mica.	Bitumen.	berry, <i>ribes</i> .
Amianthus earth, or mountain flax.	Anthracite.	Flax, <i>linum</i> .
Gypsum or sulphate of lime.	Pit coal.	Train to distinguish
	Diamond.	next seven classes
		and orders.
<i>Acidiferous, alkaline minerals.</i>	<i>Parts of Plants, viz.</i>	Saxifrages, <i>saxi-</i>
Borax.	Roots.	<i>fraga</i> .
Rock salt.	Stems.	Pears, apples, <i>pyrus</i> .
<i>Metalliferous Minerals.</i>	Flower stalk, and inflorescence,* or mode of flowering.	Crowfoot, <i>ranunculus</i> .
Iron pyrites, and	Leaves.	Train to distinguish
		next five classes
		and orders.
		Dead nettle, <i>la-</i>
		<i>mium</i> .

\* The process of Stage I. will enable the master, in conducting a training lesson, during the present Stage, to enter more into the qualities and combinations of the materials used in each art and manufacture, and also to employ a few technical phrases, introductory, and as an assistance to more definite scientific training.

Wallflower, <i>cheiranthus</i> .	Hazel, <i>corylus</i> .	sieu's classifica- tion.
Pea, <i>pisum</i> .	Train to distinguish remaining two classes and orders.	Plants without seed lobes.
Train to distinguish next four classes and orders.	Shield fern, <i>aspidium</i> .	Plants with one seed lobe.
Daisy, <i>bellis perennis</i> .	Mushroom <i>Agaricus</i> .	Plants with two or more seed lobes.*
Orchis, <i>orchis</i> .	Principles of Jus-	

## FIFTH WEEK, OR FRIDAY.

## STAGE II.

## ELEMENTS OF SCIENCE.

<i>On the laws of Fluids.</i>	cate," a fluid will rise to the same level in all.	equally on all sides.
Fluids defined—li- quids.	Mode of supplying cities with water.	Ascent of a balloon.
Elastic and non- elastic fluids.	A body immersed in a fluid is held up with a force equal to the weight of the quantity of fluid displaced.	Syringe—sucker— cupping—infant on breast.
In fluids, pressure equal in all direc- tions.	Natural fountains and springs.	Pressure of mercury.
Pressure as depth.	Syphon.	Barometer.
Lateral pressure.	Lifting pump.	Mensuration of heights by baro- meter.
Hydrostatic bellows.	Air has weight.	Air is elastic.
Bramah press.	Air a fluid presses	Air-gun.
The open surface of a fluid is level, and if different pipes communi-		Condensing syringe.
		Air-pumps.
		Air is a compound body.

\* There are no terms used under this head which are not easily pictured out, and may be easily apprehended by a child of eight to twelve years of age. A thorough knowledge of the meaning of such terms now stated, will enable the botanist, the mineralogist, and the man of leisure, to draw fourfold more from the lectures of scientific men than they now do, when they have to seek for the meaning of terms when they might be actually applying them. This is a minor consideration, however, compared to the early analytical habit the mind acquires in the progress of each exercise.

The air we breathe —respiration.	which it travels through different media.	Vitreous or positive, and resinous or negative electri- city.
Air supports com- bustion.	Reflection of sound.	Electric telegraph.
How best increase the heat of a fire by stirring it.	Echo.	Electrifying ma- chine.
Ascent of hot air in chimnies.	Speaking trumpet —ear trumpet.	Lightning — thun- der — lightning rods.
Of wind.	Musical sounds.	Aurora Borealis.
Trade winds—mon- soons.	<i>On electricity and Magnetism.</i>	The magnet — its properties.
Simoom—sirocco.	Excitation of elec- tricity—laws of attraction, repul- sion, distribution.	Iron rendered mag- netic.
Uses of wind.	Electrics or non- conductors, and non-electrics or conductors.	Magnetic attraction and repulsion.
<i>On the Laws of Sound.</i>	Atmospheric—elec- tricity.	Various methods of making magnets.
Sound — how pro- duced.		Mariners' compass.*
Mode of its propa- gation — rate at		



We would recommend the practice of occasional excursions to the country with the pupils, to collect specimens, thus uniting practice and theory. On the same principle, in teaching geometry, the pupil's attention ought ever to be called to the application which may be made of the abstract truths demonstrated. Were the pupils, after demonstrating the propositions on which the measurement and calculation rests, to be required actually to measure a rectangular or triangular field, and calculate its contents, his interest in the study would be

---

\* Our observations under the head of Tuesday apply equally to the present lessons, to which we may add, that for an elementary course of school training, it has been our endeavour to select the most practical and useful lessons, which, to some of the scholars, may be all they shall receive as a school education; while to others, the exercise of mind they afford will prepare for future and higher eminence.

greatly increased. He would see a meaning and a use in every line he draws, and every figure he sketches.

Were every parish school furnished with specimens of its peculiar plants, flowers, minerals, and living animals, which might be collected by the children of the school, not only would the minds of the youth be enlarged by *daily training lessons*, or each in succession, but the metropolitan museum of such a country might, by the peculiar specimens collected from each parish, present a complete compendium of the natural history of the whole kingdom.

## CHAP. XXIII.

### NORMAL TRAINING SEMINARY.

WHAT is a Normal Seminary? What is the Normal System? are questions frequently asked. In regard to the latter we answer, there is no general designation NORMAL SYSTEM, as every such institution may have a different and particular system of its own. NORMAL is derived from *norma*, a rule. The *norma* of our Institution, therefore, is "The Training System," for the extension and promotion of which it was originally established.

The term *Normal*, although signifying simply a rule, has been generally applied to institutions for the training of schoolmasters. We have only to ascertain the standard or rule of any Normal school or seminary, therefore, in order to know the principles on which we may have our teachers trained in it. In our Institution, it is for the training of the habits of the child as a moral, intellectual, and physical being; and the Institution, as a whole, was the first model of a Normal Training Seminary.

Normal Seminaries have long existed in Prussia, under legislative influence and endowments. The Glasgow Normal Seminary was founded in ignorance of the Prussian plans, or the particular mode of communication, if any, they may present; and having been without endowments of any sort, it is therefore placed in different circumstances. Ours was founded with a view to establish a particular system of communication and moral training; and secondly, to extend it by training teachers to

practise it. A Normal Seminary may give its students instruction in the various elementary branches, or it may confine its attention exclusively to the mode or system of communication, or it may do both of these; or it may add, as in our case, moral training; including the cultivation, not merely of the intellectual, but the whole powers of the child.

In the Glasgow Normal Seminary, instruction is given to the students, but the chief and primary object is, the mode of communication and moral training.

Training is admitted to be necessary in every art but education; the mechanic, the soldier, the sailor, the lawyer, the man of business, all require to be trained—all must learn their art. We would not employ a gardener or an hostler who had not served an apprenticeship; but the persons who are “to teach the young idea how to shoot,” and who may be in possession of a vast fund of knowledge, but ignorant of the arts of communication and moral training, must work themselves into a system, good or indifferent, according to circumstances; not, however, until in general a sad havoc is made of the human intellect, which a regular course of a Normal Training Seminary might prevent. Many teachers work out and arrive at a good system of their own, it is true, but no one man can possess all that may be concentrated and exhibited in a Normal Seminary, to which every student may be trained.

A model school and a Normal Seminary differ in this respect, that the former is a mere exhibition of a particular system, whereas the latter is a training to the practice of it. I may see a system in operation in a model school, just as I might see a lady hem a frill; but the witnessing of this will not enable me to follow her ex-



ample, until cloth and needle are placed in my hands, and I actually learn to do it practically. But although a model school is not a Normal School, yet every normal seminary must possess one or more model schools. I must see the system in operation. I must have it explained to me by suitable trainers. I must endeavour to put it in practice under experienced superintendents; and I must have the model to which to aspire, and children at the same time to work upon; the lack of any of which influences must leave me imperfectly trained.

When this Institution was established, the public had no idea of the propriety or necessity of a teacher being trained to his art; hence the students who enrolled themselves at that period, remained only two or three weeks, or a month—some even imagined they could acquire the system in a day, or half a day, by *simply looking on*; and many notes of introduction have been presented in favour of teachers to remain the *full complement* of two hours! that they might be enabled to carry the system home to their own schools.\* Gradually the period was extended to three months, and this was considered a great sacrifice of time and money (as it still is by very many well-educated young men). But it was soon found, that incomplete as the training of three months was, the additional salaries the students received throughout the kingdom,

---

\* As one of many similar instances of this, it may be mentioned, that on one occasion a lady was recommended by a clergyman, to acquire a practical knowledge of the training system, with the view of introducing it into her school in the country. On calling at the Seminary after mid-day, and presenting her letter of introduction, she was asked how many months she could devote to the object. Her reply was, that she must leave town by the boat in the afternoon at four o'clock, and wished to spend the intermediate time in the Seminary, as she was quite certain, that by seeing the system for an hour or two she would be able to practise it!

even after this short course of training, increased the inducement to enter, so that nine years ago, the period was extended to the present course of six months; that being found the shortest period possible to enable the student *to train himself* properly after he leaves the Institution.

Upon the average, during the last ten years, there have been three or four situations under order, for every trainer who could be brought forward.

In this, as in every other art, the theory may be understood, and the practice not at all. A man may know what he should teach, and yet may be quite incapable, from want of practice, to communicate his knowledge to others, especially to the young, or to form in those under his care those habits, of the importance of which he may be fully convinced.

We shall give a short statement of the leading points of the Glasgow Normal Seminary, which, from the nature of the system pursued, was of necessity original, both as to apparatus, arrangement, and system.

This Normal Training Seminary, the first of the kind established in the kingdom, has four model schools, with from 600 to 700 children of the working classes, viz.:—Initiatory, for children under six years of age; Junior, for children from six to about nine; Senior, for those above nine; and Industrial, for girls above nine or ten years of age—each having a play-ground and gallery, and presenting a model of *no more than the requisite educational establishment for every city and town parish*. The average number of students in attendance in the Institution, is about forty; the minimum course of training is six months. Want of funds to assist the students has prevented the period being extended to twelve months—

—a course quite short enough for the most highly educated to acquire the art.

The time of the students is occupied in the Seminary in giving lessons to the children of the model schools ; observing the mode of conducting the lessons by the masters of each department ; criticising each other in the students' hall, under the direction of the rector and principal trainers, in regard to the manner they have conducted the lessons ; also, vocal music and gymnastics, under separate masters ; and those who are found imperfect in any branch, such as arithmetic, grammar, geography, and history, scripture, or the outlines of science, receive instruction from the private tutors. The whole exercises are conducted on the same natural principles of training ; and the lessons and exercises are so constructed and arranged, as to afford the greatest security that the intellectual, physical, and moral faculties of the children shall be in daily exercise, without attempting to force or overwork any.

Strangers frequently inquire, Who is your normal trainer ? From what we have just stated, it appears, that the masters of each of the departments are normal trainers. In one sense, the rector is more at liberty to give instructions and training than any of the masters of the particular departments. All, however, train the students, and as mind operates upon mind, and manner upon manner, so the variety of the natural capacity of the students, renders it impossible for any one person to officiate so powerfully as a number may. "The sympathy of numbers" is powerful in this, as it is in every other department. For example : a highly imaginative student would feel himself utterly *collapsed*, were his studies and attention exclusively confined to the course that might be pre-

scribed by a mere matter-of-fact trainer, and yet without the solid and sobering influence of one such, the student would be imperfectly trained. This variety of the trainers, acting in different departments, and united on one principle, as already stated, suits the variety of natural talents to be found in the normal students ; and produces that mental *pulverization* and advancement in the art of training, within a given period, which no one or two masters could possibly accomplish.

---

THE ROUTINE.—It is difficult to state here, the precise routine to which the students are subjected, some being intended for the initiatory department ; others for the juvenile ; others for Schools of Industry ; or as Nursery Governesses ; while a large proportion have no object but to acquire the system, and get an appointment in any department for which they may be found suitable.

The male students are uniformly placed first in the Model Initiatory School, and then they alternate fortnightly between it and the Junior and Senior departments, during stated portions of each day, throughout the whole of their course. The remainder of the day is spent at the criticisms, and in perfecting themselves in grammar, geography, &c., or in acquiring a knowledge of music or elocution. In addition to the criticisms, the students practise the system with portions of children from the model schools, one hour and a half per day in the side class-rooms, under the superintendence of the head trainer of the particular department in which they happen to be placed ; and while thus engaged, his place is supplied by the assistant trainer.

The students spend one day weekly in the particular department in which they are placed, simply observing

the master as a model. Each alternate day in succession, for an hour or two in the forenoon, they remain in the hall with a portion of the children from the model schools, practising the system under the superintendence of the rector.

Twice a-week the rector requires from each student a written essay, on some lesson previously given in the model schools, or on some point of the system of training. The time of the students, therefore, is divided between receiving instructions in the theory and art of training, observing the operations of the model schools, and in practising the system in both the covered and uncovered schools under the masters, rector, &c.

The female students, while they enjoy the same variety of superintendence, have their attention more particularly confined to the Initiatory Department and Female School of Industry, Bible and Moral Training, and needle and other industrial work, the latter being primary objects in schools of industry.

The model schools, and students in the various departments, are frequently examined by the secretary and rector; the diplomas of the students being signed by these parties.

---

GYMNASTICS.—We have already said, that the children receive gymnastics, or rather physical exercises, of a kind and to an extent fitted to arrest and maintain their attention during their intellectual and moral lessons, thus rendering physical exercises a means rather than an end. In respect of the students, however, who in turn are to become trainers, something additional is necessary. The Janitor of the Institution, therefore, who is an old soldier, exercises the students several times a week, in such mili-

tary exercises as to standing positions, gait, manners, &c., as are found useful, first to themselves, and afterwards to fit them to train their own scholars.

---

CAN A PERSON TRAIN HIMSELF?—The question is asked, If it be true, as you state, that no person can conduct a training lesson properly until he be trained six months, how comes it that any man could work out the system in the first instance? We answer, that any man may work out the system for himself, provided he keeps the natural principle steadily in view, and pursues it irrespective of labour or expense ; but what took us seven years to accomplish in this way, individually,—as a Normal Training Seminary, subject to the superintendence and criticisms of experienced and well-trained masters, we profess to accomplish in as many months. We do not say that six or eight months will by any means make a perfect trainer, but at the end of that period he will have so overcome the difficulties, as that he may in future easily train himself. The principle, as a whole, however, must be kept steadily and perseveringly in view.

---

CRITICISMS.—This is a part of the system of training for the students, which is highly important, and at the same time requires great delicacy in the management. The principle of the exercise is partly to notice any excellence, but chiefly to exhibit every fault of the students who may have been appointed to conduct the lessons, and that openly and faithfully before their fellow-students and superintendents. Considerable prudence therefore is necessary on the part of the Chairman to keep all in perfect good humour. None can fill the office of Chairman properly, but one who is at once practically as well as theoretically



acquainted with the system in all its departments; for he must be able not merely to tell what is wrong or awanting, but instantly to supply the deficiency, and show how the lessons or exercises ought to be conducted. These criticisms were established a dozen years ago, and although several hundred students have been subjected to them, no bad feelings have arisen, which were not promptly and easily repressed; and then only in the case of those who may be undergoing their first or second *ordeal*, and imagined themselves free from the imperfections faithfully noticed by their fellow-students. On the contrary, these criticisms, public and private, have produced great moral results, and are unquestionably the highest practical polish the students receive. The whole is conducted on the principle, "Do unto others as ye wish they should do unto you." In other words, criticise plainly, as ye wish to be plainly and faithfully criticised.

There being four Model Schools in the Normal Seminary—Initiatory—Junior—Senior, and Female School of Industry; the lessons are given in each of these four departments successively.

---

**PUBLIC CRITICISMS.**—Four students who may have been at least three months in the seminary, are appointed each to give a lesson to the whole gallery, to be conducted on the principles of the system, according to the age and capacity of the children, in the presence of the whole students, the masters of the several departments, and the rector and secretary of the Institution. One of the lessons at each criticism is from the Scriptures, an emblem, or a point of narrative or doctrine. The other three are secular subjects, such as natural history, grammar, &c., or the exercise may consist in conducting the

children to and from the play-ground, and reviewing their conduct on their return to the gallery. Twelve minutes only are allowed for each lesson. This limitation compels the student to condense and keep close to the subject. An appropriate air is sung at the close of each lesson. The singing is also conducted by the student. The four lessons occupy about one hour and a half, after which the whole students leave the children and retire into an adjoining class-room or the hall, where each, in rotation, is asked by the Chairman for his opinion of the lessons given. Those who give the lessons are of course excepted, and must submit *silently* to the criticisms of all. No student is permitted to notice the criticisms of a fellow-student. The whole observations are subject to the review of the Chairman. The observations are usually made by the students and masters, from notes taken during the conducting of the lessons. The female students are present, but are exempted from expressing their sentiments, but which they are required to give afterwards in writing. This *viva voce* criticism occupies about two hours. No defect in the manner, tone of voice, or grammar, is overlooked. Every mispronunciation, error in statement, want of picturing out, or failure to secure the attention of the children during these exercises, is plainly expressed. The Chairman, after giving his own criticisms, reviews the others, and generally enlarges on some point of the system suggested by the nature of the lessons. The whole is closed with prayer as usual.

---

PRIVATE CRITICISMS.—These are termed private, simply because the lessons criticised are conducted in the students' hall without the presence of the children, and may embrace the whole students, or only a portion of them ; the females,

for example, or those who are most advanced in the art of training, and require only to be polished in a few points. The chair is taken as at the public criticisms. One student gives a lesson, and is usually allowed fifteen or twenty minutes. The other students sit in the gallery, and are expected to answer *as children would*, exercising their judgment, however, in this particular, that if an improper question be put, or a too rapid stride taken in the subject, they are expected not to answer, or to fill in an ellipsis, or they show their absurdity by giving a direct answer. And whereas, in the public criticisms, *the children being present*, the student is permitted to go on during the twelve minutes undisturbed, it is the Chairman's duty and privilege in the hall, the children *not being present*, to interfere at any point, where he sees it proper to put the student on the right course of the exercise, and to correct at the moment every error as it is exhibited.

All students in this seminary commence with the Infant or Initiatory Department, and finish with it. No mistake is so fatal to the proper education and training of youth, as the practice of using words or illustrations beyond the capacity of the pupils, and imagining that the possession of knowledge implies the power to communicate it intelligibly to others. The knowledge of a Newton or a Bacon would avail little, without a proper mode of communication, and the highest moral character without the *practical* knowledge of training the moral sensibilities of the pupils, would render his efforts utterly abortive.

Novel and trying as these criticisms are, the student could not, by any other means, or to the same extent, acquire the system of training the child as a whole, within the limited attendance of six or eight months. These

exercises also rub off many incrustations, which must otherwise have remained, and which no teaching, no instruction, or mere observation of the mode, could have removed.

---

QUALIFICATIONS OF APPLICANTS FOR ADMISSION TO THE SEMINARY AS STUDENTS.—Applicants for admission must present to the secretary of the Institution a certificate of character from their clergyman, after which an examination takes place, which is conducted by the rector and three principal masters. If found qualified, they are immediately enrolled as regular students, after paying a fee of £3 3s. for the course, whether such be six, nine, or twelve months. The minimum course is six months. If found very imperfect, the applicant is rejected altogether; but if imperfect only in one or two points, he is placed in the preparatory class.

As to attainments; about three-fourths of the whole male students admitted hitherto, had passed through a course of Latin, to which about one-third had added Greek and mathematics. None can be admitted who are unacquainted with the ordinary elementary branches, &c.; and although six, eight, or nine months, cannot make proficient in knowledge, yet the practical exercise of the system *re-lays* what has formerly been taught, and enables the trainer to communicate all he knows, or may afterwards acquire, in a simple, natural, and efficient manner.

*If everything passes through the understanding first, it is said children will learn little.* The facts brought forward in this publication, and innumerable other illustrations which must occur to every observing and reflecting mind, must at least show that the memory of words is one thing, and the understanding of them is quite another.

Both may and ought to exist simultaneously, but while the former, apart from the latter, is a mere tinkle or sound, all that is truly valuable is found in the latter. Our answer, therefore, is this, what passes through the understanding is got and retained, and what rests on the mere verbal memory is frequently lost.

In proportion as we are simple, are we understood ; and while simplicity is the test, it is also the last and most difficult attainment of a trainer of youth. After all these objections have been answered, it is triumphantly stated, and frequently repeated ; But all STUDENTS who leave the Seminary after being trained, are not equally successful, nor are they all equally qualified to conduct a Training School. Very true, indeed ; but are all teachers equally successful, or well educated ? Are all preachers equally impressive ? Are all who leave the University philosophers or literary men ? Need we wonder, then, that some persons who leave our seminary, are more highly gifted and successful in the art of training than others ? The objection simply amounts to this—that all men are not equally qualified to conduct any system, be that system what it may.

One thing frequently has occurred, which is inconvenient and unfortunate. Teachers are asked by directors of schools, Are you acquainted with the Training System ? They often say they are, and possessing testimonials of respectable elementary attainments, they get appointed to schools, and on entering their duties, the directors find that they are entirely ignorant of the system. On inquiry, it is found they knew the system, because they had *seen* it in operation several times in the Normal Seminary, or in other schools. Repeated objections are made to us on this score. Our answer is as before, Were I a

cabinetmaker or a watchmaker, ought I to be responsible for the fact, that all who had seen me make a chair, or the delicate and complicated machinery of a watch, and had not been trained, must fail in the attempt of making either ?

Many of the foregoing objections are felt by students who enter the Normal Seminary for the purpose of acquiring a knowledge of the system ; but all are gradually dissipated as they become trainers, and can practise the system. Its very simplicity is the greatest stumbling-block, whilst it is their highest attainment.

The common experience of the students is—During the first fortnight, *sceptical* as to the power and efficiency of the system. At the end of a month, *bewildered*. At the expiration of two months, *cautious* in offering objections. At the end of four months, *beginning* to be able to give a gallery lesson. At the termination of six or seven months, confessing that they are but beginning *to see* the beauty and power of a system which they can only master by long practice. And it is their uniform experience ever after, that each successive year's practice not only adds to their own knowledge of the system, but to the power and efficiency of cultivating the physical and moral, as well as the intellectual faculties of the children. If such be the experience of students, it is evident that a visit of two or three hours cannot fully exhibit the system.

It is found that every man who is qualified to be a teacher of youth may become a trainer ; and the best security for the universal extension of the system is, that a teacher no sooner becomes a trainer than he loves it. But while called upon to adhere to certain great principles, he is permitted to practise the system precisely in accordance with the peculiarity of his own talents, transfusing,



by a natural process, his own extent of knowledge into the minds of his pupils, and in every department rendering himself their pattern, companion, and leader, in the formation of their intellectual and moral habits.

Another objector says, If you are to have Bible Training, and Moral Training, and Secular Training in schools, in addition to the ordinary branches of education, society would not produce a sufficient number of suitable masters. We have them not, it is said. Now, this is quite true; but why not create them? Why not prepare a set of intelligent Christian trainers for the young, just as we raise Christian preachers for the more advanced in life? This is precisely the object and end of the Glasgow Normal Training Seminary.

But a further objection is stated. What! do you say that six or seven months' training will accomplish this? No, certainly; we admit that it cannot. It merely puts a man in the way of training himself, and of enabling him to rise in the scale as a moral and intellectual trainer of youth. Funds alone are wanted to support the students long enough in the Seminary to accomplish this. The machinery and mode of working it, are already provided; it is for the public to come forward with the means of supporting it.

The innumerable proofs\* of the power of the system, as already exhibited, show that when fully practised, not indeed as a stereotyped one, but in accordance with the varied natural powers of the master, it would, under the blessing of God, accomplish as great a change in the moral world as the steam-engine has done in the commercial. It is true, the elements of moral and intellectual training

---

\* See Letters from Parents, Teachers, and Directors of Schools.

are not new. They are to be found in the Scriptures of the Old and New Testaments vividly set forth, but, except in families, we have not followed them. Steam existed in the days of Noah, but not till lately was its nature understood, and its power exhibited, as in the machinery of a steam-engine.

One great stumbling-block still remains unnoticed, the fact that under this system we train infants, as a first stage. It is imagined by some that infants can learn nothing. Certainly they cannot learn Greek, but they can learn evil. Our objectors presume, also, that because the teaching of infants, or the cramming system, has failed, that the *training* of infants must also fail. If so, then must the mother fail, who trains even from the cradle. Wisely she trains, for teach she cannot at that period of life ; and as the intelligent and judicious mother gives instruction chiefly orally, so oral instruction forms an important feature of the Training System from the earliest to the latest period of the child's education. It is not confined to the infant, or to one branch, but onward through every stage, and in every department.

Strangers seeing pictures of animals, &c., hung up against the walls of our schools, frequently imagine that pictures form an important and particular part of the system. The use of pictures and objects is not to be refused ; they are highly useful, more especially when properly pictured out in words, and it would be unwise to refuse the use of what belonged to other and previous systems, merely because not peculiar to our own. But they startle at the sight of a picture, lest it savour of the infant system.

What is termed the Infant School System of education—benevolent as its original intentions were—has proved

a complete failure, and chiefly so, because it cannot be carried out beyond a certain point. It is a physical training, and an exercise of the powers of observation on objects and pictures; but it wants that "*picturing out*" by which you advance from great outlines to minute points, and minuter still, *ad infinitum*. It wants the union of the stimulating question with the cementing and correcting ellipsis. The facts are like a pile of loose stones, on which no superstructure can be raised, or at least until they are re-laid and cemented. The child generally attains no greater an amount of knowledge in three years, than in as many months; hence the listlessness and apathy too generally attendant on these schools, and the necessity and practice of introducing books to occupy the time and attention of the scholars.

When a teacher enters our seminary, who has been accustomed to this gin-horse style of communicating facts, he requires a considerable extra period of training to undo his previous habits.

But some Infant Schools, as well as Juvenile Schools, in various parts of the kingdom, have lately adopted some of the peculiarities of the Training System, retaining their old names—Infant School System, Intellectual System, &c. We are aware it is common to adopt parts and portions of our system into juvenile schools; and equally common to introduce the more obvious and attainable parts of the system—pictures and objects, for example—which are not peculiar to us, and to term it the Training System. Others get a gallery and a play-place, and think they have adopted the system, but unless the system be embraced *as a whole*, and the teachers be trained to use and conduct the machinery, we are not responsible for the success of mere portions of it.

When, however, we imagine we have met all objections, a startling one presents itself as to the real power and efficiency of the system. Why are many of your children, who appear in school well behaved, not quite so much so at home, or among companions, or in their own neighbourhoods? How long have these children been at a moral training school? we ask. *Oh, they are in this very school.* How long have they been there? we still ask. Why, three or four months. And how old are they? Are they three, five, or seven years of age? *O, no, about ten or eleven.* About ten or eleven, after acquiring bad habits on the streets, and among companions; you then expect such to be undone, and better habits formed, in half as many months as the child has lived years! The system is powerful certainly, but we do not expect it can work miracles. As an elucidation of this point, we may state, that after the closest inspection of the system by those most practically acquainted with it, the following is considered something like the proportionable influence it has on children of various ages. As formerly stated, if we take the effects of the system upon a child of nine years of age, who is brought under its influence for the first time, as *one*; at six years of age it will be as *four*; and at three years of age as *sixteen*. Thus, it is more difficult to train a child at six than at three—and decidedly more so at nine or ten. The most highly cultivated trainers will be required for the juniors of three or six years,—not *any sort of person*, as is usually imagined,—just as a more accomplished gardener is required for exotics than for forest trees—for tender than for hardy plants.

---

STUDENTS OF BOTH SEXES TRAINED.—Nearly nine hun-

dred students have been trained since the commencement of the Institution, besides a large number of teachers who were permitted during the first six years of its establishment, to remain from one to four weeks ; but these are now entirely excluded, as their admission was found to do an injustice to the system, and to the regular students under training ; professing, as these teachers frequently did (honestly, we believe), that they knew the system by looking at it, just as if one by seeing the thing done, could acquire the art of shoemaking or landscape painting. A student once enrolled, however, and having finished the usual course, is privileged to enter the seminary when and as often as he pleases ; and it is cheering to find so many return annually from all quarters to spend a portion of their vacation in the seminary.

---

NUMBER OF STUDENTS TRAINED.—For several years lately, the average attendance has been about 40, varying according to the season of the year. In November last, the number attained its maximum, when we numbered 87 students. At the present moment, it is 53 ; and it may be interesting to state, that this number is from 33 counties in Scotland and England, 4 from Ireland, 2 from the West Indies, 1 from the East Indies, 1 a native female from Caffrara, and 1 a soldier from the 92d Regiment, at present stationed in the Infantry Barracks.

---

LODGING OF STUDENTS.—The buildings of our Seminary are not calculated to lodge the students within its walls ; but there are in the immediate neighbourhood of the institution some very respectable private families, who make it their business to accommodate the students with lodging and attendance. The names and character of

these parties are well known to our masters, so that male or female students can be immediately and comfortably lodged according to the extent of their means.

The lodging of students is a subject which has occupied the attention of our friends in England, and it is highly important.

We are aware, that in answer to queries sent to practical men throughout the country, by persons intending to establish Normal Seminaries, the almost uniform answer has been: "By all means have your students lodged within the walls of the Institution, and under the eye of the principal or rector." But the question for consideration is: "Are they, or *can* they be always under such superintendence? and if not, will "*the sympathy of numbers,*" and such close intimacy, *upon the whole*, operate favourably or unfavourably on their morals? We doubt much if the former is found in general to be the result. Most certainly, for nearly twenty years, we have found the opposite principle, so far from being inferior, actually beneficial (see pp. 138-40). The addition of Moral Training in the model schools, which extends to the students, proves influential as a regulator, even during their limited course of attendance.

Wherever *Moral Training* is established, our plan is safe; but in all Normal institutions, where intellectual culture is the exclusive or primary object in view (even although the Scriptures be daily read), we dare not recommend our *liberty mode* to be adopted.

Moral and Intellectual training during the day in school, and separate houses in the evening, we find the safer mode for both normal students and scholars.

In respect of the variety of religious communions, on the part of the students, we have experienced no practi-



cal difficulty whatever. One principle regulates the masters. The Seminary is open to persons of all religious denominations. All religious denominations freely participate in the benefits of the Institution. Students have presented notes of introduction from ministers of all denominations—Established and Dissenting. The same Christian and moral influence bears upon all, and the utmost harmony and peace have uniformly prevailed in every department of the Seminary between trainers, scholars, and students.

---

CAN A MODEL SCHOOL BECOME A NORMAL TRAINING SEMINARY?—A single Infant School, and a Juvenile School, under one roof, for children of two or three to fourteen years of age, cannot be rendered a Normal Seminary for training schoolmasters, without injury both to trainers and scholars, but they may present a model *for* the training of children.

The Model Schools of our seminary are not improved by their being part of a Normal Seminary; and nothing prevents their being seriously injured, but the superior tact and management of their masters. Every time a student teaches or trains a class, the children to a certain extent are injured. Every county has its provincial dialect, and every student, to a certain extent, carries portions of it along with him; and even admitting the student to possess a good mode of communication, yet it differs from that of the regular master, and proves so far injurious.

Besides this, the fact of questions being propounded oftentimes unimportant, with all the solemnity of novelty, but which may have been put by former students a hundred times before, is a severe trial of the risible facul-

ties of the children, whose rapidity of answering sometimes stultifies the young student, under the slow and stereotyped list of questions he has previously prepared for himself. To repress and regulate such feelings on the part of the children by the master of the particular department is a part of moral training, and proves an excellent intellectual and moral exercise for the student himself.

Without two *additional* masters for teaching and training, and a rector to superintend the whole establishment, no school, consisting of Infant and Juvenile departments, and with only one or two masters to each, can become a Normal Seminary; and we may add, that any Normal Seminary on the Training System, without an Infant department, must be a very imperfect one; for it is only by copying the simplicity which must be pursued with very young children, that the student can be perfected in his habits as a trainer. Those who have arrived at the height of simplification being the best *Infant trainers*, if possessed of the requisite elementary knowledge, are uniformly the best Juvenile trainers.

---

ASSISTANTS.—On the plan pursued in this seminary every Juvenile Training School ought to have two trainers, viz., a first and a second master: the one for the younger children of six to eight years of age, and the other for those older and more advanced; and as the earlier stages are the more important, the ground-work or foundation of future excellence being then laid, so the second master ought to be an accomplished man, and regularly trained.

---

In several schools and seminaries lately established,

having the Training System professedly in view, the more obvious parts of the system have been adopted, and others left out. For example, a gallery and a play-ground, with an untrained master, incapable of employing either, in a natural or efficient manner; or, on the other hand, a trained master without play-ground and gallery as apparatus whereby to exercise his art. These have been established under different names, such as—the Gallery system, the Simultaneous, the Elliptical, the Suggestive, the Constructive, the Interrogatory—each of which, no doubt, is a part of the Training System, but not the system itself. Want of funds no doubt prevents the adoption of the whole system in many cases; but a complete machine alone can be expected to produce efficient results.

We doubt not the period will soon arrive when Normal Training Seminaries will be spread over the country, and when young teachers will not grudge spending a couple of years under training, as a part of their educational curriculum; and that very many who intend to superintend schools will spend a few months, not in looking on or observing merely, but in acquiring the art of training, which may be rendered, and actually is, a most elegant accomplishment.

---

TRAINERS OF THE SEMINARY.—We cannot close without bearing testimony to the zeal, judgment, and assiduity of the masters and mistresses of this establishment, and particularly during the last three years of trial, in the then unsettled state of the Church, which eventually issued in a disruption. Without endowment or regular funds for the support of the Institution beyond the small fees of the children and students, and without even a

month's certainty of their services being continued, they have laboured and stood firm to their post, doing their duty to children and students with the greatest cheerfulness, and several times resisting the most tempting offers of permanent and more lucrative situations. Such individuals certainly deserve well of their country and of mankind.

It is now fixed that the buildings which accommodated the Normal Training Seminary during the last eight years (nearly one-half of the period of its existence) are to become the property of the Established Church exclusively on 15th May next. What particular system the Established Church Committee intend to pursue in these buildings we do not know. Most certainly there is room for more than one Institution, our supply hitherto not having equalled one-third of the demand.

All the masters, being members of the Free Church, are required to leave the buildings in consequence of the above arrangement.

The Free Church Committee are providing suitable buildings and play-grounds for the whole Institution,\* so that the services of the present experienced masters will be retained, and the Training System and Normal Seminary continued in full efficiency.

Children and Students of all denominations continue to be enrolled as heretofore.

---

\* South Entrance by Wellington Arcade, Sauchiehall Road.

## CHAP. XXIV.

### PROGRESS AND EFFECTS OF THE SYSTEM.

WERE we to trace the progress and effects of the Training System, from its commencement in 1826 to the present day, it would be both tiresome and uninteresting. The small dripping stream has indeed become a river, which, week after week, and year after year, has sent, and is sending, its refreshing waters to many parts of our own and other lands.

Our limits enable us to notice only a very few particulars. The testimony of nearly every student, and innumerable clergymen and directors of schools, and the parents of the children, bear witness, as well to its progress as to its powerful effects on the intellectual and moral habits of the young.

The commencement was made in a single school for children under six years of age. Three years afterwards, as soon as it was clearly seen and satisfactorily proved, that the same natural principles of intellectual and moral culture might be applied to children of all ages, and in all branches of a school education,—another school was added for children of from six to fourteen years of age, with class-rooms for the students.

Teachers, both male and female, were trained from the very commencement, who were appointed to schools in different parts of Scotland, England, Ireland, the West Indies, Australia, and Canada. Several of them were missionaries and catechists.

After the lapse of ten years from its commencement—

viz. in 1837—suitable buildings were erected, capable of accommodating not merely the two Model Schools, &c., but large halls for subdividing the Juvenile School into two departments, viz. Junior and Senior, the former for children of from six to eight or nine years, and the latter for those above that age, each being provided with several class-rooms. Besides these, an Industrial Model School was established for girls above ten. The buildings also contained a commodious hall for the normal students; rooms, &c., for a library and museum; and suitable playgrounds for each of the departments surrounded them. All this was done with a view to the extension and permanence of the system.

The average number of children (boys and girls) in the four model schools has been between 500 and 600. During the last ten years, however, partly from the great pressure to gain admittance (many families having removed from distant parts of the city to near the seminary for this purpose), but principally from the number who were advancing from the Initiatory and Junior onwards to the other departments, and who were unwilling to leave the seminary, the number has increased to about 700.

It may be asked, What are the effects of the system? These can scarcely be estimated from the apparent results merely, however encouraging, because in working out and establishing a new principle in popular education, unsupported as it was at first by the public generally, difficulties of no ordinary nature were to be encountered. Yet the result has exceeded the most sanguine expectations, and proves that the work is God's, and that, devoid of his blessing, the pains and labour, and pecuniary sacrifice bestowed, must have proved utterly fruitless.

One highly important effect which we have laboured



hard to accomplish, has followed, and is of itself a sufficient return for all the time and expenditure bestowed. We allude to the fact that this Institution has been the means of raising the emoluments of private teachers to, in general, fully one-third more, with the evident prospect of a progressive improvement. At the commencement of our labours, £50, £60, or £70, were the usual or highest sums offered for schoolmasters, and sometimes only £30 or £40. £100 a-year is now a very common amount offered; £80 we consider a fair remuneration; but £70 too low, except to commence with for the first year. In many cases, very much higher salaries have been offered, in the cases of grammar schools and private academies.

We have, of course, different qualities of trainers, A, B, and C, and the differences in their qualifications are partly natural, and partly acquired. In some cases, the most highly educated have a bad manner, or are deficient in energy. In others, very moderate attainments are united with great fire and a winning and impressive manner. In many more instances, a fair and improvable manner is united with respectable attainments. To all these qualifications in a trainer of youth a comparative value is, of course, attached.

Some years ago, we were frequently urged, by friends, to direct our efforts to the obtaining of higher salaries for teachers in the first instance, and to train them afterwards; but we preferred the true mercantile principle, to provide a superior article, and then claim a higher price. This has been the uniform and successful mode of procedure.

It may be asked, What are the effects of the system upon the children? The fluctuations in their attendance

during the first years of the Model and other Schools, arising from the ignorance or prejudice of parents, and from other causes, have, in a measure, broken that chain of evidence which, in future years, we hope may be kept more entire. Enough, however, is known to prove the efficiency of the system upon the conduct of the children at home, and among companions out of school (the only sure proof of the effects of Moral Training). One of our masters alone can trace about one hundred of his scholars, now young men and women all doing well. We scarcely know of a single instance of a decided falling away. We have been told of whole families which have been benefited by the reflex influence of one or two of their children who attended these and other Training Schools. We possess several hundred letters from parents, guardians, and directors of schools, illustrative of the good effects of the system. The effects upon the students are also salutary, the whole course of the Seminary tending to generate and confirm good principles as well as correct habits. The seeds of improvement are laid in the delight the children feel in the ordinary school exercises, in doors and out of doors, and which they prefer to remaining among such companions as they pick up on the street. This is an effect infinite in its consequences on the character of many.

One effect must not be overlooked, although of less value than the moral improvement of the children, and it is this:—From the inspection the children undergo each day, and the natural influence of sympathy, the whole scholars come to school much cleaner and better dressed than in ordinary schools. This has led visitors to imagine that our training schools are not attended by the children of the poor and working classes. Without, how-

ever, giving the children one article of dress, or so much as once in a week requiring one child to wash his hands or face on coming to school, *such* is the effect of the system in producing habits of order and cleanliness.

We believe school is now liked better in general than in days of old; but we were scarcely prepared for such a change, as that even during a summer vacation, the children should prefer remaining in school, when in their power to leave. Yet such is the fact. During the month of July, 1838, there was a vacation in the seminary, and in order to employ some of the students who felt it inconvenient to return home, an attempt was made to retain a few of the children of one department, leaving them at perfect liberty to remain or not, as they pleased. Out of 180, 120 remained in close attendance (a larger number than was desirable); and when asked the reason, they gave for answer, that they had between their lessons better *fun* in the playground than they could get on the streets. A similar disposition was manifested by many of the children at each of the late vacations. The universal feeling seems to be, "School is a pleasure."

About fifteen months ago, circulars were issued to the parents of the children attending the Normal Training Seminary. These were taken home by the children without any communication on the part of the teachers with their parents. A small space only was left to each of the sixteen printed queries, with the exception of the last, upon which they might, if they chose, enlarge. 272 answers were received in all. The first fifty which were filled up and returned the following day, we happened to show to the editor of one of our public journals and he unexpectedly noticed them in his next publication, as follows:—

## TESTIMONY OF PARENTS.

*The Training System pursued in the Model Schools of the Glasgow Normal Seminary.*

“ The first object of the Training System, as pursued in the Model Schools of the Glasgow Normal Seminary, is to introduce moral and intellectual training, as well as religious instruction ; in other words, to train the youth of all ages to correct habits of thinking, feeling, and acting, in addition to the ordinary branches of a school education, which branches are also conducted on a plan peculiar to the system. One great object of the playground, and the gallery, with the superintendence of the master, is to carry out in school, as nearly as possible, family training (which is the best standard of all training), during those hours of the day when children and parents are generally of necessity separated. Parents must be the best judges of the improvement of their children under such a system ; and many of our readers will remember the satisfactory and gratifying testimony they bore to its success, when the training system, many years ago, was exemplified only on the small scale of the Saltmarket Infant School. With the view of putting it to the same test in its present extended and efficient form, Mr. Stow, the Hon. Secretary to the Normal Seminary, lately issued schedules to the parents and guardians of six hundred children attending the schools, inquiring into the intellectual, moral, religious, and physical effects of the training system on the children. To these queries, which are very minute and exact, returns have been given in on the part of four hundred children, and which, if digested, as we hope they will be, would furnish a mass

of instructive educational statistics. Having examined a number of the schedules, we shall quote indiscriminately, although necessarily in an abridged form, some of the answers to the queries which are of greatest interest to the friends of education."

Query 3.—"Are you satisfied or not with the amount of Scriptural instruction, or as it is termed, Bible training, which they have received?"

Answers.—Uniformly "satisfied," perfectly satisfied," &c.

Query 8.—"Do you find the health of your children injured or improved by the system pursued in the Training School?"

Answers all in the affirmative, "Naturally robust, but no doubt that the exercise is very favourable to his health; "Not injured;" "Improved;" "Much improved;" are the general replies.

Query 9.—"Do you find your children more or less obedient to you at home, since they entered the Training School?"

Answers exhibit an amusing and characteristic variety; most say, "much improved," "more obedient," "better," &c.; but such as the following occur—"they are always obedient;" "they were always obedient, *for this obvious reason*, they *had* to be so, and it still seems to cling to them;" "commonly very obedient, perhaps more so since he attended;" "do not know any difference;" "they are certainly not less obedient, but being brought up in habits of obedience, the effect of the system is not remarked;" "they were always obedient;" "no difference;" "they have always been obedient to their parents," "they were obedient before going to the Normal School, and I have no reason to say they have changed," &c.

Query 11.—"Do you find the system has induced your children to be more or less attentive to their religious duties on week-days and on Sabbaths?"

General answer, "More attentive," with scarcely any exception.

Query 12.—"Do you find, upon the whole, that the system of

moral superintendence at school has proved any assistance to your family training at home?"

Answers.—“ He communicates his instructions to his brothers and sisters, which is in my estimation of great importance.” “ No doubt it has assisted us in our instructions.” “ I consider the system a great assistance to family training.” The answers are all in similar terms.

Query 13.—“ Do you find your children anxious to attend school?"

The answers are, almost without exception, strongly affirmative.

The parents, in reply to another query, express a decided preference for the Training System over the old system pursued in schools. This is still further brought out in their answers to the last query :—

“ What effect on society in towns would the Training System, in your judgment, have, if universally established?"

Answers.—“ A very great effect for the better, and a decided improvement for the next generation.” “ A much to be desired effect indeed.” “ In my judgment, if such mode of teaching were universally adopted, and the children generally brought under such training, the effect would be, that instead of having our bridewells and penitentiaries filled with criminals, the number of such would be comparatively few.” “ This is more than my pen can indite; the effects would be of greater good than our minds can conceive.” “ Taking even our own children as a specimen, we are very much inclined to think that it would have a very good effect.” “ As far as I am able to judge on so interesting and important a subject, I am of opinion that if universally established, the system would very generally improve the character, and increase the comforts of society.” “ Would be fraught with incalculable good.” “ Would greatly diminish crime, and prove a blessing to society, both in town and country.” “ It would have a great effect; for my part, I wish that my children had been sooner sent to it.” “ A very beneficial influence.” “ It would materially improve society.” “ Would have a good effect in two ways; first, by being not so confining as the



old system, it encourages children to attend school, and gives them a desire to learn; second, the fees not being so high, the poorer classes have an opportunity of giving their children education, which may be the means of both their spiritual and temporal welfare."

Similar testimonies might be multiplied a hundredfold. The parents appear to be perfectly unanimous as to the value and capabilities of the system to elevate the working classes of society.

The first fifty returns having been noticed by the Editor, it was thought proper that he should peruse all that were received within the first three or four days. The following are his observations on these:—

#### TRAINING SYSTEM IN THE GLASGOW NORMAL SEMINARY.

Last Tuesday we laid before our readers some of the returns given in by parents to the schedule issued by Mr. Stow, inquiring into the effects of the training system on the intellectual improvement, moral habits, and physical condition of the children attending the model schools. The whole returns are from 196 parents, representing 509 of the children attending the schools; and as the whole number in the schools is a little above 600, it is presumed that the remainder of the parents are either unable or disinclined to answer the questions. This is acknowledged by some whose children have only attended the school for a short time, and the caution evinced in these circumstances adds value to the testimonials given in by those who have had longer experience of the advantages of the system. Its appreciation in the neighbourhood of the seminary, from which the children are drawn, is further

shown by the fact, that 100 children are waiting at the present time for admission, beyond the number which the schools can accommodate. During the first two years after the establishment of the system, parents had to be induced to send their children by offers to educate them almost free of charge ; but there is now the keenest competition on the part of parents to get their children's names put upon the list for every new quarter. We attach great importance to all the answers to the queries, which are written in such a manner as shows an intelligent discrimination, as well as a cordial approval, of the merits and effects of the system. The answers to the last query are particularly interesting, as exhibiting the views of those who have had the best opportunities of observing the practical effects of the training system, as to the advantages which society at large would derive from its extension. We again quote, and in this instance, without abridgment, some of the answers to this question :—

“What effect on society in towns would the training system, in your judgment, have, if universally established ?”

“I think the effect would be highly beneficial both to the individuals themselves and to society at large, both in a spiritual and moral point of view, and I would like to see it universally adopted.”

“I think it is eminently calculated to produce the intended effect, namely, to infuse into the young mind correct habits of thought, affection, and outward behaviour ; and could it be universally adopted, must soon produce a very beneficial result upon society.”

“Laying the foundation of general knowledge, and forming useful and intelligent members of society.”

“In my opinion, judging from the many examples that come

under my notice, it would materially tend to improve the morals, sharpen the understanding, and diffuse very generally habits of obedience, perseverance, and industry."

"It would have the effect of preventing the formation of many bad habits; at the same time, it would promote the formation of many good ones; and, if universally adopted, would lessen crime, and elevate the rising generation in the scale of virtue and happiness."

"The effect would be, that from being a moral wilderness, it would become as a well-watered garden—ignorance, crime, and irreligion, would be banished, and poverty and wretchedness would be comparatively unknown."

"First, I consider we would have no need of policemen; second, No restraint in allowing admittance to the public into public gardens, as I am satisfied not a plant or shrub would be injured; third, That superiors, inferiors, and equals, would then hold intercourse as Christians—in fact, it is my humble opinion, 'it would sweeten the breath of British society.'"

"A most beneficial effect, and no need for police."

"In my judgment, the training system, if universally established on the plan of the Glasgow Model School, would be of the most incalculable value to the interests of morality and religion in towns, and in a few years would dissipate much error and vice from the land."

"It would raise the tone of morality in a very great degree; and I think that it should be the duty of Government to provide similar institutions all over the country, and enable those who are not able to pay for the education of their children, to get admission to them gratis. They should use every inducement to get them to attend; nay, I would say, should compel them to attend, the interests of the whole community being at stake."

"It would, in my opinion, do much good in a moral point of view, besides giving that natural ease and modesty of deportment which I think it is calculated to instil into the young."

"In my opinion the adoption of the system would change the character of the rising generation. It would expand their minds, improve their hearts, and give a proper bent to their affections—cause moral and relative duties to be a pleasing

obligation, and religious duties to be better fulfilled. It would decrease crime, and increase habits of industry ; and, in fact, in a few years, would change the aspect of society much for the better, especially among the middle and lower classes."

"I believe the training system, if universally established, would be productive of the very best consequences to society, especially in large towns, as the youth of all ages and grades come so readily into contact. The more expert knave finds little trouble in communicating his experience to the less perfect, and his mind being a mere blank, is susceptible of any impression ; but the universality of the training system would of course cultivate a far greater proportion of the human mind. Vice, then, for want of embodiment, would, in a great measure, disappear. These are the hasty answers I have been enabled to give to the queries proposed ; and as I believe the cultivation of the human mind to be of the very highest importance, both as it affects our present happiness and future prospects here and hereafter ; my warmest gratitude is due to the secretary and teachers of the Glasgow Normal Seminary, for their arduous and continued exertion in the cause of the education of youth."

"We believe that the training system of education would tend greatly to promote the moral improvement of society, by leading children to avoid those pernicious habits and customs so ruinous to man, physically, morally, and intellectually."

"The training system, if universally adopted, and brought within the reach of all children, would, in my judgment, have a most beneficial effect in raising the intellectual and moral character of society."

"Such a beneficial effect as could not be easily estimated. Secular knowledge, not based on sound scriptural training, does not deserve the name of education."

"Most certainly a good effect."

Similar inquiries were made, and equally satisfactory answers were received respectively in the years 1831 and 1834. At each of these periods, the parents who could not write crowded to the schools to state the

high gratification they felt in regard to the moral and intellectual improvement of their children.

From clergymen and directors of schools everywhere, we have received, I may say, unanimously, the most satisfactory testimony as to the powerful effects of the system, in some cases too laudatory to transcribe. The condition of children generally, in every part of the country, is stated by our students as being low in the extreme, intellectually and morally, and this has been fully corroborated by the directors who appointed these trainers to their situations.

Some of our trainers have been appointed to prisons for juvenile delinquents. We shall transcribe a single paragraph of a letter from the assistant of one of these trainers who had left the prison for another situation. It is addressed to his former master, and I had an opportunity of perusing it. The letter is dated 12th March, 1845:—

“I rejoice that I was the humble means of effecting a small portion of the good which you have since matured and perfected. Having seen the extraordinary effects of the training system, I cannot but avow my partisanship, and I am fully resolved to pursue the same course at — as at —. In so doing, my firmness will be severely tested. Some of our masters, not even excepting the — students! characterise our views as Utopian—something that may be dreamed of, but never realized. If I could show them all the fierce tempers you have subdued and softened—all the vicious propensities you have laid asleep—all the evil habits engendered and fixed by a life of sin, you have eradicated—and all the desperate characters you have reclaimed, then the system would be established without fear of refutation.”

The average number of Normal students during the last few years, has been about forty, varying according to the season of the year. In November last, the number had increased to 87. At this moment it is 65.

We may notice a few of the places to which the students have been appointed.

To the West India Islands, between twenty and thirty, for private schools, and for the Government Mico charities. The superintendent of the whole of the Mico charity schools, and rector of their Normal Training Seminary for native trainers, was a former student of this institution.

To British America several had been appointed to private schools, and one as rector of a small Normal Seminary.

To Australia, eighteen, assisted by Government.

To Ceylon, by order of the Right Hon. Lord Stanley, colonial secretary, two rectors as heads of different Normal training seminaries for native teachers. These institutions are situated at Colombo and Candy. To the former was appointed Mr. Knighton (Episcopalian), and to the latter, Mr. Murdoch (United Secession).

Repeated orders have been received from the United States (but we failed in inducing any to accept of the situations offered).

A large number have been appointed to the Poor Law Unions of England, a most noble enterprise on the part of the Poor Law Commissioners, ever since 1837, when our seminary was officially honoured by a visit from J. P. Kaye Shuttleworth, and C. J. Tuffnell, Esqs. These union schools require to be more fully encouraged and extended by the boards of guardians, in their several districts. It is stated as being well known that "there are at the least 4500 poor neglected outcast children in such unions throughout England," who too generally have been turned out upon society, to this extent, *every few years*, ignorant and untrained, and, therefore, pests to the community.



The Wesleyan Conference committee have not only sent a large number of students of both sexes to be trained for private schools throughout England, but lately they have *sent back* several of their most accomplished trainers to acquire the system more fully, preparatory to the establishment of a large institution of their own, in the metropolis, to be conducted on the *complete* training system.

Several trainers have also been furnished to the Establishment at Norwood, and the popular and talented head master of Method at the institution at Battersea was trained in this seminary several years ago.

Some clergymen and licentiates have undergone a course of training, as also several foreign missionaries and catechists.

Clergymen of the Church of England in the various counties have ordered trainers for their parish schools. We regret not being able to supply more than a fourth or a fifth of such orders, from the limited number of Episcopalian students. Many, however, have gladly employed Presbyterians, who expressed a willingness to conform to the church service. The demand continues undiminished to the present time.

A highly respectable deputation from the National Society visited this seminary some years ago, after which were established the Diocesan Training Schools of England for the training of schoolmasters. The system of instruction pursued, excellent in itself as it must be, from the high character of the masters, *is not, however*, the training system.

A most interesting experiment is now being made at Parkhurst reformatory prison, Isle of Wight, which is under the immediate patronage of the Right Hon. the Home

Secretary, and to which two trainers were sent eighteen months ago. One who had been appointed about seven years ago, died after being there only a couple of years. Many difficulties have been experienced in that institution in establishing the complete principle of moral and intellectual training for the juvenile delinquents, not merely in the arrangement of the premises, apparatus, &c., but in the procuring of proper masters. A third individual from this seminary has just been appointed as assistant trainer, and as the arrangements of this prison with its galleries, play-grounds, &c. are being completed for the entire training system, this will prove one of the most interesting experiments yet made in prison discipline. The happiest results are likely to flow from this as a reformatory model for juvenile delinquents, even to Europe at large.

In Scotland, a large number have been appointed in towns and in the country, for parochial and private schools,—to the latter more frequently, however, from the difficulty of getting the heritors to be at the expense of altering the construction of the parish schools, or of providing play-grounds and other apparatus.

Persons of every evangelical denomination, churchmen and dissenters, have been regularly under training in this institution, all joining with the most perfect unity and good feeling under our Christian masters, and Scriptural system ; and it is pleasing to notice that while many clergymen and directors of schools required trainers of their own communion, whom we were sometimes unable to appoint, they frequently, in the spirit of charity, accepted for their schools trainers of other communions.

Some idea of the demand for trainers, the amount of correspondence, and influence of this institution, may be

formed, when we state, that for the last eight or ten years I officially have had in my possession, at all times, the patronage of situations varying in total value from £800 or £1000 to £2000. The value of situations ordered during that period has been on the average each year about £20,000, although from the limited number of students that we could possibly bring forward, the value of the actual appointments has only amounted to between £6000 and £7000 annually.

Nothing but the want of funds to assist the students in supporting themselves, prevented us from making the minimum course of training twelve months instead of six as at present.\* Had three months been a sufficient course, we believe five times the number of students would readily have enrolled themselves. It has been our weekly, nay, almost daily duty, painful though it was, to decline such applications for admission, and frequently from persons of the highest attainments.

From among the many letters in my possession, highly laudatory of the system, I select one which was received by a friend of mine, a former student of this seminary, and which appeared lately in one of our public journals. Notwithstanding its unfortunate personality, still, for the sake of the exhibition which it affords of the progress of the system in foreign parts, I give it entire, along with the note which accompanied it.

*To the Editor of the Scottish Guardian.*

Glasgow, 28th Dec., 1844.

MR. EDITOR,—I have had the pleasure of receiving the accompanying letter from my esteemed friend, the Rev. W. Hauser, Superintendent of the Mission of the United Brethren in the

---

\* For qualifications, &c., see previous Chapter.

Danish West Indies ; and I think it due to the distinguished individual of whom it speaks so highly, as well as to the system which he has laboured so indefatigably to introduce, that it should have a place in your columns.

It is to me altogether unaccountable, that, while success should have so eminently followed the introduction of the Training System into England, North America, and the West Indies, here, in Glasgow, where it took its rise, there should not be found one school where it is allowed to be thoroughly carried out. In the training seminaries of the Mico Charity in Jamaica and Antigua, we have been privileged to send out upwards of two hundred natives to conduct schools in connection with the various denominations in the different islands, and at each of our institutions the demand is greatly beyond what we are able to supply. Wherever one of our trainers has been located, we have invariably had persons sent to our seminary from schools in the vicinity ; affording a proof of the superiority of the system over that upon which they were accustomed to conduct their schools. If the testimony of the clergy and missionaries, whose teachers have been trained under the Mico Charity, would be regarded of any value, I have in my possession a host of letters from them, recording their experience of the vastly improved character of the instruction, and the changed appearance of the children. One excellent missionary says—"After having been long engaged in the work of education at home, and now that I have seen the Training System in operation in my own school so efficiently carried out by —, I have no hesitation in saying that I regard it above all others suited for the negro children."

I am, Mr. Editor,

Yours, &c.,

JOHN MILLER,

General Superintendent, Mico Charity  
Normal Schools.

---

London, 21st Dec., 1844.

MY DEAR BROTHER MILLER,—You will be interested to hear of the publication of a work in the German language, translated from the English, entitled, Stow's Training System, which, as

you well know, I value extremely. The appearance of this excellent work, and the publication of its incomparable system, in my native land, where it has been hitherto quite unknown, is not only a matter of rejoicing to me on its own account, but also inasmuch as I may consider myself the cause of its translation. To enter more particularly into the subject ; when I first arrived at St. Croix, in 1840, my colleagues were just then busily engaged in regulating the eight schools erected by Government for the education of negro children from four to eight years old, having invited Br. Gardin from Antigua for this purpose, and intrusted him with the superintendence of the whole plan. Much that I saw and heard then was quite new to me, both as to the internal arrangement of the school-houses, and still more the repeated declarations of the brethren Römer and Gardin, that our young brethren who had been accustomed to our school service in Europe and America, as I had been twelve years myself, would be quite useless in the West Indies, till they had made themselves acquainted with Stow's system. I was surprised and stumbled at the assertion ; it seemed to me an exaggeration, or a striving after something novel and striking, and I could not comprehend why our whole method of teaching should be pronounced null and void, as compared with a system of which I had never heard even the name.

My situation, as companion of Brother Breutel, on his visitation, gave me the opportunity of forming an accurate estimate, not only of our missionary work in those islands, but of the system to be introduced into the schools ; and I acknowledged that I viewed the latter with some prejudice. The first of these schools had been already a month in progress, when I visited it for the first time, in February, 1841. What I saw there far surpassed my expectations. The negro schools, which I had hitherto regarded merely as a useful and desirable institution, from that hour appeared to me a thing of first-rate and indispensable importance, and Mr. Stow's system, the only one which could be carried out, or which was suited to the capacity of the negro youth. Brother Breutel concurred with me in opinion ; and we now considered the eulogies to which we had so often

listened with a degree of repugnance, by no means overcharged. And depending on the Lord, the children's friend, in confident hope that He would never leave us without faithful teachers, we saw in the adoption of this system, not only an efficacious means of laying hold on the youthful hearts, and laying a valuable foundation for Christian training, on which we could subsequently build, but also an effectual instrument for preparing the school teachers thus engaged for practical missionaries.

I now read Stow's excellent book, as well as my knowledge of the language then enabled me, and was convinced that this was the only educational system based throughout on Christian principles. I remarked to a friend at the time, Our Lord would have written such a system had he been a writer; nor do I now retract the assertion. In this system the Bible is the only clue, and guides the way to subjects for which I could not have used the Bible previously, or for which I thought I could not. Here, in admirable unison, there is culture for spirit, heart, and mind, and for the body besides, which is too often neglected. Here teaching and training go hand in hand, and are interwoven like body and soul. The attention of the children is awakened, exercised, enchained, and turned to account, and all this in so easy, natural, unconstrained a manner, that one wonders how one could have taught otherwise a single day. The variety of objects treated of allows of no weariness, and the calling their own faculties into action encourages and enlivens the children, making time fly, and raises them to thinking beings. The bodily exercises intermixed, unite with diversion the restoration of attention and the recal of their scattered thoughts, without the necessity for admonitions, which by frequent repetition lose their force. And the Bible, the Bible is constantly prominent in all these departments; its practical application appears in every lesson; the punishments for misbehaviour are taken from it, and judgment is pronounced in the words of the Bible by the children themselves. The whole groundwork of the system is not an affair of memory, but requires and produces the exertion of the mind, to comprehend the elements of which the intellect gives the result, and thus appropriates it, and stores it deeper than



what is merely confided to a treacherous memory ; the rapid and punctual imitation of the teacher's movements, which accustoms to that attention in which the negro is so different, strikes even the adversaries of education, of which there are many in that island, and pleases them, inasmuch as it prepares excellent servants for them. The singing, the marching, all well adapted not only for learning but cultivation, the small classes before the reading boards, the good order observed, the bell and the whistle instead of the loud voice of the teacher, in short, all that I saw and heard, exhibited a plan working out its object in admirable harmony, teaching and training all the faculties of the mind and the powers of the body—a well-considered system, the product of great insight into human nature, which makes school a sort of pleasure to both teachers and children, and imperceptibly instils the great truths of the gospel into the youthful heart, corrupted as it is by sin, and which notwithstanding does not act exclusively on either the head or the heart, but satisfies both, harmonizes both, and does not leave the disposition of either uninfluenced.

Here Christians are formed, as far as can be done by teaching ; the errors of other systems are rejected, and knowledge is warmed by religion, while religion is enlivened by knowledge ; here God's love is the axle on which the whole revolves. Such must the schools of the first Christians have been, if there were such schools. These were the remarks which I then made, before the Governor-General and the other authorities of the colony. I was ashamed of my former teaching, and wished that I could have the time again to be able to work as my colleagues now can do. If, according to the Word of God, teachers shall shine like stars, Stow will shine as a bright one. He forms teachers, each of whom is a fruitful bud, that will bear fruit for eternity a thousand-fold. This conviction induced me to send an account of Mr. Stow's system to Brother Röntgen of Christiansfeld, head of the school there, and he, too, was greatly struck with it. "I felt a suspicion," he wrote in reply long ago, "that we were ploughing the sea and sowing on sand, and now I hear of your schools I am convinced of it. You have happily thrown off the yoke of old prejudices, and work unfettered, refreshing yourselves at the well of life, following the line of which one end is fastened

to earth, while the other reaches heaven." Thus Stow's training system was made known to the circle of teachers there; they ordered the book; Brother Jaschke translated it into German, and it is now advertised in the public papers. May many of my countrymen have their eyes opened, as mine have been. Should you, while in Scotland, have an opportunity of seeing this worthy man, and he deigns to accept my respectful salutation and sincere thanks, be so good as to present them to him, and you will much oblige your affectionate brother.

W. HAUSER.

Mr. Miller, who sailed for Antigua in February last, writes on his arrival as follows:—

"I have found everything going on most satisfactorily, as far as I have been able to judge, during my absence. We have seventeen students, one of whom is an intelligent Christian Jew, training for the Danish Island of Santa Croix. There are many indications of increasing good feeling on the part of the Missionaries to the system, and I trust we have at least succeeded in calling attention to the importance of properly qualified trainers. We have at present attending our seminary by far the best selection of native students we ever had, a gratifying proof that our work becomes more *respectable*." "Formerly a miserable pittance was offered to those who would undertake the situation of a "'Cool Massa.'" Now the Training System being understood and appreciated, we are getting young men of talent, and are allowed to retain them until they are conceived to be qualified."

"After inspecting our Schools, &c., here, I leave, on the 7th April, for Dominica, then St. Lucia, Trinidad, &c. and Jamaica, The tour will occupy not less than four or five months. Pray for me, that I may be guided in my difficult and often delicate duties."

We have generally the pleasure of hearing from our students respecting the progress of the several training schools to which they may have been appointed. The following experience from a former student, a native of

our Sister Isle, and a man of high intellectual vigour, and unaffected piety, we present, as affording an analysis of this *natural* state of feeling in Glasgow, referred to in Mr. Miller's letter, to which we shall subjoin one or two other equally natural causes which tend to produce this result.

"MY DEAR SIR.—I most cheerfully give you a statement of my experience in reference to the working of your system, and of some facts illustrative of its influence on the children under my care. I feel, however, considerable difficulty in selecting from what may be termed the statistics of the school, the facts best suited to the object you have in view. They are numerous, and to those who take an interest in the well-being of the young, highly important.

"On coming to Glasgow, several years ago, I was surprised to find comparatively few, even of those most intimately connected with education, thoroughly acquainted with the peculiarities and working of a system of which I had elsewhere heard so much. In England, the system was extensively known and adopted. In Ireland, I had frequently heard its merits discussed. I therefore naturally expected to find its leading principles, if not generally adopted in Glasgow, at least generally understood. Instead of this, those with whom I conversed on the subject almost invariably condemned it. None were so loud in their complaints and accusations as those whose knowledge of the system had been acquired by a few casual visits to the Normal Training School. I had read in your books of 'the power of the sympathy of numbers,' as a means of moral government and of simultaneous intellectual development—of the beneficial character of the play-ground, or 'uncovered school,' as unfolding every variety of disposition and opening more fully and undisguisedly to the eye of the observant trainer the heart of each pupil in his school.—I had read of the importance of cultivating the finer feelings of our nature—of forming correct habits—of the aim, in short, to 'train the whole man' as a social, an intellectual, and immortal being; and to fit him, so far as human

means can reach, for the highest destinies of his existence. When reference was made to these, and the other more prominent features of your system, it was easy to perceive they were all regarded as little better than the idle vagaries of an enthusiast.

“Subsequent experience has enabled me to account for this feeling. It is common to all who make the cultivation of the intellect the *end* of education, and who rest satisfied with a small accompaniment of religious instruction, as well as to those friendly to the aim of the Training System, who, however, have turned away dissatisfied, before they have given its principles a careful investigation, or its working a just and patient trial.

“Although for my own part, from a careful examination of your views, I thought highly of the system, I certainly felt much disappointed, not only during my first visits to the Normal Seminary, but for some weeks after being enrolled as a student. Every thing appeared so simple, and attended with so little effort, that there seemed to be more of childishness than of vigour and strength displayed in conducting the classes. To form ellipses, and to put questions during the process of giving a lesson—to communicate religious and general knowledge—to teach the ordinary branches of an English education—to superintend the children, and prevent mischief in the play-grounds, presented at first sight so little that was striking or novel, that I began to think with others, that after all ‘there is nothing in the System,’ I now felt less surprise, that even in the immediate vicinity of the Glasgow Seminary, so many should not appreciate the beauty and power of your plan of education.

“It is the mechanical part of the system, embracing singing, marching, and physical exercises, that most forcibly arrests the attention of the casual visitor. He does not, at first, perceive the object of these. Each he regards rather as an *end* in itself, without seeing its subserviency as a *part* of the influence and mechanism, by which are secured that promptness of obedience, and that constancy of attention, which are so indispensably necessary to the solid upbuilding of the whole intellectual and moral fabric. He has no opportunity of watching the gradual unfolding of character—the slow process of undoing bad habits, and of forming and strengthening new ones. He cannot trace the influence on

the children of a series of Bible lessons, in which they themselves have taken an important part; nor can he notice the intellectual development exhibited in proceeding *on the system*, step by step, through the admirable course of general and scientific lessons prescribed in your book. These things lie too far below the surface for casual observation; they come only within the cognisance of the watchful trainer or the parent. And yet from the limited view of some of the more obvious and in themselves less important features of the system, obtained by a few desultory visits, opinions are hastily formed, unfavourable to the whole scheme.

“It was not until I had carefully noted its effect on the children, physically, morally, and intellectually, that I began to be fully assured of its efficiency and importance; nor until I made the attempt, was I convinced of the difficulty of *properly* interesting and exercising the children’s minds. This I believe has been the experience of all who have adopted your system. A short time’s practice is sufficient to make us feel the force of Cecil’s remark—that nothing is easier than to talk to children, but to talk to them as they ought to be talked to requires our highest effort, for with the knowledge and experience of manhood it is extremely difficult to throw our thoughts into the habits of children’s minds. I am satisfied that, wherever your system is narrowly and impartially sifted and examined, the result will be a conviction of its superiority. Those engaged in active commercial pursuits have not leisure for the examination, but it is surely the duty of all connected with the education of the people, to make themselves acquainted with the nature and working of a system whose principles are so strictly in accordance with all the laws that regulate the human constitution, and whose object is one of the highest and noblest on earth.

“Looking forward to the ministry myself, I wish I could persuade my fellow-students of the importance of acquiring a knowledge of the Training System, not a knowledge merely of the means and the end proposed, (these are easily comprehended); but of what is of still greater moment, the *method* or *art* of most effectually using these means, for the accomplishment of that end. It is our duty to ascertain the best means of infusing sound



principles, and forming virtuous habits. A careful scrutiny of the leading systems of the present day has convinced me of the superior efficiency of yours. For while, in almost every expanded plan of education, religious *instruction* now forms a prominent feature—the *essence is still wanting*. There must be more than mere precept or theory—there must be the *doing* or *practice*. In your system alone, while ample provision is made for physical and intellectual improvement—this constitutes one of the chief characteristics. This training to practise the lessons inculcated, cannot be begun too early. The youngest members of every congregation, are the most hopeful and most easily moulded. A secondary place is too commonly assigned to them, they ought to have the first. To them our highest efforts ought to be directed. As the child becomes older, the best opportunity of doing good passes gradually away. For if the formation of the moral character is not *early* and most sedulously watched over—if children are left to themselves in so far as religious example or religious training is concerned—it matters not how great the intellectual culture, a process of vicious self-training goes on. Bad habits are acquired and strengthened; passions gratified, and feelings cherished, the evil influence of which years of anxious labour on the part of the teacher may not be sufficient to counteract. The feeling of hopelessness that generally attends the attempt to effect a change in those whose habits have become inveterately confirmed by long years of practice is natural, and to a certain extent just; for the laws of our mental and moral economy are, in such a case, against the efforts of the Christian. Depraved habits, long in exercise, become in a great measure part of the very texture of the human constitution. When the tree has spread its roots widely and deeply, and assumed its form, who can bend it? These facts make me most anxious, that all preparing for the work of the ministry should feel it to be their duty, to qualify themselves for directing the physical, moral, and intellectual training of the young of their charge, before the task becomes all but hopeless, and to adopt, with this view, those means which long and tried experience has proved to be most efficacious.

“It is impossible to refer, in a single letter, to all the advantages



which the fully carrying out of your system is fitted to secure. Were it generally adopted, and its power brought to bear on the hundreds of thousands that are growing up in the heart of our large cities, amid all the miasmata of a poisonous moral atmosphere, who never hear the name of God uttered save in anguish or in mockery, the benefit would be, in every point of view, incalculable. But, without entering into speculation regarding its probable effects, many of which cannot be duly estimated, it may be, on this side of eternity, let me state some of the practical results already furnished by its working in the school of which I have charge. This is the best and safest way of judging of its efficiency, and testing its principles. \* \* \*

Other causes have operated in reducing the number of Training Schools in Glasgow, even in the face of the highly successful exhibition of the present institution. We shall mention one. The Model of the Infant and Junior departments of the system induced many benevolent individuals in this city to establish first one school and then another, and so on, until in different parts of the city and suburbs several schools were established, to which masters who had been trained in the Normal Seminary were appointed, who were very successful with crowded schools. Altogether, within a very few years, 22 training schools of this kind were established, we assisting to draw the plans and procure grants of money from government.

To 14 out of these 22 Infant and Juvenile Training Schools, each supplied with galleries and play-grounds, 14 trainers were appointed, (viz. persons trained in the Normal Seminary,) and 8 teachers, untrained, and unaccustomed to the system, were appointed to the remaining schools. The fate of the former 14 schools we shall state without entering into particulars, which, although sad as regards the hoped-for effect on the morals of the youth of

the neighbourhoods in which these schools were located, yet the cause was natural, partly from the reasons just given in the letter of the Irish student, and partly from the fact of the presence in Glasgow of the seminary itself, which from week to week attracted the attention of strangers who visited it, as the parent Institution.

We may state that small salaries in general were given to the trainers in Glasgow, smaller than were offered by letter, and otherwise, from directors in different parts of the kingdom and in the colonies, who had arrived at the point of valuing the system.

Clergymen, noblemen, directors of schools, and persons of all ranks, weekly visiting the Normal Seminary, and expressing high admiration of the system there pursued, naturally inquired if any private schools existed in Glasgow? Yes, of course, was the answer. The situations were mentioned. They visited one or other of these, and admired the order of the school, and alacrity and intelligence of the children. The trainer was asked the question, What salary do you receive? The answer in general was, *Sixty Pounds*. Sixty Pounds—why, if you come to my parish, or my district, I shall give you £80 or £100. Of course off they went. In his place another trainer was applied for and appointed, who again was bought off in the same way. In several instances, however, the directors of the school being only partially acquainted with the system, appointed *teachers*, not *trainers*, until by their shiftings and changings nearly all these training schools have been turned into teaching schools. We do not say they are not good schools for teaching, but they have decidedly failed as training schools, not possessing trained masters. The teachers, of course, not being habituated to the use of the gallery, could not make it available, and

of course, knew as little how to make use of the playground.

Each of these institutions, however, having the apparatus, may be instantly turned into a training school, by the appointment of a trained master.

The existence of the parent institution, therefore, while it was the means of establishing so many private training schools, proved the indirect means of depriving them of their trainers.

We may state that in the neighbouring town of Paisley, containing five training schools—one Initiatory and four Juvenile, they shared the same fate, and from similar causes.

This is a very melancholy result ; for certainly there is not a town in the kingdom where training schools are more needed, or where, from the cheapness of ground, they can be more easily established.

The question is frequently put, What did you find to be the results of the Bible training exercises in your own Sabbath School, the principle of which in its simple form you endeavoured to work out during so many years? If it be powerful in results, as you state, what effect has it had on your own scholars? My answer is, first, that my Sabbath scholars, to the number of 30 to 40, remained with me pretty continuously for 16 or 18 years.

During the first 8 or 9 nine years, nothing of vital piety appeared in any one of the number, beyond an external decency and propriety of behaviour as well as manner; and a decided intellectual elevation. At the end of these years, and within a period of 5 or 6 months, when, from providential circumstances, I was least able to attend to their instruction, nearly every one of the girls became decidedly pious. This was manifested not merely by the

regularity of their attendance upon public and private worship, but in the depth both of thought and feeling exhibited in their answers in school, and in the rapid advancement they made in spiritual understanding. They in fact quite outstripped the boys, their minds were humbled and their thoughts engaged in far higher things than the passing trifles of a day, and the empty gewgaws of Sunday finery and dress.

About a year after this nearly all the boys, or rather the young men, manifested the same spirit, and then they *resumed* their own intellectual position in the class. From this period I became the *regulator* or *trainer*, not the teacher of the school, and with pleasure and gratitude do I state that, on Sabbaths, and sometimes during the week, I met my pupils to hear their elucidations of scripture truth, and to be personally improved by their varied and rapid advancement in divine knowledge. Weekly prayer meetings were held by the sexes *separately*, and these young people in their turn immediately imposed upon themselves the task of teaching the gospel to the more ignorant children of their own neighbourhood. A week-day Juvenile training school was also established, and conducted by a student trained in the Normal Seminary; they themselves teach 14 local Sabbath Schools, and have several hundred children in attendance, whose families they visit on week days. Within four years from the establishment of this week-day Training School in conjunction with the local Sabbath Schools, the Superintendent of Police states, that *the number of commitments to the Police Office in that particular district had been reduced two-thirds*. Our rulers may gather from this fact, that Bible Training and Moral Training are THE CHEAPEST POLICE.

My scholars were all taken from a given district, and were the children of labourers, cotton-spinners, shoemakers, night-watchmen, weavers, &c. Some of their parents occasionally attended Church, and many more never entered a place of worship before this change in the character and conduct of their offspring. As respects the condition and character of my scholars now, I may state that one is an ordained clergyman in Scotland, another superintendent of a most flourishing institution for the training of christian teachers for the colonies. Twenty-two are Sabbath school teachers, each of them conducting a separate school; seven are elders of the Church. Three have died in the full hope of a glorious immortality.

Having promised each a family Bible on entering the matrimonial state, I have fifteen times fulfilled my promise, and have just received a sixteenth gentle hint on the subject. Like Abraham of old, they are commanding their households after them; and of late years, when our old friends visit us, *en masse*, to take a social cup of tea, they bring with them, sometimes, a goodly sprinkling of another generation.

## CHAP. XXV.

### MEMORANDA, OR HINTS TO TRAINERS.

THE following hints were primarily addressed to the students in the Normal Seminary, at a time when the state of the author's health prevented him from enforcing the same points at the weekly public and private criticisms. They are added here in consequence of the demand they met with in their less permanent form.

#### MEMORANDA.

#### INTELLECTUAL TRAINING.

1. Simplicity is the most distinguishing feature of the training system, and the last and highest attainment of a trainer. Nothing is more simple and natural than the oral instruction of the intelligent Christian mother of youth.

2. She guides and leads the opening mind, and forms the moral habits of her children; she does so because she is much with them. Her stimulants and restraints are exercised by the cords of love, not the rod of terror. These silken cords bind parent and child in a process of moral training which every school trainer would do well to imitate.

3. Train not the intellect of the child merely, but *the child*—the whole man—the moral being. Remember that *the child* is only trained “in the way he should go,” when his physical, intellectual, and moral (of course religious) powers are simultaneously exercised in accordance with the precepts and principles of the Divine Record.

4. Let everything pass through the understanding before you



lodge it in the verbal memory. In other words, never commit words to memory until the meaning be previously analyzed and understood.

5. Do not omit to exercise the verbal memory of your pupils, only let it be subsequent to the exercise of the understanding. For example, if a hymn is to be committed to memory, reverse the usual method ; let it be thoroughly analyzed the day before the children are required to repeat it.

6. Give all the relations and associations of your subject, or more properly speaking, train your pupils to them. *Dovetail* every part of your subject together, until the whole be accurately and indelibly fixed.

7. Picturing out is a fundamental principle of the training system. Picture out the outlines first, which is the natural mode, and let the same process be observed in drawing out the minuter points *progressively*. Remember what we have often said, the portrait painter does not finish an eye or the mouth, and afterwards the outlines of the face. He gives the outlines of the whole face in the first instance, and then the outlines of every feature in succession, and finishes none of the features entirely until he has painted the outlines of all. Such is the natural, and, therefore, the efficient process.

8. If you have drawn the picture properly out in words, the children must be prepared to give the lesson, just as they would recognise the likeness of a human face. If they see the picture properly drawn, they must be able to tell what it represents. When we say, picture out, always remember that the children draw the picture with you, and make part of every sentence their own, and this is done not by mere question and answer, but by question and ellipsis mixed.

9. You will remember, that however highly useful and necessary objects and pictures of objects are, to interest and instruct the young mind, yet the systematic principle of picturing out in words is more varied and efficient, and, whether in conversation, or at the gallery lesson, fills up those innumerable interstices of a quality or subject which no number or variety of real objects or pictures can possibly do. We proceed on the funda-

mental principle, that every word in the English language *either represents an object, a combination of objects, or may be pictured out in words representing objects.*

10. When we speak of picturing out by familiar illustrations, every term before it is used, and every part of a subject you take up, we refer to every lesson in grammar, etymology, geography, natural history, natural science, the arts of life, and Scripture, in its history, emblems, imagery, doctrines, promises, and precepts.

11. Allow all or any of the children in the gallery to answer simultaneously. Notice one or two of the answers or fillings up of the ellipses, whether these are right or wrong. Convince the children of the wrong one by something analogous, and exercise their minds up to a point that shows their error. If you do not notice the wrong answers as well as the right ones, they may continue to be repeated. If you notice no answer till you get the right one, you will only create, or at least perpetuate, confusion and noise. Cause the whole children to repeat the correct answer, not in the precise words formerly employed, but by altering or inverting the sentence. Let this be frequently done, and at every leading point of the exercise or lesson. This is a fundamental principle of the system, and unless strictly attended to, much of the power of the gallery will be lost. In order to secure that all acquire the knowledge proposed to be communicated, it is not necessary that all answer at any one time, *in the first instance*; but it is necessary that you secure the eye of the whole children, and as a natural consequence, their attention.

12. Do not say to the child, You are wrong; but endeavour by exercising his mind, to prove to him that he is wrong, and where he is in error.

13. You must not expect *all* the children to answer at the same time; each child will sympathize with that class of questions suited to his own natural cast of mind. The correct answer being repeated, on the principle stated in No. 11, however, by the master and scholars, *all therefore learn.*

14. Present intellectual food so simple, that the youngest may eat and digest freely; and in such quantities as that the largest capacity may have enough. Feed, but never stuff.

15. The simultaneous method of answering, and the sympathy of the gallery, is vastly more natural and effective than the individual method. You may very soon, by question and answer, exhaust the knowledge of any one child ; but you cannot so easily exhaust one hundred seated in a gallery, variously constituted as they are, and all being permitted to answer. The master's duty and privilege is to be, as it were, the filterer, purifying and directing all the answers or analogies into a proper channel.

16. While the simultaneous method is in general to be preferred for its naturalness and efficiency, yet, as a variety, individual boys and girls may be selected, who alone may answer, or a particular class or row, or the girls alone, or the boys alone. However, let these deviations from the simultaneous mode only be occasional.

17. Let your uniform practice in every lesson be *question and ellipsis mixed*, not the mere question and answer system. Remember that the interrogatory system puts the mind too much on the defensive, and is too exciting to lead or train the child easily, naturally, or so efficiently as the union of the two. The question *pumps the water, as it were, from the well*—the ellipsis directs its course ; the master, as we have already said, is the filterer, who sends it back, as it were, in one pure stream to all.

18. A purely elliptical lesson is very tame. *Mixed is our principle*. The question sets the mind astir, the ellipsis directs what has been set a-moving.

19. In forming an ellipsis, do not raise your voice so as to give warning that you are making a pause, otherwise the attention will flag, as the children will oftentimes listlessly wait till they hear such elevation or altered tone of voice.

20. Whenever the children cannot readily fill in the ellipsis, you have not trained them properly up to that point.

21. Never form an ellipsis in the course of a question.

22. In forming an ellipsis, do not give the first syllable of the word : thus, do not form an el ... lipsis in such a manner.

23. Question and answer is not training ; simple ellipsis is not training ; but question and ellipsis *mixed* is training.

24. An ellipsis is a powerful and very natural link in train-

ing, but if not judiciously made, may become very unmeaning and trifling. The ellipsis to be filled in, ought always to be some word or words which the children *ought* to know, or which they have at the time been trained to, and which, when so expressed by the children, while it awakens attention, fixes the whole point in the memory, such being of course a leading part of the sentence.

25. An ellipsis may be made in mental exercises with pupils of any age. The younger and more ignorant the person is, the more frequently will it require to be made ; just as young children require to be more closely led than those of maturer years. The master and scholars sympathize more intimately by question and ellipsis mixed than by any other process.

26. Do not explain, or *speechify*, or attempt to preach—train by analogy and illustration.

27. The old teaching system is too much like travelling on a railroad, the objects pass by too rapidly in succession, without being sufficiently impressed on the mind. You mark and digest as you go along, on the training system.

28. Although RESPONSES, or children questioning each other on a given subject, admits not of training, yet practise them frequently as a revisal of what the children do know, and as an exercise of mental composition and enunciation, in forming and answering the questions.

29. Remember that the exercise of the faculties is the chief and important part of education, not the mere amount of knowledge imparted. We acquire, after all, little knowledge in school ; the important matter is to have the outlines so fully, broadly, clearly, and firmly laid, that the children may have the power of acquiring and filling in the minuter points after they leave school.

30. Always keep in view that teaching and training are distinct things, and that the former is included in the latter. Teaching may be considered as the implanting of principles—training as the exercise of these principles.

31. Aim at the cultivation of correct habits of thinking, equally with the infusion of knowledge.

32. Remember the important practical truisms, *the way to do a thing, is just to do it*, and we only do a thing ... *when we do it*. Training may be doing not merely with the hand or the tongue, but the understanding and affections. Moral training, therefore, means moral doing.

33. *Do not forget that most important practical axiom, A LESSON IS NOT GIVEN UNTIL IT IS RECEIVED.* It is only offered. You may speak, and your pupils may hear, but your lesson is lost unless they understand. It is true, you must possess the knowledge you mean to infuse, but the manner *how* is practically paramount. Study, therefore, manner, voice, and simplicity, as of primary importance. You all know the powerful effect of Whitefield's preaching, but you have only to peruse his discourses to see whether the power lay chiefly in the superiority of the matter or the manner. Indeed, your own experience in the Seminary must at once show you how powerless the possession of knowledge is, without the power of communicating it.

34. Use no words beyond the comprehension of the youngest child in the gallery or class.

35. In questioning, avoid using the word *what?* Such as *It is a what?*—you move onwards to *what?*

36. In a gallery lesson, your standard of simplicity, whether in the initiatory or juvenile department, is the youngest children. If they cannot draw the lesson, you have overshot their heads, or led them blindfold on the way. The picture has not been true to nature.

37. The power of the gallery, and its stimulating process, almost entirely supersedes the necessity of taking places in school. Taking places stimulates the intellectual powers, but at the same time, too frequently calls forth the worst passions and propensities of our nature. All rewards and stimulants ought as much as possible to be in conformity with the principle of moral training. No sacrifice of the moral must ever be made to the intellectual powers; on the contrary, uniformly give the precedence to, and exalt the former.

38. While the daily Bible and secular lessons in the gallery are attended to, see that reading, writing, &c. are not neglected.

Such neglect is quite uncalled for, as the power of the gallery saves as much time as is consumed both in the gallery training lessons, and the moral training of the play-ground.

39. In the initiatory or infant department of the system, whether the children are two, four, or eight years of age, commence with analyzing such familiar objects as strike their senses, particularly articles of clothing, furniture, &c., and as they advance, the next step may be the three kingdoms in nature, and then the four elements (popularly considered) in their great outlines, air, earth, fire, and water.

40. The training system, in its intellectual department, does not present a list of subjects and books, a knowledge of which the pupil is to acquire, but is *a key to unlock the subject of any book*. That system, however, is not the training system under which the whole moral being, *the child*, is not trained physically, intellectually, and morally.

41. A lesson not in accordance with Chapters III., IV., &c. is not conducted on the training system. What is true in regard to children, is still more apparent in adults. We all admit that the intellect receives its highest polish when the whole affections, as well as the whole understanding, are exercised. On this point, frequently draw your attention to the striking difference in the intellectual elevation of workmen who are acquainted with divine science, and those of equal natural powers who are acquainted only with ordinary science. The training system, therefore, as a system applicable to the moral being, is incomplete without Bible training.

42. If the young mind, especially when it remains uncultivated to five or six years of age, resembles a waste field overgrown with weeds and thorns, you must first root them out, and endeavour to pulverize the soil, ere you can hope that the seed you attempt to sow, will penetrate the ground, take root, and bear fruit.

43. The training system (intellectually) in its different stages, may be shortly stated as follows :—In the initiatory department, the bold, clear, and well-defined outlines of every subject. In the juvenile department, some of the more minute outlines. In the



adult class, and in the University, minuter still ; and in after life, these same outlines may continue to be progressively filled up by reading and observation.

#### PHYSICAL TRAINING.

44. Physical exercises may be used as an end, or only as a means to an end. You ought to use them in both views, but chiefly in the latter, viz., to secure the attention, to find access to the mind in the exercise of the intellectual and moral faculties.

45. Be exceedingly careful of your children's health and physical habits in both the covered and uncovered school-rooms. A stronger sympathy exists between the intellectual and moral and the physical powers, than is generally imagined.

46. The great secret of securing the attention of children, and thereby training their mental and moral powers, lies in a proper and continued variety of physical exercises.

47. Let physical exercises not only precede, but accompany every mental exercise, otherwise you cannot secure proper attention.

48. Unless you arrest and keep the eyes of all the children in the gallery, you have no security that all are learning. If you do this, the simultaneous answers of the few, purified by the master as a filterer, will be heard by all, and all will learn.

49. On their first admission to school, the children must have a larger amount, and greater variety, of physical exercises than afterwards, just as the drill-sergeant exercises raw recruits. In other words, the younger the children are, the more physical exercises do they require to keep up the attention. If you mistake as to quantity, at all times let it be by giving too many rather than by giving too few.

50. Never commence a lesson till you have drilled your troops in the gallery, and obtained perfect silence, and the attention and eye of every child present.

51. If the hand is not properly employed in school, it must be employed in mischief.

52. A clap of the hands, and a short laugh, are like letting off the *steam puffs* of the boiler which enable the engine to work with greater regularity ; they prevent those explosions so common in, and at the dismissal of, schools.

53. If you find any difficulty in getting the children to repeat a hymn distinctly, and without a drawling tone, cause them to repeat by turns the hymn word by word, and then line by line, and they will soon acquire the tone and manner you wish, provided also that you yourself set the example of articulating every syllable, slowly, distinctly, and elegantly.

54. Articulate yourself, and cause the children also to articulate, every word and syllable separately and distinctly, and the unavoidable accompanying stiffness will soon wear off, and leave a clear and effective enunciation.

55. Speak yourself, and cause the children to speak in a soft and sometimes under-tone in school, and allow them occasionally to extend their voice and their lungs to have fuller scope in the play-ground.

56. Never speak through your teeth—spread or open your mouth well in speaking, articulate every syllable distinctly, and every word separately, but of course emphatically, and cause the children to do the same. The exercise will supple the lips, and assist you in enunciation. Remember to exercise yourself daily for three or four minutes at home, in repeating such words as the following :—Re-ca-pi-tu-la-tion, re-ca-pi-tu-la-tion, em-pha-ti-cal-ly, em-pha-ti-cal-ly, in-com-pre-hen-si-bi-li-ty, &c., every syllable being fully and clearly enunciated.

57. Enunciation is a much more important part of training than is usually imagined. Clear enunciation is a *sine qua non* in a school trainer. It is certainly one half of the power of a *public speaker*.

58. Be sure you keep the play-ground, flower-borders, and out-door conveniences, neat, clean, and in the utmost order.

59. Train to cleanliness, by causing all habitually to be cleanly.

60. Let the movements to and from the play-ground generally be accompanied by vocal music—some cheerful, animating rhyme or other. If of a direct moral tendency, so much the better.

61. When you have the opportunity, allow the children, or part of them, by turns, to weed or rake the ground, or pick up the stones. The more perfectly *à la militaire* you give the command, in a firm, soft tone of voice, the more improving is the exercise, and the more delighted are the children.

62. A large, empty, or unfurnished hall, may be made a playground, when better cannot be had; but health requires that there be the open, fresh-aired, and uncovered school-room.

63. See that the gallery be kept clean, the large room and class-room well swept and occasionally washed and well aired, for the comfort and health of the children.

64. Stand at least seven feet from the gallery—pace along very little—let your position in general be with your left foot rather behind—your head perpendicular, so as to move it easily, from side to side, to secure the eye of the children, the rest of your body forming an *obtuse* angle, quite *à la Française*.

65. Train your scholars to keep their eyes shut during prayer and they will acquire the habit of doing so in church.

66. Train the child how to hold his book properly, not with the thumb in the middle, for that will...*dirty the leaves*. Why? &c. &c.

67. Check the slightest approach to rudeness or indecency. Permit no one to call nicknames.

68. Look behind over your shoulder, and march *before your pupils*; and you may form them into any figure in a line you please, by keeping the eye fixed upon yours, and that of each child in succession upon the shoulder of the one walking before him. This can be done by mere sympathy, without the use of marks on the floor. The habit of marching in order cultivates orderly habits, obedience, attention, and docility.

#### RELIGIOUS, MORAL, AND INTELLECTUAL TRAINING.

69. Take every opportunity in the course of your lessons to cultivate respect for parents, and all in lawful authority; of course love to God, and paramount obedience to His law, as the rule and standard of obedience.

70. Secular, or scientific training lessons, may intellectually elevate one man above his fellows ; but Bible training morally elevates him in likeness to God. The latter, however, under our system, is not a whit less scientific than the former. Both are equally intellectual in the basis on which the lesson rests—the one only is moral. We cannot refrain from quoting, as memoranda, one passage from Scripture, and one from Cowper ;—

“ Knowledge puffeth up, but charity edifieth” (buildeth up.)

“ Yon cottager, who weaves at her own door,  
Pillow and bobbins all her little store.

Just knows, and knows no more, her Bible's true —  
A truth the brilliant Frenchman\* never knew ;  
And in that charter reads, with sparkling eyes,  
Her title to a treasure in the skies.”

71. Remember that mere Christian knowledge in the head does not morally elevate—practical knowledge alone morally elevates. *Doing*, in conjunction with the understanding and affections, is moral training.

72. I trust it is unnecessary to remind you that moral and religious instruction may be given, and moral and religious habits formed ; yet that, without prayer, one most important ingredient towards success is wanting. If it is right in you to communicate religious instruction, and to train the young to proper habits during those hours when parents cannot be with them, you are bound to pray for success, on the principle of acknowledging God in all your ways.

73. Be uniformly present with the children when they are at play, and, in conjunction with the other influences of the system, they will be restrained from much evil, and trained to much good ; for thus they will *simultaneously* have in operation the influence of the master, their play-fellows, and their own conscience.

74. It is of little use merely to tell a child not to sin. If you wish to train him not to sin—not to steal, for example, illustrate

---

\* Voltaire.

by such occurrences as Achan in the camp—not to tell lies, by the sad fate of Ananias and Sapphira—not to indulge in pride and vanity, by poor Absalom ; and when these and many others are fully and progressively pictured out and analyzed, the children will be quite prepared to know, and in some measure to feel, the principle—“ Be sure your sin will find you out.”

75. No lesson in ordinary science can exhibit the power of the system equally to a Scriptural one—an emblem for example—because, in an ordinary scientific lesson, the moral powers are not necessarily exercised.

76. Natural science may and ought to be rendered a handmaid to Scriptural science ; indeed, without a considerable acquaintance with it much of the revelation of God’s will must remain dark and unmeaning, and, of course, uninteresting to the young mind. In a training lesson in natural science, the master and scholars may or may not draw a moral lesson ; but in the natural emblems of the Divine word, a moral lesson *must* be drawn. For example, a moral lesson *may* be given from the natural history of the rose in an exercise in botany ; but in Bible training, a moral lesson *must* be drawn from the passage—“ I am the Rose of Sharon.” By this system, you may have, as it is said, *a Sabbath school every day of the week* ; that is, you may infuse, by Bible training in the gallery, as much Bible knowledge every day as you would on a Sabbath, and this without at all interfering with other branches of education.

77. Not only is a knowledge of natural science, to a considerable extent, necessary in the person who would practise the system of daily Bible training, but he must render himself familiar also with the manners, customs, imagery, climate, and productions of Eastern nations. We have only to look at the Psalms for a convincing proof of the necessity of this. For example—“ Like a tree planted by a river ;” “ The sun shall not smite thee by day, nor the moon by night ;” “ My horn shalt thou exalt ;” “ As the dew of Hermon” (so brotherly love, &c.) ; “ As for man, his days are as grass, as a flower of the field,” &c. &c. Consult, therefore, such books as describe these manners, customs, &c. The Religious Tract Society of London has many publications on these subjects at very moderate prices.

78. You will find excellent practical lessons in commentaries on the Scriptures. For the picture or the simple lesson that should be drawn, however, you must generally depend on the analysis of the meaning of the natural language and emblems used by the Bible itself.

79. In regard to Bible training, think of the importance of storing one new point of Scripture each day in the minds of the children, or 300 points per annum; and how luminous 1500 points would render the pages of Divine truth, during the five years before the age children usually can read for themselves. Such would render the child intelligent at family worship and in the sanctuary, and not less so in privately perusing the word of God in after life, when its narratives and promises, its natural emblems and imagery, would be so many bright spots meeting him at every page.

80. One *serious* objection to the system of Bible training has been stated by some worthy sedate persons, that the children have things made so plain to them in school, that they *are not likely to read the Scriptures at home*. Facts, however, distinctly prove the reverse; for not only are the children more disposed to peruse the Scriptures at home, but many a "Ha"\* Bible has been relieved of its dust, and taken down from the shelf by parents, at the request of their children, that they might have read to them (before they could read for themselves), of the ravens which fed Elijah—of Jonathan who loved David and saved his life—of Saul of Tarsus—and of Jesus at twelve years of age sitting and conversing with the doctors of the law in the Temple at Jerusalem. Facts, indeed, fully prove, that moral training at school has not only a direct influence on the children, but a powerful reflex influence at home. Next to family training, it is the *primary moral lever*.

81. The first lesson, and the continued lesson, in a training school, is obedience—*instant obedience*—quite *à la militaire*. Whatever orders you give require instant obedience. Obedience, *instant obedience*, lies at the root of all proper training. By

---

\* Large family bible.



disobedience man fell, and by obedience he exhibits his restoration to the image, love, and favour of God.

82. Authority is not maintained, far less established, by a loud, harsh, or angry tone of voice; a low, gentle, yet firm tone, is decidedly the most efficient. To female trainers, more particularly, we would simply say, be *firm*.

83. Never say to a child, You are disobedient—train him to obedience.

84. The moral training, in some respects, is more deep and lasting in a family. The intellectual training is decidedly more effective in the school. An exclusive family moral training can never equal that in which the public school lends its powerful aid. The family wants that which the training school has—*sympathy of numbers of the same age*. This is the secret of the power of the training school. The school ought to assist, but never supersede, family training; indeed it cannot, and does not, by the acknowledgment of every parent.\*

85. Remember that the training system can be examined only from its effects; the amount of intellectual knowledge can, but the moral training cannot. As in a family, so in a moral training school, we perceive the conduct of the child, but the process is, in a great measure, hid from the transient observer.

86. It is quite in your power to train the children to imitate your manner and tone of voice. If, therefore, children are under your care for many months, and enunciate improperly, or are rude in their manners, the fault is yours—you have not trained them, in whatever way you may have *taught* them.

87. Remember that while bad habits are a barrier to the introduction of good principles, good habits strengthen and facilitate the exercise of good principles. You are, therefore, by the very term *trainer*, expected and bound to cultivate good habits simultaneously with good principles.

88. The moral training of a Juvenile School is less effective than that of the Infant; in other words, with young children rather than with those advanced; and for this plain reason, that

---

\* See Parents' Letters.

the younger the child is, the fewer bad habits has the trainer to undo or eradicate.

89. Remember that children of two to four years of age do not sympathize with those of seven or eight, either in the gallery or in the play-ground; and for this reason we divide the system into four departments thus—children of two to six, those of six to nine, and again those of nine to fourteen years of age. Our principle in regard to education is, early training—the earlier the better—prevention is better than cure.

90. No mistake has been more common of late than the use of the term moral training, when the parties actually mean moral teaching or instruction. They are distinct things, the one being *knowledge*, the other *practice*. Practice *ought*, but does not always follow knowledge.

91. If you are to train your children properly, mentally as well as physically, give them *plenty of fun*. If you don't give it they will take it, and that in the form of mischief. Let the natural buoyancy of youth have its full play at proper times. Direct them in, but do not deprive them of sport, and you will secure their confidence and obedience, and also acquire a knowledge of their real dispositions.

92. Devise amusing games for play-ground exercises, and such as will cultivate kindly affections; for example, forbearance, courteousness, &c. Discourage all games of chance—encourage all innocent games of skill and dexterity.

93. Remember, in training children, that the mode is not to put things *out* of their way, but *in* their way. In the flower borders, therefore, we should not place the pink or strawberry, the gooseberry-bush or the cherry-tree, beyond, but within, the reach of the youngest child. Such things must come within their reach frequently through life, and it is well that they be trained to the principle—"Look at every thing, and touch nothing."

94. Train to forgiveness, by causing the child to do a generous action to another who may have offended him. Discourage the slightest approach to cruelty.

95. Train to benevolence and generosity, by making the child practically so—no matter how trivial the action or gift. The

principle may be exhibited equally with a penny as with a pound by a kind look as by great personal sacrifice; by the widow's two mites as "by the rich man's gifts."

96. Self-love is natural. Do nothing to encourage it in your scholars. Remember self-love is a principle, but self-importance is a habit.

97. *Never push a child or pull him out by the arm.* To speak ought to be sufficient; and it will be so if you take the natural and proper means, presuming, as we do, that the children have undergone a certain course of training. You will perceive the principle of obedience is involved in this point.

98. Never omit to draw a suitable moral lesson from the daily secular, as well as from the Bible lesson.

99. The glory of a trainer lies in the intellectual, but above all in the moral elevation of his pupils.

100. Remember that the influence of the play-ground is not merely physical and moral, but extends to the intellectual; for if you allow the *extra steam* to get off there, at short intervals, you can, on the return of the children to the gallery, more reasonably command, and actually secure, that undivided attention whereby the whole intellectual powers are more fully exercised. There is a sympathy, therefore, between the covered and uncovered school-rooms.

101. Remember that the moral effects produced on the children at home, under our system, have been found to be, not merely in proportion to the amount of knowledge communicated, but in proportion to the physical and moral exercises of the play-ground and the gallery.

102. Wherever there does not exist a positive objection on the part of parents to boys and girls being trained together up to the age of twelve, do not separate them; and when you are under the necessity of teaching them separately, if possible let them have the Bible lesson together in one gallery; as we have often stated, and as we believe you are all convinced from experience, that moral training is deprived of one of its important links by the separation principle.

103. If a child does a thing improperly, or neglects to do a thing it has been bid to do, the simplest way to check such im-

propriety is to cause the child to do the thing. He may have thrown his cap on the floor, instead of hanging it on a peg ; simply call him back, and see that he hangs it properly. You may have told him to walk softly up stairs—you hear him beating or shuffling with his feet as he ascends ; call him back, and see that he walks up every step in the way you wish him. This method repeated will produce the habit, when a threat, or a scold, or a cuff, without the doing, may be instantly forgotten. The certainty of being obliged to *do*, is better for the memory than the longest speech.

104. Keep the eye of your pupils upon yourself. Let them feel that your eye is upon them. You will then secure their attention—" I will guide thee by mine eye."

105. Demand regularity, precision, direct answers, and order, and you cultivate *obedience*—" Let all things be done decently and in order."

106. Remember what we have often told you in the Seminary, that as there is no doctrine in Scripture which is not practical, so there is no duty enjoined that is not doctrinal. The idea of excluding the peculiar doctrines of Scripture from a religious education, therefore, is at once irrational and impracticable.

107. When a pupil disobeys or breaks a rule, *do not scold*—picture out his fault. If from forgetfulness, it will be enough to cause him *do it*. If from inattention, still cause him *do it*. For the first offence, the condemnation of his fellows will be sufficient ; but if a second or repeated offence, although not on the same point, still cause him *do the thing*, but punish him by depriving him of something he much enjoys. Take care, however, that the deprivation be short, and not such as will tempt his companions to feel more for his punishment than sympathize with you in your displeasure and condemnation of the offence committed.

108. By causing the children to walk, or march, to and from the gallery, and to and from their classes, one after another, in perfect order, you cultivate obedience, and the habit of each giving his neighbour his *legitimate* and proper place in society. You know that in a training school, every new scholar strives either to walk first, or he lingers behind and won't walk at all.

109. Do not imagine that you are *training* when you merely turn and twist the words of a sentence, however adroitly, without *picturing out*.

110. A constant reference to God's law stamps on the mind its high authority as a rule of life.

111. As you proceed in BIBLE TRAINING, you will find two things—1st, That there is a rule for the most minute conduct of every-day life, and that the most perfect moral training tends to produce the most perfect delicacy of feeling, expression, and conduct—in one word, the most perfect gentleman; and, 2d, That God, in revealing his will to man through natural objects, has always illustrated by means of the most apposite and appropriate emblems.

112. Aim at the cultivation of the mind of a child every day by exercising all his faculties. The memory of words is only one faculty; the memory of comparison, another, the memory of a fact or story, a third; the memory of reasoning, a fourth; the memory of number, a fifth; the memory of conscientiousness, a sixth; the memory of order, a seventh; the memory of music or harmony of sounds, an eighth. Every intellectual and moral faculty, &c. &c. The exercise of one power or faculty does not interfere with the exercise of another, but the exercise of all strengthens all; and the exclusive exercise of one does not cultivate the mind of a child, but only a portion of it. Our object under the training system is to exercise every faculty daily, in the most simple, easy, and natural manner, and to keep up the sympathy between mind and body, by exercising both. In other words, to train *the child* as a compound, physical, intellectual, and moral being.

113. Let your example in moral conduct, tones of voice, and general aspect, and demeanour, always be what you desire your pupils to become. The observation said to be made by the physician, "Don't do as I do, but do as I bid you," won't do in a trainer.

114. Example is acknowledged to be more powerful than precept, but to the precept and example of the master or parent there must be added the *doing* by the children. Then, and not

till then, is the child under *training*. Without the doing he is only under *instruction*.

115. A trainer, whether parent or schoolmaster, by following natural principles, can mould his pupils in manner and in mind almost any way ; he feels no barrier save that he cannot change the heart, but he can, and ought, faithfully and prayerfully to use those means *by* which and *through* which the Divine Spirit operates, and to which the most solemn promises are attached. "Train up a child (not the understanding merely) in the way he should go, and when he is old he will not depart from it," he will not depart from the way he *should* go.

116. Do not imagine that you lower your dignity by being simple, you cannot be too simple—the Scriptures are simple—the most cultivated minds are always simple—they use simple terms, but they grasp noble ideas. The most complex machine is simple in its parts. One is simple, and a thousand is simply a thousand ones.

117. Young students sometimes object to the system, by saying, Oh, there is nothing new in it ; every thing, every part of it, is simple—plain—and obvious. We admit this to be true ; we also admit that there is "nothing new under the sun," but we, at the same time assert, that whilst steam existed in the Garden of Eden, and in the days of Noah, and that brass, and iron, and timber, were known in the days of the wise man who uttered the expression just quoted, it is only lately that such materials were so combined and made use of, as to furnish this generation with the simple, yet complex steam-engine or locomotive, which renders human effort in our times more effective. Why not admit the possibility of improved machinery or apparatus for training the child ?

118. You ought to picture out *stealing*, but not *indecentcy* to your scholars, except when exhibited by them.

119. Tell facts, but not reasons—the children ought to be prepared to give you the reason.

120. In Bible training, in such subjects as "Noah was a preacher of righteousness," illustrate that by every stroke of the



hammer being *right* in obedience to God's command, it sounded or *preached* to the ears of the people the coming deluge.

121. Condescend in manner and simplicity to your children as the best means of raising them up to your level.

122. If you employ your scholars' time fully, and according to nature, you will not require to scold them for idleness or misbehaviour. *Scolding* is a poor substitute for *training*.

123. A monotonous tone of voice never is impressive, it ought therefore to be avoided.

124. You will remember what was often repeated in the Seminary : If we are to make an impression, we must ... *make an impression*. It is the physical mouth and the physical air by which you make an impression on the physical ear.

125. In causing the children to read a passage or sentence after you, and in *your precise tones of voice*, at the first start never give them more than two or three words to commence with, otherwise they will not read simultaneously. To read a long point at first is quite as unnatural as to trot a horse from the stable door.

126. When you examine the gallery of a training school, not your own, put a question. If not answered immediately, go lower. If quickly answered, and of course, not high enough, then ascend in your scale until you find the exact amount of their knowledge of the subject.

127. *Ellipses*.—You may form a question so that the answer is a mere guess, but an ellipsis ought never to be made so that the answer or filling in is a guess. Every such ellipsis destroys the progress of the training process, which ellipses properly made are so well fitted to effect.

128. *Moral precepts*.—Train your pupils to be kind and courteous, founded on the Scriptural precept, "Be courteous."

Not to engross the conversation—"Thou shalt not steal."

Not to read another's letter, although left open on the table. From the 8th commandment ; and also, "Do unto others as you would wish to be done by."

Evil speaking ("stealing.")

A look may be a lie (deceiving.)

Not to check one who propagates an evil report (injustice.)

129. Prove to your pupils, day by day, that every precept in Scripture is a command as well as the Ten Commandments, they being only a summary of all—love to God and love to man.

130. *Prayer*.—(“ In *all* thy ways acknowledge God.”) Forgetfulness of God is the fruitful source of all evil.

131. *Lying*.—This, like selfishness, or its fruit, *stealing*, is almost universal in children. A lie to hide an offence, or a lie from fear, is too common in the world. Picture out, therefore, the slightest attempt to deceive, in any of your children. This will weaken the propensity, just as the exercise of lying strengthens the evil principle or inclination.

132. Think of the power of *habit*—the walk of the soldier, the sailor, the shoemaker; the difficulty of overcoming or undoing habits: the old bachelor, the Jew, the idolator, the provincial dialect of a country, snuff-taking, and innumerable other habits exhibited in different countries and by different persons in the same country. How important, therefore, must be *early training* to proper habits.

133. Picture out the goodness of God in adapting the various animals to the situations in which they are placed: *fat* to the whale, to suit the cold regions of the north; and long or short wool or hairs to sheep and other animals, according to the heat of the climate, &c. The same *wisdom* in all the varieties of the vegetable world: each suited to its climate and circumstances. *Wisdom*, also, in turning the mineral strata of the earth edgeways, or in an angular direction towards the surface.

134. *The Voice*.—The cultivation of proper and varied tones of voice is most important, so as really to make an impression. Many of the most common words in use seem to express meaning, and without putting any stress upon this point, we may quote a few of such: roar—thunder—lightning—flash—sombre—storm hurricane—cataract—up—down—high—low—calm—breeze—tremendous crash—gentle whisper.

135. Throughout the whole course of training the child, stimulate the higher motives of action by a fear of offending rather than from a fear of punishment, &c. &c.

## MISCELLANEOUS.

136. I need not remind you of what nearly every student has expressed, that no man can thoroughly understand the training system until he practises it. Although this fact may not be apparent to all, yet the principle of not knowing until we practise, is not only in perfect accordance with every-day experience, but with God's revealed will, (for I know how to paint a picture only when I can do it.) The Scriptures say, "He that *doeth* the will of my Father shall *know*," &c., and again, "Add to *virtue knowledge* ;" in other words, *doing* good adds to our knowledge of what is good, so the power of moral training, which is *doing*, is known best by those who practise it.

137. We are frequently asked the question, "Is yours the infant school system?" We answer, No. The infant school system only suits infants, the training system is applicable to children of any age, from two to fourteen years, and upwards. We do indeed adopt some of the apparatus in use under that system, but in its fundamental principles it is totally different.

138. You will please to remember that development may be understood as merely unfolding a point or subject ; education, a leading out ; and training, a leading on or practical habit. Training, therefore, includes all.

139. The training system being one throughout, and dove-tailed in all its parts, in charging fees it is not so easy as under the old system to distinguish geography, grammar, arithmetic, &c., as entitling to separate charges, each of these being, to a considerable extent, blended in the exercises in the ordinary daily reading lessons.

140. Vocal music is an essential part of the system in every department, whether initiatory or juvenile. Cultivate the art yourself, and should you be an indifferent singer, select two or three boys or girls, who sing best, to lead the rest. Nothing tends more to soften, to enliven, and to train your children, than a lively air or verse, at intervals during the day, or an anthem

in the middle of a lesson, suited to the subject. Children are fond of singing songs at home, in the streets, at play, and at work. We can only displace worthless and demoralising songs by substituting others of an opposite tendency, and these are best and most easily learned in school, by the sympathy of numbers.

141. Remember that six or eight months' attendance in the Normal Seminary will not make a perfect trainer—that period merely affords as much instruction and practical exercise as enables the persevering student to train himself afterwards. The training system is a key whereby to unlock any subject, but the knowledge of the subject itself must be had elsewhere. Of course, we speak comparatively; for the mind cannot be exercised upon literary, scientific, religious, and moral subjects, for six months, without greatly adding to its stock of knowledge. In one word, the course of training enables the trainer to communicate all he knows, or may afterwards attain, in a simple and efficient manner.

142. *Training Schools for the wealthy classes*—See page 225.

143. *Evening Classes*.—There is so much speaking in a Training School, that you ought not to undertake the teaching of an evening class if you can possibly avoid it; for if you faithfully perform your duty, by training the children from nine o'clock A.M. till four o'clock P.M., and be with them on the premises the whole time, you will require the evening for rest, and preparing the lessons of the following day.

144. Where there is no dwelling house attached to the school, do not leave the school for dinner or even for luncheon at mid-day. It is preferable that the children bring dinner or have it provided for them, and remain at play within the premises at mid-day.

145. In estimating or comparing systems of education, be careful not to be led away by mere words, for of late years there has been a very general alteration in the terms used by nearly all teachers and directors, public and private. We have for example the term *infant training*, instead of *infant education*, when after all, the parties mean *infant teaching*, not training—

a teaching without development. We have also moral *training* used, when moral teaching or instruction is all that is meant, and when in fact the apparatus or platform is wanting, without which the moral training of *the child* cannot be conducted.

146. The question has been asked, if children can only sympathize with their equals in years, how do they manage to unite with their teachers in the sports of the play-ground? does the disparity in age not lay the children under restraints which prevent the teacher in some measure from arriving at a knowledge of their dispositions? Our answer is shortly this—Children sympathize in their sports and mental attainments more readily with their equals in years than with those much younger or older than themselves. Older children generally will not, and do not, put themselves on a level with the younger, either physically or mentally, from *pride*, *ignorance*, or *vanity*; but a school-master or trainer sees it to be his duty to *condescend* even to the youngest, just as a fond mother would dress a doll, or a father becomes a riding-horse to his children, on *all-fours* on the floor; and although he and they do not *perfectly* sympathize with each other, yet they sympathize enough, by such uniform or frequent condescensions, as to enable them to arrive at a very full knowledge of their real dispositions.

147. You may take to a certain extent the assistance of monitors in the Infant and Juvenile departments, but never commit to them what can be done so much better by yourself, by means of a gallery lesson.

148. Monitors cannot develope and train well. Their petty domineering authority oftentimes proves as injurious to themselves as to the class they teach. Monitors may tell what they have been told: they can only teach facts.

149. When you have a small number of scholars, and do not require a gallery, a dozen for example, place them before you in two rows six abreast.

---

## ELEMENTARY TRAINING.

150. Give *short lessons*, and give a variety each day, which produces the most healthful state of mind, just as the physical powers of the body are rendered more healthy by a simultaneous exercise of all, rather than simply of one or two. Exercising the mind, therefore, daily, on literary as well as scientific and moral subjects, will produce a condition the most healthy and vigorous.

151. In teaching to write, let every movement of the classes be as much as possible simultaneous :—Stop writing—clean pens—put past pens—close copybooks—stand up—turn right, left, or whichever way you wish the children to move.

152. Let mental arithmetic uniformly precede arithmetic by rule, and then the study will become a pleasure.

153. In English grammar, the various cases, &c. must be illustrated familiarly. For example :—*Objective case*—The gift was presented to me—*me* being the objective. *Possessive case*—The dog is *John's*—the dog being *John's* property or possession. Cause the child or children to give illustrations, at every lesson, on each of the tenses, moods, &c., that may form part of that day's exercises, by one or two short sentences formed at the moment, and on slate and paper afterwards in written composition. Each boy will vary the illustrations according to his peculiar cast of mind, and thus keep up an intense interest in the whole class. Such illustrations, or *mental composition*, ought to precede the committing of the rules verbally to memory ; indeed the exercise enables the pupils to form rules for themselves. It may be proper, however, in every case, that the children commit to memory the exact words of the approved rules of accomplished grammarians.

154. As it may fall to your lot to open Juvenile Training Schools of children of all ages, from six years up to twelve or fourteen, we would give you the following hints respecting difficulties which have been experienced in the formation of some of our



new schools. Whatever branches they may be learning, or at whatever stage they may be, turn them back, and give the simple, clear outlines, first ; then return, and give the less bold : account the facts and materials the children may have been furnished with, as useful only to be relaid on a broad base, and erected into a firm superstructure. You will remember what the master of our Juvenile Department had to contend with at the opening of the new buildings, which, being distant from the old site, could only be occupied by new scholars, and where 200 untrained children were admitted for the first time, of all ages from six to fourteen years, and at all stages of instruction. The process of uprooting bad habits, and substituting good ones, was found here, as you will find elsewhere, both difficult and tedious.

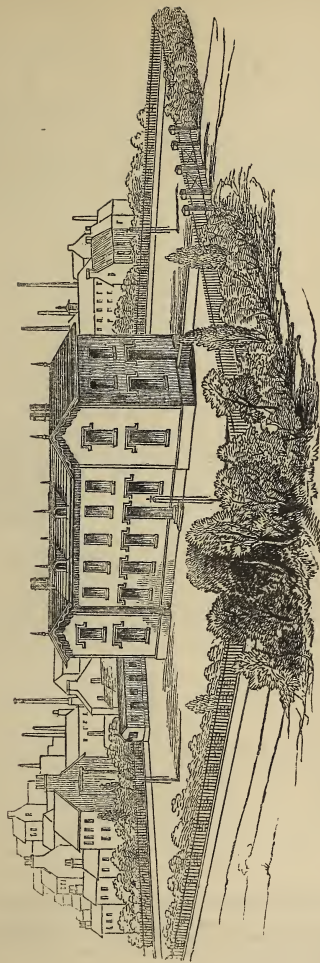
155. In teaching Latin upon the training system, see that every term be *familiarly illustrated*, and thus pictured out to the mind of the boy, before being used—Indicative, Subjunctive, Pluperfect, &c. ; why a verb is conjugated and a noun declined. We remember being puzzled to remember whether we ought not to *conjugate* a noun and *decline* a verb, for neither of these terms was present to our mind's eye. With the exception of one or two terms, such as Nominative, Perfect, Singular, and Plural, all was dark and unmeaning. The terms will not only be understood, but rendered actually interesting to the boy, were they pictured out according to the system. Suppose, before you compel the boy to repeat—Nominative, Penna, a pen ; Genitive, Pennæ, of a pen ; Dative, Pennæ, to a pen ; &c.—that he is made to understand what Nominative means, and that it be pictured out in its root, &c., as meaning the *whole* pen, and, therefore, the *highest* in the scale of that you mean to decline ; that when Genitive (also in its root) means not necessarily the whole pen, but only *of* the pen, and therefore a *declination*—less than the whole ; Dative (from Do, dedi, &c.), to a pen, is still less, or farther declined ; and so on to the Ablative, when all is declined. This will be a slower process in going through the grammar, in the first instance, but it will facilitate the translating of sentences, and render the acquisition of Latin a perfect delight to the boy.

## APPENDIX.

---

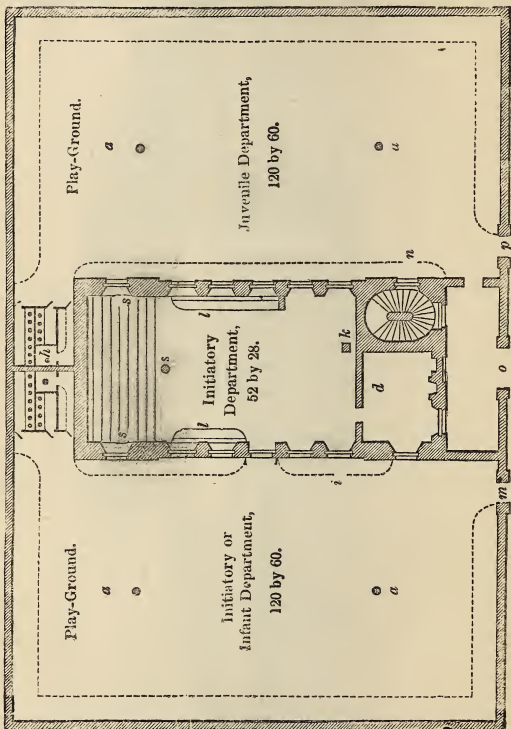
### TO DIRECTORS.

*Visitors.*—It is always injurious, oftentimes ruinous, to the discipline and permanent success of a Training School, to receive visitors during THE FIRST TWO MONTHS of its being opened by any newly appointed master. Parents, directors, and the public, ought to be excluded during that period, until the children are *moulded* into order and obedience. Directors, however, ought to know what is going on. The usual mode is to appoint two, to whom exclusively the superintendence is committed during the period mentioned.



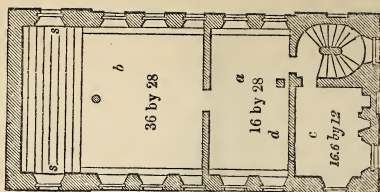
No. 1.—PAROCHIAL OR PRIVATE TRAINING SCHOOLS, INITIATORY AND JUVENILE, WITH DWELLING-HOUSE ABOVE

No. 2.—GROUND PLAN OF PLATE No. 1.



*a* Circular Swings. *b* Flower Borders. *c* Gallery. *d* Class Room  
*e* Water-Closets. *f* Water-Closets for Girls. *s* Steps on each side of the  
 gallery about 18 inches broad, by which to ascend and descend in marching  
 order, as in Plate No. 4.

No. 3.



*a* Senior Division. *b*  
 Advanced Division — Ju-  
 venile Departments. *c*  
 Class-room and Master's  
 Room. *d* A Gallery of five  
 steps.

## DESCRIPTION OF PLATES, Nos. 2, 3.

- c* Gallery. 1.1. Two side seats.
- k* Stove-pipe led into class-room vent.
- f* Girls' Water-Closet, twelve feet by three feet.
- e* Boys' ditto, ten feet by three feet. Eight feet each might do.
- h* Retiring place for Boys.
- a* Circular swing, one each for Boys and Girls.
- n* Entrance to Juvenile School.
- i* Entrance to School Room.
- m* Entrance to Infant department.
- p* Entrance to Juvenile department.
- o* Centre gate.

The newel of stair to be of a sufficient thickness to prevent the steps being too narrow at the sides.

Coal Cellars below stair. Walls of both schools lined with wood four feet six inches above floor. The floors to be of timber. Ceilings fourteen feet high, and if pannelled an echo will be prevented. Two or more of the window breasts nearest the Class Room fitted up, forming presses for holding the wooden bricks in the infant school, and in the juvenile school for the same purpose, and for books, &c.

Hats and cloaks hung round the class room.

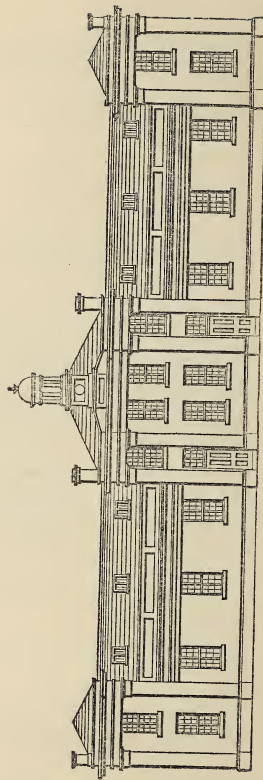
N.B. From these plans, any architect may easily determine the cost of an initiatory or juvenile school, or both combined, with the outhouses and enclosing wall. He has only to know what are the proposed materials, brick or stone. About £40 to £50, generally speaking, will fit up and furnish a school with apparatus, including the circular swings.

In some cases, the garrets are fitted up as a third story with lower ceiling, for girls, for an industrial school, or a dwelling-house for one of the masters.

The elevation, No. 1, shows projections not requisite to the practical working, but may be added by those who choose to expend a small sum on taste.

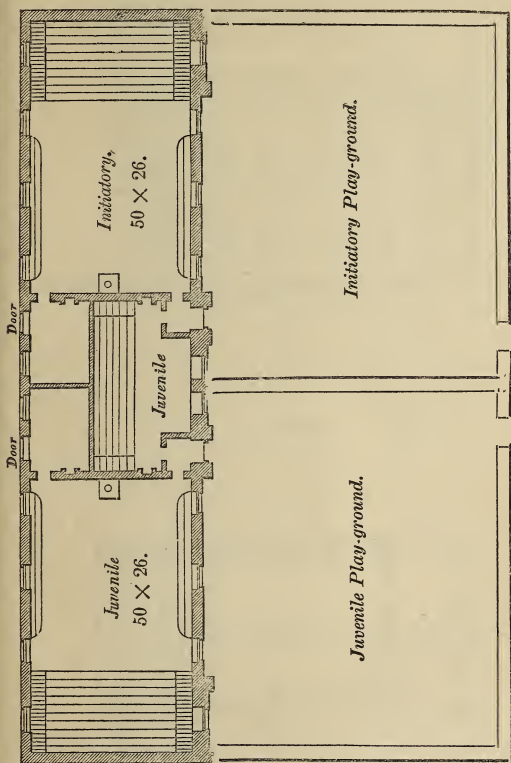
Plate, No. 3. Heights, &c. of gallery, see No. 7. Five or six steps in gallery, junior division.

# No. 4.—TRAINING SCHOOLS UNDER THE HIGHLAND SOCIETY.



NOTE.—These Schools do not cost much more than Plates No. I. and II. ; but they occupy a larger space of ground. This Plan might be a good platform for a small Normal Training Seminary, the upper floor to be used as Class Rooms for the Students—the centre forming a hall. The Senior or advanced department has a play-ground behind the buildings. Wherever front ground can be had, this will be found an imposing and very economical plan. The building is of stone. The belfry is of wood, and only cost between £5 and £6.





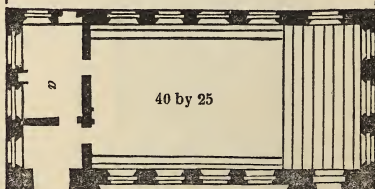
GROUND PLAN OF PLATE No. 4.

*a* Junior Division, 20 by 28. The Play-Ground, in two divisions, may be in front or back of building. *b* Advanced Division, 46 by 28. *c* Juvenile Class-Room. *d* Infant Department, 46 by 28. *e* Infant Class-Rooms, 14 by 12. *Upper Floor*—Master's Houses and School of Industry. The Water-Closets are placed at each end of the building.

NO. 5 — SMALL TRAINING SCHOOL, INFANT OR JUVENILE, WITH  
MASTER'S HOUSE, SECOND FLOOR.



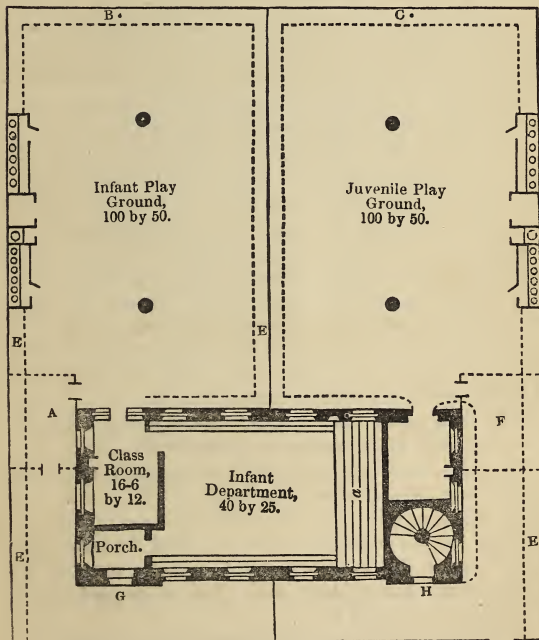
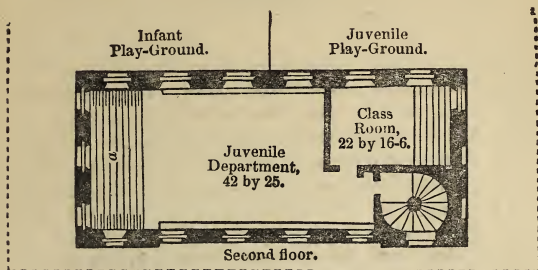
Play-Ground.



A Class-room, 16-6 by 12.

This is understood to be on the line of a street, or placed only a few feet backwards.

NO. 6.—TRAINING SCHOOLS, CORRESPONDING TO ELEVATION,  
Plate No. 5.



a Gallery, see plate No. 7. b Gallery, Junior Division, 5 or 6 steps.

This is the only convenient mode of having two Training Schools for 120 or 150 children each, when the width of the ground does not permit the erection of the building as in plate Nos. 2 and 3. Nos. 2 and 4 are decidedly the preferable plans for two Schools, with play-ground on either side.

## DESCRIPTION OF PLATES, Nos. 6, 10.

The details of these plates being the same as Nos. 2 and 3, a particular description of them is unnecessary. They are inserted to show what must be done when the width of the ground will not admit of the arrangement as shown in Plates Nos. 1 and 2.

Plate No. 6 shows two schools, initiatory and juvenile. On the ground story, an initiatory school for 120 scholars, with an entrance porch and class-room. If it be desirable that 150 or 160 should be accommodated, the class-room and porch require to be thrown into the school, and the class-room erected in the situation marked A upon the plan shown by dotted lines.

If the width of the play-ground do not admit of the water-closets being placed in the situation shown in the plan, they may then be erected at the places marked B and C.; see page 446.

The second floor of the same building shows a juvenile or initiatory school, large enough for the training of 120.

*N.B.* The doors of the class room to the infant school must open *direct into* the play-ground; the door from the class-room of the juvenile school must open *direct* to the stair, and the door at the foot of stair also *direct into* the play-ground.

F shows how by an outside stair the infant school may be enlarged to fifty feet, instead of forty-two feet, as marked in Plate No. 3; there is no objection to the outside stair-case but the appearance, and it makes the most complete school.

E represents flower borders. It is preferable to set each of the schools at least five or six feet back from the front of the street, or fifteen to twenty, should the ground permit.

Plate No. 5 shows a training school, with, or without a master's house. If with, the porch may be formed into a stair.

The walls of both schools are lined with wood all round, to the height of four feet six inches above the floor.

The bottoms of the windows are *three feet above the floor*.

In the juvenile department, on each side of the gallery next the wall, there may be placed small intervening steps, for the children to march easily down upon. For the proper height of gallery seats, see Plates No. 7.

G Entrance porch to the infant school.

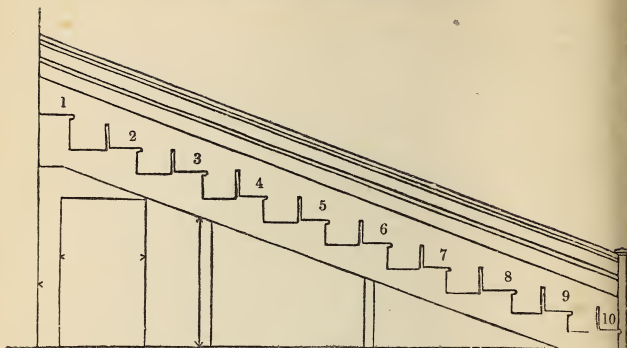
H Stair to juvenile school.

M Door from class-room into play-ground.

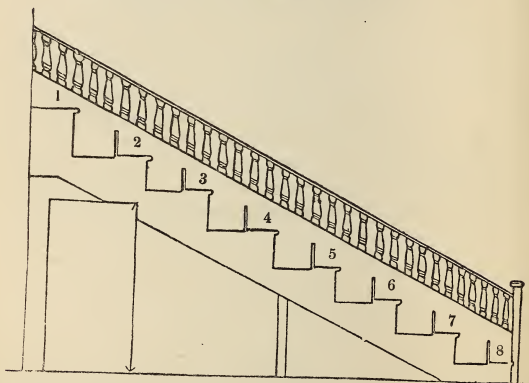
#### FEMALE SCHOOL OF INDUSTRY.

Plate No. 10. This gallery would seat 84 girls at work, or 100 advanced children at any of the higher branches in a training school. Slates for composition or sketching may be suspended in front on the children, against the pillar of the small tables, the school bags on the sides, and the small top for a book, compasses, &c. The height of each wooden stalk is 29 inches to the top of the table ; thickness, two inches. The top is oval, and is  $11\frac{1}{2}$  inches in length, including the ledge, and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in breadth at the centre. A brass wire runs through the turned ornament at the top of stalk which holds the cotton bobbins for sewing, and on which they are strung. The table stalk is placed close to, and in front of the railing, for the children's backs, so as not to interfere with the *sunken* passage behind. A hole is cut through the seat for the pillar, and it is secured underneath the gallery. There ought to be one post for every two children, and the top of the small table divided into two equal parts, by a piece of wood  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch broad and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch high. The increase of width at every third step is to afford room for the mistress of the school to walk along and examine the work without disturbing the children.

NO. 7.—GALLERY.—INFANT DEPARTMENT.



GALLERY.—JUVENILE DEPARTMENT.



Infant Gallery.—Dimensions of Seats.

No.	Breadth.	Height.	Footboard.
1.	11 in.	14 in.	12 in.
2.	11	9 $\frac{1}{2}$	13
3, 4.	10	9 $\frac{1}{2}$	13
5, 6.	10	9 $\frac{1}{2}$	12
7.	10	9	12
8.	9	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	12
9.	9	7 $\frac{1}{2}$	12
10.	9	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	—

Juvenile Gallery.—Dimensions of Seats.

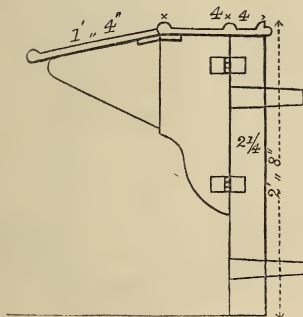
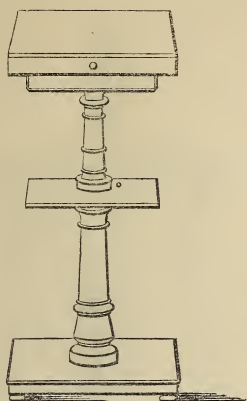
No.	Breadth.	Height.	Footboard.
1.	12 in.	16 in.	12 in.
2.	12	14 $\frac{1}{2}$	12
3.	12	13 $\frac{1}{2}$	11
4.	11	11	11
5.	11	12	10
6.	11	12	1
7.	10	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	10
8.	10	9	—

Height of the Seat Backs, 9 $\frac{1}{2}$  in.

N.B.—The Footboard is sunk the thickness of the wood behind the small railing.

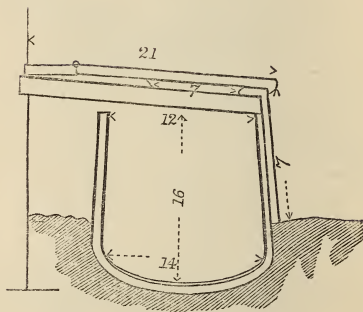
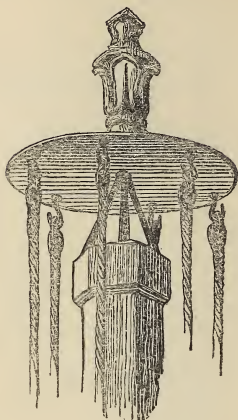


No. 8.—BIBLE STAND, &c.



Writing Desks, fixed to the sides of the School-Hall ; or when made double, they are movable, and fold down close against the wall, leaving the centre area clear when the desks are not in use.

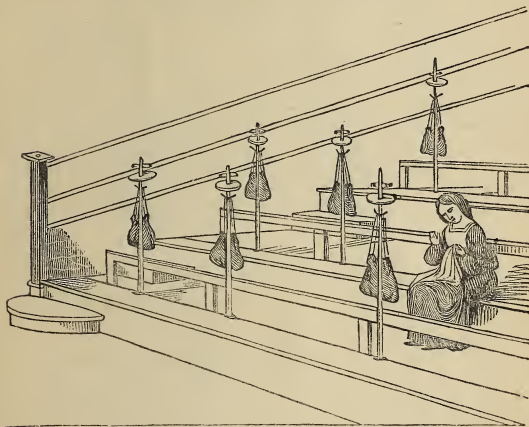
# No. 9.—CIRCULAR SWING TOP.



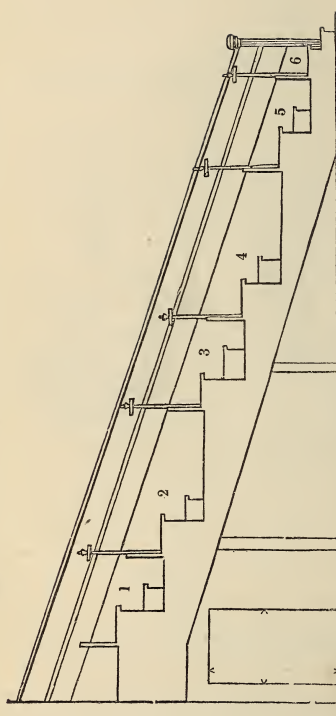
Section of Water-Closets.

This trough, which extends the whole line of each closet in all the departments, has 3 or 4 inches of water constantly lying in it, and it runs off once a-day. Material—wood, lined with lead. This is only one mode of arranging the Water-Closets. The great points to be gained are cleanliness throughout, and a sufficiency of water to keep every thing fresh.

NO. 10.—GALLERY.—FEMALE SCHOOL OF INDUSTRY.  
SEE DESCRIPTIVE PAGE 443.



SECTION, GALLERY PLATE 10. —FEMALE SCHOOL OF INDUSTRY.

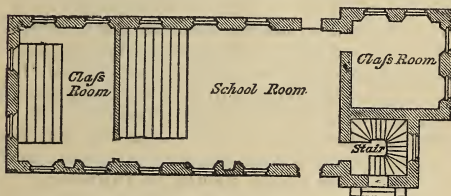


No.	Divisions of Seats, &c.			
	Seats.		Foot Boards.	
	Breadth.	Height.	Breadth.	Height.
1.	13 in.	15½ in.	9 in.	7½
2.	13	14½	9	7
3.	12	14½	9	7
4.	12	13	9	6
5.	12	12	9	6
6.	12	11	—	5½
Height of the backs, 12 in., of wooden stalks, 33 in.				
			Passage.	
			19 in.	
			36.	
			19.	
			37.	
			19.	
			—	



No. 11.—Village Training School, with Master's house above and small School of Industry, or Infant's below and Juvenile above.—Play-Ground enclosed in front.

The ground plan of the two rooms (covered and uncovered) is the chief point to be attended to. Every person will of course please his own taste as to the building—cottage, Grecian style, &c.



Ground Plan of Juvenile Training School.

Nos. 2, 4, 5, and 6, are more convenient than this.

## PLAN FOR ERECTING TRAINING SCHOOLS IN THE STREETS AND LANES OF A CITY.

---

The great barrier to the establishment of Training Schools in a large town, is the extreme high price of ground for the *uncovered* school-room or play-ground, and especially in the densest portions of them, where moral and intellectual training is most imperatively required.

Without a play-ground there cannot be a Training School. The question is, therefore, Can this necessity be met by any substitute, even although a limited number of pupils only may be accommodated?

Suppose a site is procured in the line of a street or lane, 72 or 74 feet long, reaching backwards as far as possible, but say 100 feet, erect a building. If three stories, arch the ground floor, without windows, and from front to back this will form a play-ground, partly covered by the flat above of, say, 100 feet long by 60 feet broad—12 feet of the site being occupied by the passage and staircase.

The second floor will form a school 60 feet long by 30 feet broad, with a small class-room 10 or 12 feet square, in front of the stair.

The third story same as the second story, and the play-ground on the roof, nearly flat, and paved with *asphalte*, and surrounded with high railings, forming a small play-ground of 60 by 30 feet. If the open flat roof is not approved of, then by adding a fourth story, with arched *open* windows, air will be admitted freely, front and back. The water-closets may be placed at the sides of the stair, at each landing, and flowers in pots may be placed on the flat roof, as a trial of honesty and a training to it.

Some such plan as this would render the establishment of Training Schools comparatively an easy matter in towns. The lower school should be Initiatory, and the upper one for more advanced scholars. The Initiatory may be for infants under six, or infants of from six to eight years of age.



## ERRATA.

---

Page 18—bottom line, *for* £24 *read* £34.

“ 41—12th line from top, *read*—the mother and the infant  
he may find, but the father and the rest of the  
family are out.

“ 97—13th line from top, *for* tree *read* hen.

“ 239—8th line from top, *for* casually *read* causally.

“ 351—3rd line from bottom, *for* rests *read* rest.

“ 361—9th line from top, *for* may be *read* were.



# NEW WORKS AND NEW EDITIONS,

PUBLISHED BY

**BLACKIE AND SON,**

QUEEN STREET, GLASGOW; SOUTH COLLEGE, EDINBURGH;  
AND WARWICK SQUARE, LONDON.

---

COMPLETE IN 38 PARTS, AT 2s. 6d. EACH.

## THE IMPERIAL FAMILY BIBLE;

CONTAINING

THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS

According to the most correct copies of the authorized version. With Many Thousand Critical, Explanatory, and Practical Notes; also, References, Readings, Chronological Tables, and Indexes. The Whole Illustrated by a Superb series of Engravings from the Old Masters, and from Original Designs by JOHN MARTIN, K. L.

The intention of the publishers, in undertaking this Edition of the HOLY SCRIPTURES, is to produce a FAMILY BIBLE suitable alike for youth and age, and combining at once large type and convenient size; and they feel confident in stating, that no Edition, equally beautiful in point of Typography, or in elegance of Form, has yet been offered to the Public.

The accuracy of the TEXT, the numerous REFERENCES to PARALLEL PASSAGES, the NOTES, chiefly selected from the great Commentators on the Scriptures; the INTRODUCTORY and CONCLUDING REMARKS to each Book, and the GENERAL INTRODUCTION and CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES and INDEXES, will powerfully recommend this Edition of the Bible to the Scriptural Student and Reader.

The ENGRAVED ILLUSTRATIONS include a selection from the most admired works of the Old Masters, and no fewer than Nine Subjects by John Martin, K. L., amongst which are those great Master-pieces of Modern Art,—“THE DELUGE,” “BELSHAZZAR’S FEAST,” and “THE CRUCIFIXION.”

No exertions have been spared to render the Imperial Family Bible *pure in TEXT, faithful in COMMENT, exquisite in ILLUSTRATION, and finished in TYPOGRAPHY*

---

TO BE COMPLETED IN 24 NOS. 6d. EACH.

## THE ILLUSTRATED POCKET BIBLE;

Containing the OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS, according to the Authorised Version. With nearly 9000 Critical and Explanatory Notes, and 80,000 References and Readings. Embellished by a Series of exquisite Engravings, from the Ancient and Modern Masters.

---

NEW EDITION, IN 16 PARTS, 1s. EACH.

## THE PROTESTANT,

A Series of Essays on the Characteristic Features, the Errors and Superstitions of the CHURCH OF ROME.

BY WILLIAM M’GAVIN, Esq.

WORKS PUBLISHED BY

THE  
**ENGINEER AND MACHINIST'S ASSISTANT:**

Being a Series of Plans, Sections, and Elevations of Steam Engines, Spinning Machines, Mills for Grinding, &c., taken from Machines of the most approved construction, at present in operation, with Descriptions and Instructions for drawing Machinery. By D. SCOTT, Engineer. Also, an Introduction, and Essays on various departments of Machinery. This Work will be published in Parts, at 2s. 6d. each, containing 4 and 6 Plates alternately, of an Imperial Quarto size, with accompanying Letterpress; and the whole will extend to about 24 Parts.

~~~~~  
"THE WORLD RENOWNED CONVERSATIONS LEXICON."—*Edin. Review.*

**THE POPULAR ENCYCLOPEDIA.**

OR

**CONVERSATIONS LEXICON;**

Being a General Dictionary of Arts, Sciences, Literature, Biography, History, Ethics, and Political Economy; with Dissertations on the Progress of Science, Literature, and the Fine Arts, by THOMAS THOMSON, M.D., F.R.S., &c. Regius Professor of Chemistry, University of Glasgow; SIR DANIEL K. SANDFORD, D.C.L., Professor of Greek, University of Glasgow; and ALLAN CUNNINGHAM, Esq., author of "Lives of British Painters," &c. Illustrated by many Hundred Plates and Diagrams.

COMPLETE IN 56 PARTS AT 2s. 6d., OR 14 HALF VOLUMES AT 11s. EACH.

~~~~~  
IN 24 PARTS AT 1s. EACH, A COMPLETE EDITION WITH NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIONS.

**ROLLIN'S ANCIENT HISTORY**

OF THE

Egyptians, Carthaginians, Assyrians, Babylonians, Medes and Persians, Macedonians and Grecians, Alexander the Great, and his Successors.

With Extensive Notes, Geographical, Topographical, Historical, and Critical, and a Life of the author. By JAMES BELL. Author of Bell's Geography, Critical Researches in Geography, &c.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR, AND UNIFORM WITH THE "ANCIENT HISTORY,"

A HISTORY OF THE

**ARTS AND SCIENCES OF THE ANCIENTS.**

COMPLETE IN 10 PARTS, 1s. EACH.

~~~~~  
A HISTORY

**OF THE EARTH AND ANIMATED NATURE.**

BY OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

With Numerous Notes from the works of the most distinguished British and Foreign Naturalists, embodying the latest discoveries in Natural History. Illustrated by nearly Two Thousand Figures, from Drawings by Harvey, Stewart, and Captain Thomas Brown, F.L.S., &c.

COMPLETE IN NOS. OR PARTS, FOR 3s.

BLACKIE AND SON.

A CYCLOPEDIA  
OF  
DOMESTIC MEDICINE AND SURGERY;

Being an Alphabetical Account of the various Diseases incident to the Human Frame; with Directions for their Treatment, and for performing the more simple Operations of Surgery, also, Instructions for administering the various Substances used in Medicine; for the Regulation of Diet and Regimen; and the management of the Diseases of Women and Children. By THOMAS ANDREW, M.D.

COMPLETE IN 17 PARTS, AT 1s. EACH, ILLUSTRATED WITH ENGRAVINGS  
ON WOOD AND STEEL.

"A most valuable Work."—*Liverpool Mercury*.

"Of much utility as a ready and simple guide in medical practice."—*Liverpool Courier*.

"We strongly recommend this work to all who are entrusted with the management of a family."—*Bristol Times*.

"There is no quackery about it. It is scientific, and yet perfectly intelligible to the plain reader."—*Wiltshire Independent*.

ILLUSTRATED WITH 550 ENGRAVINGS ON WOOD AND STEEL.

A HISTORY OF THE VEGETABLE KINGDOM;

Embracing the Physiology, Classification, and Culture of Plants; with their various uses to Man and the Lower Animals; and their application in the Arts, Manufactures, and Domestic Economy. By WILLIAM RHIND, author of "Elements of Geology," "A Catechism of Botany," &c.

COMPLETE IN 9 PARTS, 2s. OR NOS. 6d. EACH.

"In his selections of important facts, and condensing and arranging his store, derived from numerous sources, the author displays considerable talent, and a knowledge of his subject, evidently the result of deep and well-directed study."—*Gardener's Gazette*.

"An able and splendid work."—*Edinburgh Advertiser*.

"This is in all respects an excellent work, in its literary, its topographic, and papyric relations."—*Monthly Magazine*.

COMPLETE, ILLUSTRATED EDITION, LITERARY AND PICTORIAL, OF

THE WORKS OF ROBERT BURNS;

Consisting of a Complete Collection of his Poems, Songs, and Correspondence; arranged Chronologically, and accompanied by Numerous Notes and Annotations. The whole preceded by Professor Wilson's Celebrated Essay "On the Genius and Character of Burns," and Dr. Currie's Memoir of the Poet. Embellished by Eighty-one Portrait and Landscape Illustrations.

TERMS.—This Edition of the Works of Burns, the most complete and most beautifully illustrated that has yet been produced, will extend to 21 Parts, Royal 8vo., at 2s. each, and will form, when finished, two large volumes. Each Part will contain 4 plates, and 40 pages of letter-press; with the exception of the last Part, which will consist almost exclusively of an extra quantity of letter-press.

WORKS PUBLISHED BY

---

## THE HISTORY OF SCOTLAND,

From the Earliest Period, to the Regency of the Earl of Moray, by **GEORGE BUCHANAN**. With Notes, and a Continuation to 1792, by **JAMES AIKMAN, Esq.**

Complete in 51 Parts, 1s. Each, with Twenty-five Portrait and Landscape Illustrations.

---

## THE LAND OF BURNS;

A Series of Landscape Rendered Classical by the Writings of the Scottish Poet. Engraved in the highest style of Art, from paintings made expressly for the Work, by **D. O. HILL, Esq., R.S.A.** Also, Portraits of the Poet, his Friends, and Subjects of his Muse; and Descriptions of the Scenes, and Biographical Notices, by **ROBERT CHAMBERS, Esq.**, author of the "Scottish Biographical Dictionary," &c., with an Essay on the Genius and Character of Burns, by **PROFESSOR WILSON**, of Edinburgh.

IN 23 PARTS AT 2s., OR IN FIVE DIVISIONS, CLOTH GILT, 11s. EACH.

---

## THE CASQUET OF LITERARY GEMS.

EDITED BY **A. WHITELAW.**

With Twenty-five Illustrative Engravings from Original Drawings, chiefly by Members of the Royal Scottish Academy.

IN FOUR VOLUMES, ELEGANTLY BOUND IN CLOTH, PRICE 28s.

OR 24 PARTS, 1s. EACH.

---

## THE REPUBLIC OF LETTERS.

A Selection in Poetry and Prose, from the works of the most eminent Writers, with many Original Pieces. By the Editor of the "Casquet of Literary Gems." With Twenty-five Illustrations after the most Admired Artists.

IN FOUR VOLUMES, ELEGANTLY BOUND IN CLOTH, PRICE 28s.

OR 24 PARTS, 1s. EACH.

---

IN FIVE VOLS., PRICE 5s. EACH, THE FIRST COMPLETE EDITION OF

THE POETICAL WORKS OF

## THE ETTRICK SHEPHERD,

With an Autobiography, and Reminiscences of his Contemporaries. Illustrated by Engravings from Original Drawings, by **D. O. HILL, Esq., R.S.A.**

---

ALSO, UNIFORM WITH THE ABOVE, IN SIX VOLUMES, PRICE 5s. EACH,

TALES AND SKETCHES BY

## THE ETTRICK SHEPHERD,

Including the Brownie of Bodsbeck, Winter Evening Tales, Shepherd's Calendar, &c.; and several Pieces never before Published.



## BLACKIE AND SON.

THE MOST EXTENSIVE COLLECTION EVER PUBLISHED.

### THE BOOK OF SCOTTISH SONG;

A Collection of the Best and Most Approved Songs of Scotland, Ancient and Modern; With Critical and Historical Notices regarding them and their authors.

Each page adorned with an ornamental border beautifully printed in colours. This collection contains upwards of Twelve Hundred Songs and specimens of above Three Hundred Authors. In 15 Nos., 6d. each, Containing Thirty-two and Forty-eight Pages alternately, or Handsomely bound in Cloth, gilt edges, 9s. Morocco, extra gilt edges, 11s.

UNIFORM WITH "THE BOOK OF SCOTTISH SONG,"

### THE BOOK OF SCOTTISH BALLADS;

A Comprehensive Collection of the Ballads of Scotland; with Numerous Illustrative Notes. By the Editor of "The Book of Scottish Song."

This work will be printed uniform with "The Book of Scottish Song"—a size of type which admits of a vast quantity of Matter in little space, and which at the same time is not offensively small to the eye. It will not exceed the above work in extent of price, and yet it will embrace THE WHOLE OF SCOTT'S MINSTRELSY OF THE SCOTTISH BORDER, the whole of Jamieson's Northern Ballads, the whole of Motherwell's Ballads, and many others, within its absorbing pages. COPIOUS ILLUSTRATIVE NOTICES will accompany each ballad; and where different versions of the same piece exist, and the differences are material, both versions, or more, *will be given entire*, so that the reader will have it in his power to judge, at a glance, of their respective merits. In other cases, where the variations are slight or unimportant, the different readings will be duly recorded in the foot notes.

IN ONE THICK VOL. 8vo, WITH MAPS, 14s.

### RELIGION IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,

Or an Account of the Origin, Progress, Relations to the State, and Present Condition of the Evangelical Churches in the United States. With Notices of the Unevangelical Denominations. By the REV. ROBERT BAIRD: author of "L'Union de l'Eglise et de l'Etat dans la Nouvelle Angleterre." With a Prefatory Recommendation by the REV. DRS. WELSH, CUNNINGHAM, and BUCHANAN.

"It is beyond comparison, the most satisfactory volume on the subject of which it treats, that has yet appeared in Great Britain, although several have proceeded from pens of no common order."—*Christian Witness*.

### THE CHRISTIAN'S DAILY COMPANION,

Presenting an entire view of divine truth, in a Series of Meditations, or short Practical Discourses, for every Morning and Evening throughout the Year. For Famil and Private Reading. By Thirty-one Clergymen of the Church of Scotland

IN ONE VOLUME, SUPER ROYAL, 8vo, CLOTH, 21s., OR 10 PARTS, 2s. EACH.

THE SELECT  
PRACTICAL WORKS OF RICHARD BAXTER,

Including the whole of his Treatises on Conversion; The Divine Life; Dying Thoughts; and The Saints' Everlasting Rest. Carefully Revised, and preceded by a Memoir of the Author.

IN 12 PARTS, 2S. EACH, OR NUMBERS, 6D. EACH.

WILLISON'S PRACTICAL WORKS;

With an Essay on his Life and Times. By the REV. W. M. HETHERINGTON, A.M., Torphichen.

TO BE COMPLETED IN 40 NOS. AT 6D. EACH.

DWIGHT'S THEOLOGY  
OR COMPLETE BODY OF DIVINITY;

In a Series of Sermons, containing a System of Doctrines; a System of Duties; and a System of Dispensations consequent on the State of Probation. To which is prefixed an Essay on the Inspiration of the Holy Scriptures, by DANIEL DEWAR, D.D., Principal of Marischal College and University, Aberdeen.

IN 40 NUMBERS, 6D., OR 10 PARTS, 2S. EACH.

WATSON'S BODY OF PRACTICAL DIVINITY,

In a Series of Sermons on the Shorter Catechism of the Westminster Assembly. To which are appended Select Sermons on Various Subjects, together with the Art of Divine Contentment, and Christ's Various Fulness. The whole revised and corrected, with numerous Notes from approved authors.

IN 29 NUMBERS, 6D. EACH.

FLEETWOOD'S LIFE OF CHRIST;

With the Lives of the Apostles and Evangelists, by the REV. JOHN FLEETWOOD D.D. Also, the Lives of the Most Eminent Fathers and Martyrs, and the History of Primitive Christianity, by WILLIAM CAVE, D.D. With an Essay on the Evidence of Christianity, and numerous Notes not to be found in any other Edition. To which is subjoined a Concise History of the Christian Church, by the REV. THOMAS SIMS, M.A. Embellished with Superb Engravings.

IN 33 NUMBERS, 6D. EACH.

THE SAINTS' EVERLASTING REST;

The Divine Life; and Dying Thoughts; a Call to the Unconverted; and Now or Never. By RICHARD BAXTER. Carefully Revised, and preceded by a Memoir of the Author.

COMPLETE IN 21 NUMBERS, 6D. EACH.

BLACKIE AND SON.

## THE POPULAR FAMILY BIBLE.

*Brown's Self-interpreting Bible;*

Genuine Edition, with Corrections and Additions, under the Superintendence of the Author's Family. To this Edition are annexed, Two thousand Critical and Explanatory Notes, numerous References and Readings; also a Memoir of the Author by his grandson, the late REV. J. BROWN PATTERSON, Minister of Falkirk. And a Complete Index and Concise Dictionary. By the REV. JOHN BARR, Glasgow. With Historical and Landscape Illustrations, Family Register, &c.

COMPLETE IN 32 PARTS, 1s. EACH.

## Haweis's EVANGELICAL EXPOSITOR;

OR, A COMMENTARY ON THE HOLY BIBLE.

To which are annexed, an Introduction, Marginal References and Readings, by the REV. JOHN BROWN of Haddington, and a Complete Index and Concise Dictionary, by the REV. JOHN BARR, Glasgow. With Maps, Plans, and other Engravings.

This Edition is comprised in 63 Parts, at 1s. each; and to it is appended Barr's Index and Dictionary, which makes an additional Part. Thus the Reader, at an expense of only Sixty-three Shillings, may be put in possession of a Complete Family Bible and Concordance to the Holy Scriptures, combining altogether a treasury of Biblical knowledge seldom to be met with in one Publication.

## Haweis ON THE NEW TESTAMENT.

COMPLETE WITH PLATES, IN 40 NUMBERS, 6d., OR PARTS, 2s. EACH.

## LIVES OF ILLUSTRIOUS & DISTINGUISHED SCOTSMEN;

Forming a Complete Biographical Dictionary. By ROBERT CHAMBERS, Author of "The Picture of Scotland," Editor of "Chambers's Journal," &c.

IN 24 PARTS, 2s. EACH, EMBELLISHED WITH 24 PORTRAITS; OR WITH  
72 PORTRAITS, IN 8 HALF VOLS., 8s. 6d. EACH.

## STACKHOUSE'S HISTORY OF THE BIBLE.

A History of the Bible, from the Beginning of the World to the Establishment of Christianity. With Numerous Notes, explaining Difficult Texts, rectifying Mis-translations, and Reconciling Seeming Contradictions. By the REV. THOMAS STACKHOUSE, late Vicar of Beenham, Berkshire. Together with an Introduction, Additional Notes, Dissertations, and Complete Indexes. By DANIEL DEWAR, D.D., Principal of Marischal College and University, Aberdeen. New Edition, beautifully illustrated with a Series of Engravings, principally after the Old Masters.

IN 16 PARTS, 2s. EACH.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS PORTRAITS.

**D'AUBIGNE'S**  
**HISTORY OF THE REFORMATION**  
*In the Sixteenth Century.*

Translated from the French: with Notes. By DAVID DUNDAS SCOTT, Esq.,  
 Author of "The Suppression of the Reformation in France."

For Character and Recommendations of the Work, see Prospectus, or Part First.

IN 24 PARTS, 1s. EACH, OR 2 VOLS. 8vo, CLOTH, 25s.

**FAMILY WORSHIP.**

A Series of Prayers. With Doctrinal and Practical Remarks on Passages of Sacred Scripture, for every Morning and Evening throughout the Year; adapted to the Services of Domestic Worship. By One Hundred and Eighty Clergymen of the Church of Scotland.

ONE VOLUME, SUPER ROYAL 8vo, PRICE 21s., OR 10 PARTS, 2s. EACH.

**THE FOOTSTEPS OF THE FLOCK,**

Or the Contendings of Our Forefathers for the Headship of Christ, with the Disruption of the Church of Scotland, and the duty of separation from the Residuary Establishment. By the REV. JOHN ANDERSON, Helensburgh. 18mo, Cloth, Price 1s. 9d.

**ANNOTATIONS ON THE PENTATEUCH,**

Or, The Five Books of Moses; The Psalms of David; and the Song of Solomon. By HENRY AINSWORTH.

COMPLETE IN 14 PARTS, PRICE 2s.

"This is a good book, full of very valuable Jewish learning, and his translation is in many places to be preferred to our own, especially on the Psalms."—*Dr. Doddridge.*

"Ainsworth's works are more valued on the continent than here, inasmuch, that it is not easy to produce an English writer oftener quoted, or with greater testimonies of his merit, and this by the learned of all sects and opinions."—*Calmet's Dictionary.*

**THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER,**

And Administration of the Sacraments, &c., according to the use of the United Church of England and Ireland: together with The Psalter or Psalms of David. Pointed as they are to be Sung or Said in Churches. With Notes; and Numerous Illustrative Engravings, chiefly from the Old Masters.

TO BE COMPLETED IN 18 NOS. 6d. EACH.



IN ONE VOL. FOOLSCAP 8VO, PRICE 3s. 6d. IN CLOTH.

## THE PAST HISTORY AND FUTURE DESTINY OF ISRAEL,

As unfolded in the eighth and succeeding chapters of the book of Daniel. By the late ROBERT WODROW, Esq. With a Preliminary Essay, by the Rev, JOHN G. LORIMER, of St. David's Free Church, Glasgow.

## WODROW'S HISTORY

OF THE SUFFERINGS OF THE CHURCH OF SCOTLAND, edited by the Rev. ROBERT BURNS, D.D., F.A.S.E. Portraits. 4 vols. 8vo, Price, 36s.

"It is written with a fidelity that has seldom been disputed, and confirmed at the end of each volume by a large mass of public and private records."—*Chalmers*.

COMPLETE EDITION, POST OCTAVO, CLOTH, IN VOLS., PRICE 4s. 6d.

### NOTES ON THE NEW TESTAMENT,

By ALBERT BARNES, Minister of the Gospel, Philadelphia, U. S. Vol. I. Matthew—Mark. Vol. II. Luke—John. Vol. III. on Acts. Vol. IV. Romans. Vol. V. and VI. Corinthians and Galatians.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR, IN TWO PARTS, PRICE 1s. EACH.

### QUESTIONS ON THE FOUR GOSPELS,

Designed for Bible Classes and Sunday Schools. Part I. Matthew—Mark. Part II. Luke—John. This will be found an admirable manual for Sunday School Teachers and Heads of Families.

## KNOX'S HISTORY

OF THE REFORMATION IN SCOTLAND, with an Historical Introduction and Notes. By W. M'GAVIN, Esq., author of "The Protestant." Portraits. 28 Nos., 6d. each.

To the present edition have been added, The first Book of Discipline; Quentin Kennedy, Abbot of Crossraguel's Oration in favour of the Mass, and against Knox and the Reformation; the Disputation betwixt Knox and the Abbot of Crossraguel, at Maybole, 1562. These scarce tracts alone have hitherto cost more than is now charged for a complete copy of the present work.

## MOSHEIM'S CHURCH HISTORY,

With Notes and Chronological Tables.

"The historian Mosheim is full, rational, correct, and moderate."—*Gibbon*.

## JOSEPHUS' WHOLE WORKS,

With Maps and Numerous other Illustrations. 56 Nos., at 6d., or 14 Parts, 2s. each.

## BROWN'S DICTIONARY OF THE HOLY BIBLE:

To which is added, an Enlarged edition of Brown's Concordance to the Bible. Notes, Maps, and Plates. 32 Nos., 6d. each.

## BUNYAN'S PILGRIM'S PROGRESS,

With Mason's Explanatory Notes, The World to Come, Heart's Ease, and Divine Emblems. Superbly Illustrated, in 24 Nos., 6d. each.

**BEAUTIES OF EBENEZER ERSKINE,**

With copious Notes from other eminent Authors. 20 Nos., 6d. each.

**HALL'S CONTEMPLATIONS**

On the Historical Passages of the Old and New Testaments. Essay by Wardlaw. 34 Nos., 6d. each.

**HALYBURTON'S WORKS,**

Professor of Divinity in the University of St. Andrews. With an Essay on his Life and Writings, by Dr. Burns of Paisley. In 30 Nos., 6d. each.

**LECTURES ON THE GOSPEL ACCORDING TO LUKE,**

By the Rev. JAMES FOOTE, Aberdeen, 6 vols., small 8vo, Price £1. 10s.

**THE PROTESTANT,**

By WM. M'GAVIN, Esq. Portrait. In 16 Parts, 1s. each.

**WILLISON'S AFFLICTED MAN'S COMPANION.**

New edition, boards, 2s.

**BARR'S HELP TO PROFESSING CHRISTIANS,**

In judging their Spiritual State and Growth in Grace. Second edition, small 8vo. Price 3s. cloth.

**BARR'S SCRIPTURE STUDENT'S ASSISTANT:**

Being a complete Index and concise Dictionary of the Bible. Eighth edition, F'cap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

**PLAIN CATECHETICAL INSTRUCTIONS**

ON INFANT BAPTISM; to which is prefixed, An Address to Young Parents. 4th Edition. Price 6d.

**PLAIN CATECHETICAL INSTRUCTIONS**

FOR YOUNG COMMUNICANTS, designed to Assist them in forming Scriptural views of the Lord's Supper; with An Address to Young Persons not yet Communicants. Price 6d.

**CHRISTIAN RECORDS:**

Or a short and plain History of the Church of Christ, containing an account of the Sufferings of Martyrs, and the Rise of the Reformation. By the Rev. THOMAS SIMS, M.A. 3s. cloth.

**PSALMS OF DAVID IN METRE,**

With Notes and an Introduction, containing an account of the Scottish Version. Roan, embossed, gilt edges, 8d.

**NEW TESTAMENT IN FRENCH,**

Beautifully printed in demy 48mo., Frontispiece and Vignette. Roan, Embossed, Price 2s.

**BROWN'S CONCORDANCE TO THE BIBLE,**

New edition, beautifully printed, small 18mo, 1s. 6d. cloth.



**BROWN'S HISTORY OF THE MARROW CONTROVERSY;**

With Memoirs of the Marrow Divines, and copious Extracts from their Writings. 5s. cloth.

**COMMERCIAL HAND-BOOK;**

A Compendium of Tables and information for the Trader, Merchant, and Commercial Traveller, 350 pages, 48mo, 1s. 6d. roan.

**FERGUSON'S INTEREST TABLES,**

At Thirteen different Rates, from a Quarter to Six per Cent., also, Tables of Commission and Brokerage. Roan, 5s.

**HARTLEY'S ORATORICAL CLASS-BOOK**

Eighth edition, bound, 3s. 6d.

**MAVER'S JOHNSON'S DICTIONARY;**

With the Pronunciation on the basis of Walker, and numerous useful Tables. 18mo, 2s. bound.

**ADAM'S ROMAN ANTIQUITIES,**

Edited by JAMES BOYD, LL.D., one of the Masters of the High School, Edinburgh. One Hundred Illustrations. Price 5s. 6d. in cloth; or with Questions, 7s. cloth. The Questions separately, price 1s. 8d.

We bestow the unqualified praise which it merits on the edition before us.—*Dublin University Mag.*

Every student should add it to his stock of books, however small.—*Monthly Mag*

**POTTER'S ANTIQUITIES OF GREECE;**

With Numerous Notes, and enlarged Indices, by JAMES BOYD, LL.D., one of the Masters of the High School, Edinburgh, and editor of Adam's Roman Antiquities, &c., with a Sketch of the Literature of Greece, by Sir D. K. Sandford; and One Hundred and Fifty Illustrations. Price 9s., cloth.

The present edition recommends itself, both by its cheapness, and by the valuable improvements which have been introduced into it.—*Aberdeen Journal.*

**LAWRIE'S MERCANTILE ARITHMETIC,**

Adapted to the Imperial Weights and Measures; with a brief view of the nature, use, and negotiation of Bills of Exchange.

Bound in Roan, with Key,.....3s.

Parts One and Two, in cloth, without Key, each.....1s. 3d.

The Key separately,.....1s.

The FIRST PART ends with the Calculation of Interest for Days, and contains what is absolutely necessary for the common business of life.

PART SECOND contains Decimal Rules for the Calculation of Interest on Bank Accounts, Gain and Loss, Insurances, Stock Jobbing, &c., Partnership, Bankruptcy, Exchange, and a Treatise on Bills.

**WALKER'S DICTIONARY AND KEY,**

Beautifully printed in royal 18mo, with a Portrait of the Author. 15 Nos., 6d. each.

The Key to the pronunciation of Proper Names, separately, 1s. 6d

**TREATISE ON CLOCK AND WATCH MAKING,**

Theoretical, and Practical. By THOMAS REID, Edinburgh. Illustrated with 20 Folding Plates, and a Vignette Title-Page. Complete in 10 Parts, 2s. Royal 8vo.

**BURT'S ILLUSTRATIONS OF SURGICAL ANATOMY**

Founded on the work of M. Blandin. Complete in Cloth 17s.

**GRIER'S MECHANIC'S CALCULATOR;**

Comprehending Principles, Rules, and Tables, in the various departments of Mathematics and Mechanics, useful to Students, Engineers, and Artisans in general; and

**GRIER'S MECHANIC'S POCKET DICTIONARY;**

Being a complete Note Book of Technical Terms, Rules, and Tables, useful in the Mechanical Arts. Illustrated by Engravings of Machinery, and nearly 200 Cuts and Diagrams on wood. 27 Nos., 6d. each.

**Murphy's Treatise on the Art of Weaving,**  
Illustrated by nearly 260 figures. 16 Nos., price 1s. each.

**Peddie's Practical Measurer,**

Or Tradesmen and Wood-merchant's Assistant. With Plates, 12 Nos., 6d. each.

**M'Culloch's Land Measurer's Ready Reckoner,**  
18mo, bound, 2s.

**Napoleon Bonaparte and His Times.**

Illustrated with Plans of his various Campaigns. 20 Nos., 6d. each.

**Ratray's Botanical Chart;**

Or Concise Introduction to the Linnæan System of Botany. With 300 illustrative figures, new edition, with improvements, done up for the pocket, price 3s. 6d.

To persons desirous of obtaining a knowledge of British Plants in the smallest space and at the lowest cost, we strongly recommend Mr. Ratray's Chart. *Flori-cultural Magazine.*

**Smith's Essay on the Construction of Cottages,**

For which the Premium was voted by the Highland Society of Scotland. Illustrated by Working Plans, accompanied by Specifications, Details, and Estimates. Cloth, 4s.

For Plans of Cottages of every class, I would recommend an Essay on the Construction of Cottages, by Mr. Smith of Edinburgh, which obtained a prize from the Highland Society of Scotland. *Martin Doyle on the Melioration of the Lower Classes.*

**The Training System,**

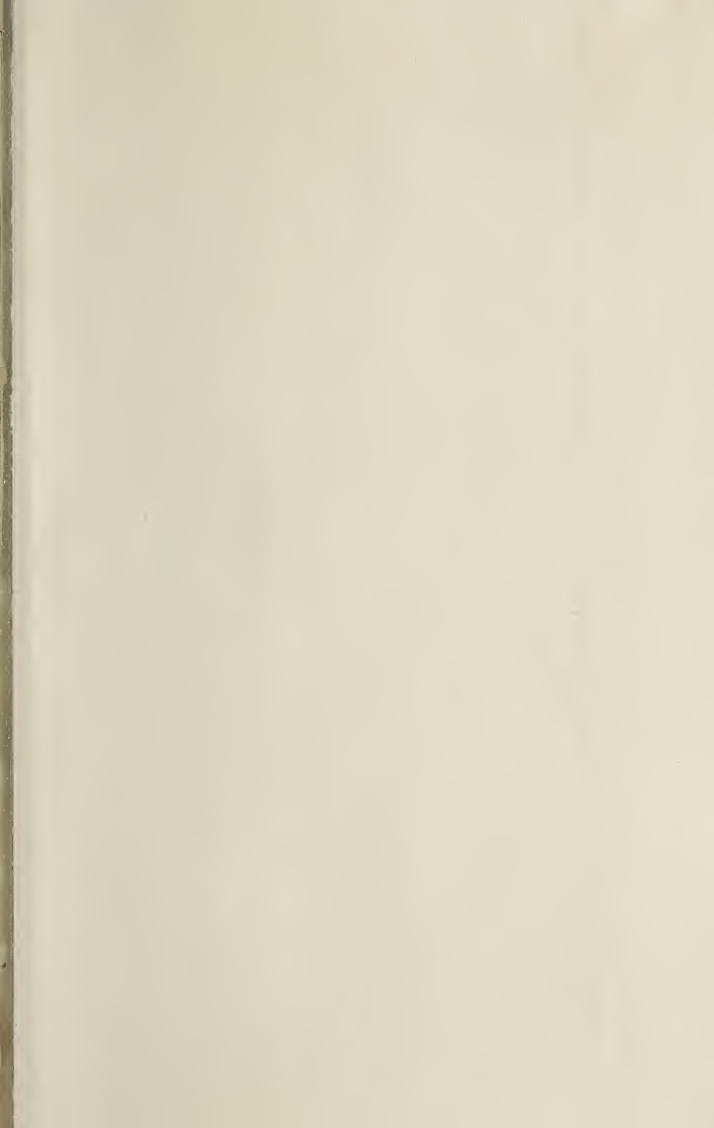
Established in the Glasgow Normal Seminary, and its Model Schools. By DAVID STOW, Esq., Honorary Secretary to the Glasgow Educational Society, author of "Moral Training," &c. New Edition, illustrated by Plates, Plans of Schools, &c. Cloth, 5s.

**Bible Training**

For Sabbath Schools and Week Day Schools, with Illustrations. By DAVID STOW, Esq. Seventh Edition, enlarged. Royal 18mo, Cloth, 1s. 6d.

**Webb's Farmer's Guide;**

A Treatise on the Diseases of Horses and Black Cattle; with Instructions for the Management of Breeding Mares and Cows. New edition, cloth, 3s. 6d.











**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

---

**UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY**

---

LC  
314  
G7S86  
1845  
C.1  
ROBA

